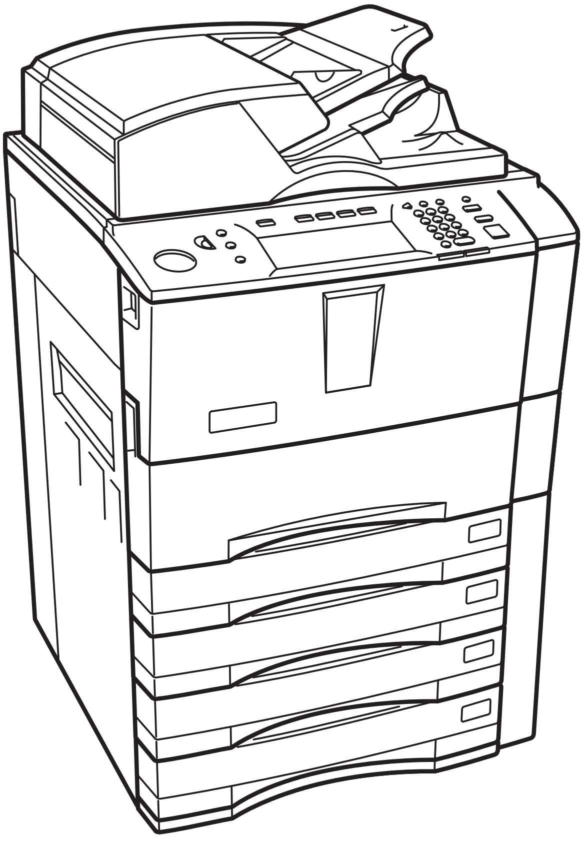
TOSHIBA

Leading Innovation >>>

MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL SYSTEMS

Operator's Manual for Basic Function

e-STUDIO520/600/720/850
e-STUDIO523/603/723/853



CONTENTS

Notice to Users 5
Toshiba Quality is Second to None 7
Preface 10
Features 11
General Precautions 12
- When installing or moving 12
- When using the multifunctional digital systems 15
- During maintenance or inspection 18
- When handling supplies 19

Disclaimer Notice 20
Environmental Information 21

1. BEFORE USING EQUIPMENT 23
1. Description of Each Component 24
   - Main components 24
   - Configuration of options 25
   - Control panel 28
   - Touch panel 30
2. Turning Power On / Off 34
   - Turning power on 34
   - When department or user management is used 35
   - Turning power off (Shutdown) 40
3. Energy Saving Mode 43
4. Setting Copy Paper 45
   - About the “width” and the “length” of the original and the copy paper 45
   - Copy paper types and sizes 46
   - Toshiba-recommended paper / Handling and storing paper 48
   - Setting copy paper (size change) / Setting the drawer for special uses 49
   - Changing the setting of paper size 52

2. HOW TO MAKE COPIES 59
1. General Copying Procedures 60
2. Setting Originals 63
   - Originals sizes and types / Maximum number of sheets 63
   - Placing originals on the glass 66
   - Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder 68
3. Auto Job Start (Job Preset) 71
4. Interrupt Copying 73
5. Stopping Copy Operation 74
6. Bypass Copying 75
   - Bypass copying 75
   - Bypass copying on standard size paper 76
   - Bypass copying on non-standard size paper 80
   - Registering non-standard size in the memory 83
7. Proof Copy 84

3. SETTING OF BASIC COPY MODES 87
1. Paper Selection 88
   - Automatic Paper Selection (APS) 88
   - Manual paper selection 90
   - When copying mixed-size originals in one go 91
2. Enlargement and Reduction Copying 93
3. Selecting Finishing Modes 99
   - Finishing modes and finishers (optional) 99
   - Sort/Group copying 101
   - Rotate sort mode 103
   - Staple sort mode 104
   - Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode) 106
   - Hole punch mode (optional) 109
   - Inserter mode (optional) 111
4. Duplex Copying 113
5. Original Mode 122
6. Copy Density Adjustment 123

4. IMAGE ADJUSTMENT 125
1. Background Adjustment 126
2. Sharpness 127

5. USING THE EDITING FUNCTIONS....129
- 1. IMAGE SHIFT....130
- 2. EDGE ERASE....136
- 3. BOOK CENTER ERASE....138
- 4. DUAL PAGE....140
- 5. 2IN1 / 4IN1....142
- 6. MAGAZINE SORT....145
- 7. EDITING....147
  - • Trimming / Masking....147
  - • Mirror image....150
  - • Negative/Positive reversal....151
- 8. XY ZOOM....152
- 9. COVER SHEET....154
- 10. SHEET INSERTION....157
- 11. TIME STAMP....160
- 12. PAGE NUMBER....161
- 13. JOB BUILD....163
- 14. IMAGE DIRECTION....167
- 15. BOOK - TABLET....169
- 16. ADF / SADF....170
- 17. TAB PAPER....173
- 18. INSERTER....183
- 19. OVERLAY....187

6. e-FILING....191
- 1. e-Filing....192
- 2. Creating User Boxes....194
- 3. Changing Data of User Boxes....196
- 4. Deleting User Boxes....199
- 5. Storing Documents in e-Filing....201
- 6. Printing Stored Documents....205
- 7. Deleting Folders or Documents....210
- 8. Appendix....212
  - • Storing documents in the shared folder....212

7. TEMPLATE....217
- 1. Template....218
- 2. Registering User Groups and Templates....221
- 3. Changing Data of User Groups and Templates....233
- 4. Recalling Templates....241
- 5. Deleting User Groups or Templates....246

8. JOB STATUS....251
- 1. Job Status....252
- 2. Confirming Print Job Status....253
  - • Print jobs....254
  - • Proof print jobs....257
  - • Private print jobs....260
  - • When using department codes....263
- 3. Confirming Scan Job Status....266
- 4. Log List....267
  - • Confirming job history in log list....268
  - • Registering into address book from log lists....272
  - • Printing journals (send/receive log list)....274
- 5. Print Status Display....275
- 6. Error Code....278

9. BLINKING GRAPHIC SYMBOLS....289
- 1. Blinking Graphic Symbols....290
- 2. Drawer Display on the Touch Panel....291
- 3. Toner-Related Symbols....292
- 4. Jam Symbols....295
- 5. Call Service Symbol....316

10. WHEN THIS MESSAGE APPEARS....317
- 1. “Toner low”....318
- 2. “Check staple cartridge”....320
- 3. “Check staple cartridge in the saddle stitch unit”....322

4. “Examine stapler” 324
5. “READY (CHECK STAPLER)” 326
6. “Examine stapler in the saddle stitch unit” 327
7. “READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)” 330
8. “READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)” 331
9. “POWER FAILURE” 332
10. “Time for periodic maintenance” 333
11. “Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N” 334
12. “Reboot the machine” 341

11.MAINTENANCE 343
1. Daily Inspection 344
2. Simple Troubleshooting 345

12.SPECIFICATIONS & OPTIONS 349
1. Specifications 350
2. Specifications of Options 354
3. Packing List 356
4. Copying Function Combination Matrix 357
    - Combination Matrix 1/2 357
    - Combination Matrix 2/2 358

USE OF RECYCLED PAPER IN THE COPIER
As with all copiers and reproduction devices, the use of the appropriate paper ensures the best image quality of the copies and the machine’s performance and reliability.
Because of the extreme variances in composition and quality of paper from various manufacturers, consumers should ensure the recycled paper they use is suitable for the copier. In accordance with the EPA ENERGY STAR Program guidelines, Toshiba recommends the following recycled paper for use in the copier-

Great White MultiUse 20 paper

If you have any questions regarding the use of recycled paper in your copier, contact your authorized service technician.

FCC NOTICE
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 and Part 18 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

WARNING:
Changes or modification made to this equipment, not expressly approved by Toshiba TEC or parties authorized by Toshiba TEC, could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.
Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

User Safety
This Toshiba multifunctional digital systems does not produce laser radiation hazardous to the user. It is certified as a Class 1 laser product under the U.S Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control Health and Safety Act of 1968.

Protective housing and external covers completely confine the laser beam light emitted inside the multifunctional digital systems. The laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of user operation.

Regulations implemented on August 2, 1976 by the Bureau of Radiological Health (BRH) of the U.S Food and Drug Administration apply to laser products manufactured from August 1,1976. Laser products marketed in the United States must comply with these regulations.

Caution
Using controls or adjustments or performing procedures, other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

The unit is classified as Class 1 Laser Product according to IEC 60825-1:1993/EN 60825-1.1994 including amendments.
The unit uses laser diode of output 10 mW, wave length 788 nm, continuous pulse.

Regulatory Information
Toshiba is dedicated to preserving the environment by sponsoring Call2Recycle, a program of the Rechargeable Battery Recycling Corporation. For more information and for drop-off locations, visit www.rbrc.org or call 1-800-822-8837.

Notice regarding CR coin cell batteries, applicable to California, U.S.A. only: Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply.
See http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/

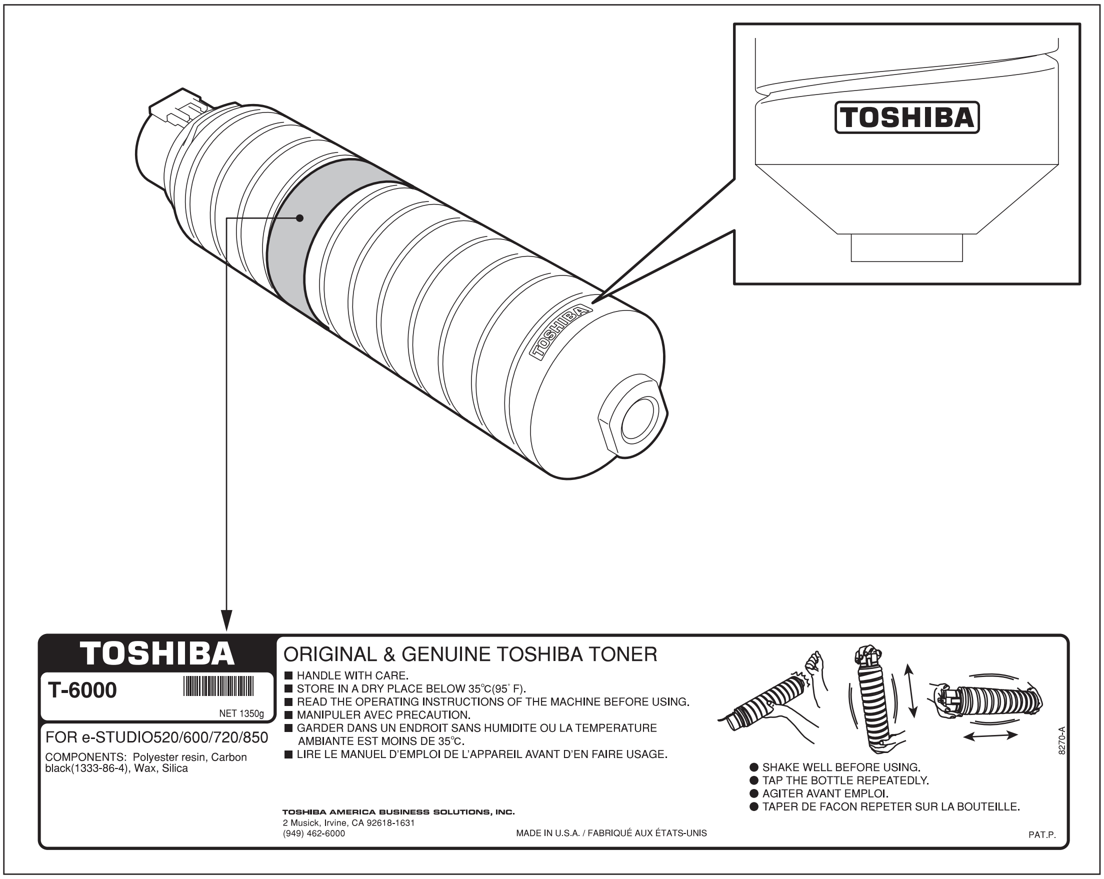
Hg

- The high efficiency LCD backlights used in this product contains 5mg or less of Mercury, the disposal of which may be regulated due to environmental considerations. For disposal or recycling information, please contact your local authorities or the Electronic Industries Alliance (www.eiae.org).

Toshiba Quality is Second to None

It is recommended that genuine Toshiba supplies and parts be used to obtain optimum results.

For e-STUDIO520/600/720/850



TOSHIBA

T-6000

NET 1350g

FOR e-STUDIO520/600/720/850

COMPONENTS: Polyester resin, Carbon black(1333-86-4), Wax, Silica

ORIGINAL & GENUINE TOSHIBA TONER

- ■ HANDLE WITH CARE.
- ■ STORE IN A DRY PLACE BELOW 35℃(95˚ F).
- ■ READ THE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS OF THE MACHINE BEFORE USING.
- ■ MANIPULER AVEC PRECAUTION.
- ■ GARDER DANS UN ENDROIT SANS HUMIDITE OU LA TEMPERATURE AMBIANTE EST MOINS DE 35℃.
- ■ LIRE LE MANUEL D'EMPLOI DE L'APPAREIL AVANT D'EN FAIRE USAGE.

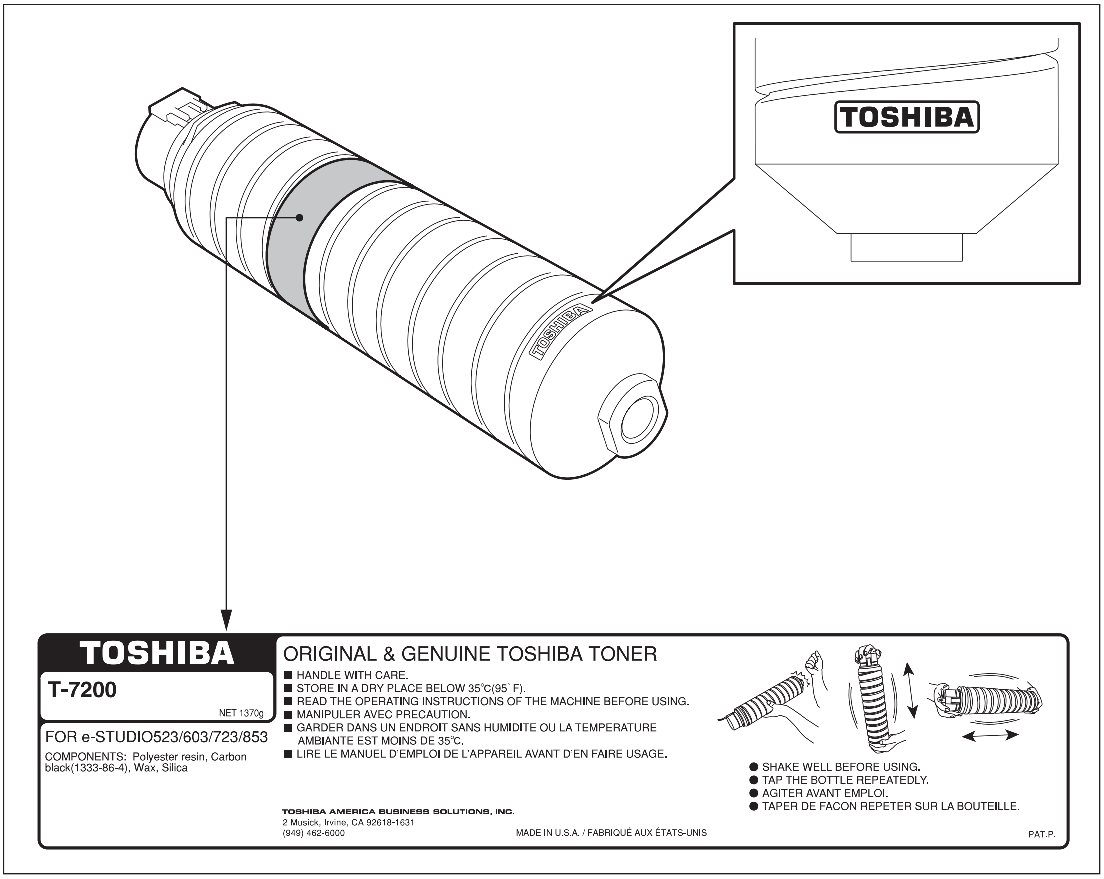
- ● SHAKE WELL BEFORE USING.
- ● TAP THE BOTTLE REPEATEDLY.
- ● AGITER AVANT EMPLOI.
- ● TAPER DE FACON REPETER SUR LA BOUTEILLE.

TOSHIBA AMERICA BUSINESS SOLUTIONS, INC.
2 Musick, Irvine, CA 92618-1631
(949) 462-6000

MADE IN U.S.A. / FABRIQUÉ AUX ÉTATS-UNIS

PAT.P.

For e-STUDIO523/603/723/853



TOSHIBA

T-7200

NET 1370g

FOR e-STUDIO523/603/723/853

COMPONENTS: Polyester resin, Carbon black(1333-86-4), Wax, Silica

ORIGINAL & GENUINE TOSHIBA TONER

- ■ HANDLE WITH CARE.
- ■ STORE IN A DRY PLACE BELOW 35℃(95˚ F).
- ■ READ THE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS OF THE MACHINE BEFORE USING.
- ■ MANIPULER AVEC PRECAUTION.
- ■ GARDER DANS UN ENDROIT SANS HUMIDITE OU LA TEMPERATURE AMBIANTE EST MOINS DE 35℃.
- ■ LIRE LE MANUEL D’EMPLOI DE L’APPAREIL AVANT D’EN FAIRE USAGE.

- ● SHAKE WELL BEFORE USING.
- ● TAP THE BOTTLE REPEATEDLY.
- ● AGITER AVANT EMPLOI.
- ● TAPER DE FACON REPETER SUR LA BOUTEILLE.

TOSHIBA AMERICA BUSINESS SOLUTIONS, INC.
2 Musick, Irvine, CA 92618-1631
(949) 462-6000

MADE IN U.S.A. / FABRIQUÉ AUX ÉTATS-UNIS

PAT.P.

Supplies / Parts

- **Dependability**
  Genuine Toshiba supplies are subjected to the strictest of inspections so that every supply you receive will perform at optimal levels.
- **High Productivity**
  Genuine Toshiba supplies are created to meet the demands of our competitive world and provide high-speed reliable copies when you need them.
- **Stable Image Quality**
  Genuine Toshiba supplies are designed to provide consistently stable image output.
- **Copier Friendly Supplies**
  Genuine Toshiba supplies are designed to help to keep the copier and all its parts in trouble-free working order.
  Reduction of machine wear is due to Toshiba's intimate knowledge of the copier's characteristics ensuring the highest standard of care.
- **Perfectly Suited Supplies**
  From the beginning Toshiba supplies and machines were made for each other. Whenever Toshiba designs a new machine, it also designs a new toner that is made just for that machine. By using genuine Toshiba supplies with Toshiba copiers, you are guaranteed optimum performance.

Toner

- **Optimum image Quality**
  Toshiba toner is manufactured using ultra-fine quality materials under precisely controlled conditions to ensure that your Toshiba copiers will continually generate sharp high-quality images.
- **Cost Advantage**
  Genuine Toshiba toner provides value. Only the proper amount of toner is used during the reproduction process, thereby enabling the machine to continue to operate until all the toner has been used. In this way you get the full value from each cartridge used.
- **Environmental Harmony**
  Genuine Toshiba toner is manufactured with the environment in mind. We use embossed or plastic labels for our toner cartridges making them fully recyclable. In addition, dust and ozone levels have been reduced to improve the working environment.
- **User Friendly**
  Before approving our toners for sale, we test them to be sure that they pass the strictest of health standards. This takes all the worry out of handling the toner.

General

- **Service and Support Benefits**
  Toshiba's Service technicians are certified to keep your copier performing at optimum levels.To ensure continuous image quality, utilize an authorized Toshiba Service provider to care for and perform periodical maintenance on your copier.

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the Toshiba Multifunctional Digital Systems e-STUDIO520/600/720/850 or e-STUDIO523/603/723/853. This Operator's Manual describes the following:

- How to use the Multifunctional Digital Systems.
- How to inspect and carry out maintenance on the Multifunctional Digital Systems.
- How to remedy mechanical and copying problems.

Before using the Multifunctional Digital Systems, thoroughly read and understand this Operator's Manual. To ensure that clean copies are made at all times and to keep your Multifunctional Digital Systems in optimum working order, this Operator's Manual should be readily available for future reference.

To ensure correct and safe use of the Toshiba Multifunctional Digital Systems e-STUDIO520/600/720/850 or e-STUDIO523/603/723/853, this Operator's Manual describes safety precautions according to the following three levels of warning:

Before reading this Operator's Manual, you should fully understand the meaning and importance of these signal words.

- **Warning**
  Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death, serious injury, or serious damage, or fire in the equipment or surrounding assets.
- **Caution**
  Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury, partial damage of the equipment or surrounding assets, or loss of data.
- **Note**
  Indicates information to which you should pay attention when operating the equipment.

- **Tip**
  Describes handy information that is useful to know when operating the Multifunctional Digital Systems.

Company or product name shown in this manual may be a brand name or a trademark of each company.

©2005 TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION All rights reserved
Under the copyright laws, this manual cannot be reproduced in any form without prior written permission of TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION. No patent liability is assumed, however, with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

Features

The e-STUDIO520/600/720/850 or e-STUDIO523/603/723/853 is a multifunctional digital system which realizes a high-speed, high-image quality and higher performance. Its great variety of options, as well as the standard networking function, strongly supports your office work.

- The copy speed of the e-STUDIO520/523 is as fast as 52 copies per minute. The e-STUDIO600/603 has reached a copy speed of 60 copies per minute, the e-STUDIO720/723 has reached a copy speed of 72 copies per minute, and the e-STUDIO850/853 has reached 85 copies per minute. (When 1-sided LT landscape continuous copy is made in the non-sort mode without the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder being used.)

- The high-speed scanning of 71 sheets per minute (LT Landscape: 600 dpi) remarkably reduces working time.

- Availability of toner cartridge replacement during copying enhances its usability.

- Improved security-related features ensure users of the safe and pleasant working environment.

- The advanced e-BRIDGE features simplify the operation of multiple copy settings.

- The built-in wireless LAN unit and Bluetooth-compliant options are introduced to respond to user’s wide-ranging needs.

- Toner remaining on the photoconductive drum can be recycled to reduce waste toner.

- The finisher for this high-speed equipment quickly finishes complex sorting or mass-copying.

General Precautions

When installing or moving

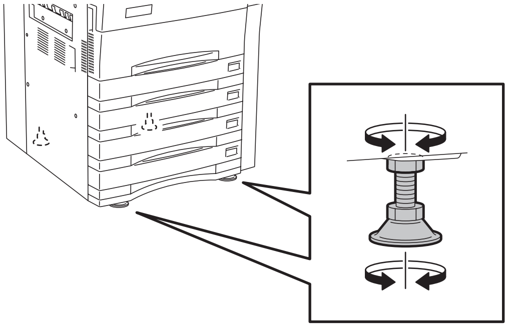
Warning

- This multifunctional digital systems requires 115 V, 20 A, 50/60 Hz electric power.
  Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified.
  Avoid multiple connections in the same outlet. This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock. If you are considering increasing the number of outlets, contact an electrician.
- Always connect this multifunctional digital systems to an outlet with a ground connection to avoid the danger of fire or electric shock in case of short-circuiting. Contact your service representative for the details. Be sure to use a 3-conductor, grounded wall outlet.
  In areas, except U.S. and Canada, where a 2-pin plug is used, the multifunctional digital systems must be grounded for safety. Never ground it to a gas pipe, a water pipe, or any other object not suitable for grounding.
- Plug the power cord securely into the outlet. If it is not plugged in properly, it could heat up and cause a fire or give you an electric shock.
- Do not damage, break or attempt to repair the power cord.
  The following things should not be done to the power cord.
    - Twisting it
    - Bending it
    - Pulling it
    - Placing anything on it
    - Making it hot
    - Situating it near radiators or other heat sources

  This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock. If the power cord is damaged, contact your service representative.
- When removing the plug from the outlet, do not pull the power cord. Always hold the plug when removing it from the outlet. If the power cord is pulled, the wires may become broken and this could cause a fire or give you an electric shock.
- Make sure that the ventilation holes are not blocked up.
  If the temperature within the multifunctional digital systems becomes too high, a fire could result.
- The socket outlet should be near the equipment and be easily accessible.
- Pull out the plug from the outlet more than once a year to clean around the prongs. Accumulating dust and dirt could cause a fire due to the heat released by electric leakage.

Caution

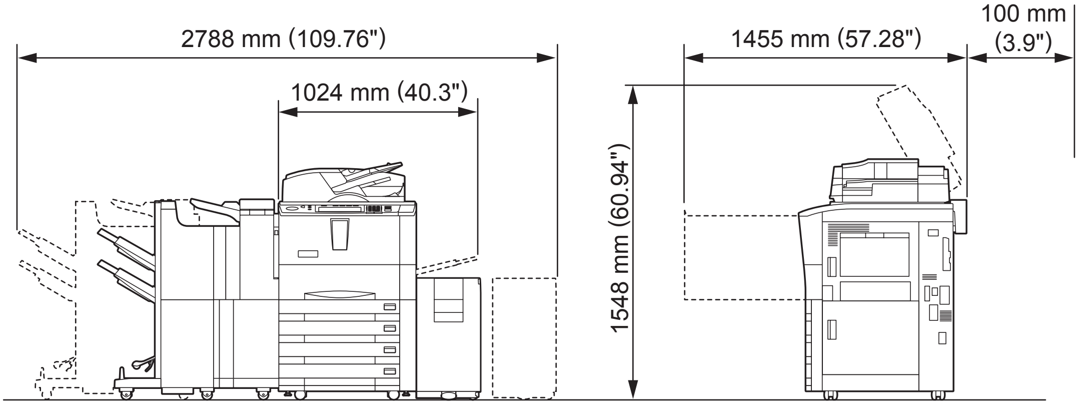
- Avoid placing the multifunctional digital systems in a place unsuitable for its weight and also make sure the surface is level.
  Remember that if the multifunctional digital systems falls over, serious injuries could result.
  Weight of the multifunctional digital systems: approx. 463 lb.
- There are 4 adjusters (stoppers) at the bottom of the equipment (2 in the rear, 2 in the front). After moving/installing the equipment, be sure to turn and lower the adjusters, and then fix them firmly on the floor.
  Before moving the equipment, turn and raise the adjusters.



- When connecting the optional equipment and interface cable to the multifunctional digital systems, be sure to turn the power OFF. If the power is not turned off, you could get an electric shock.
  To turn the power OFF, see 🕮 P.40 “Turning power off (Shutdown)”.
- Do not install the equipment by yourself or try to move it once it has been installed. This could result in an injury or damage to the device. Contact your service representative if the equipment needs to be installed or moved.

Other points

- Make sure that there is enough space around the system to facilitate changing of parts, maintenance and clearing paper jam.
  If there is insufficient space, some operations, such as bypass feeding, will become difficult and the multifunctional digital systems could even break down.



- Be sure to fix the power cable securely so that no one trips over it.
- Adverse environmental conditions may affect the safe operation and performance of the multifunctional digital systems, and the multifunctional digital systems could break down.
  - Avoid locations near windows or with exposure to direct sunlight.
  - Avoid locations with drastic temperature fluctuations.
  - Avoid too much dust.
  - Avoid location that suffer from vibration.
- Make sure that the air is able to flow freely and that there is sufficient ventilation.
  With inadequate ventilation, the unpleasant odor released by ozone will begin to dominate the atmosphere.

When using the multifunctional digital systems

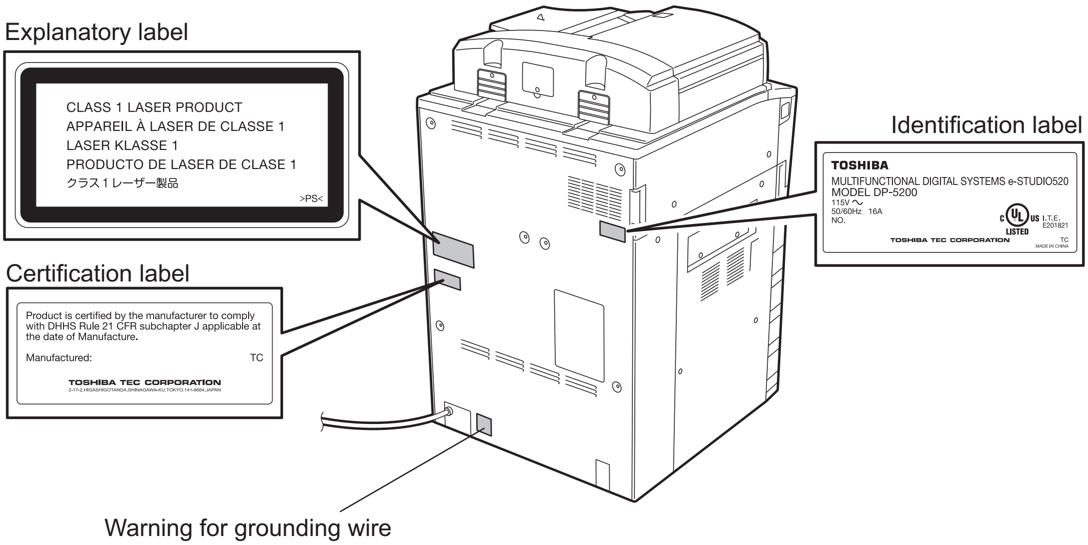
Warning

- Do not place metallic objects or containers with water (flower vases, coffee cups, etc.) on or near the multifunctional digital systems. And keep paper clips and staples away from the air vent. If not, a fire could result or you could get an electric shock.
- If the multifunctional digital systems becomes excessively hot, smoke comes out of it or there is an odd smell or noise, proceed as follows.
  Turn the main switch OFF and remove the plug from the outlet, then contact your service representative.
- If the multifunctional digital systems will not be used for more than one month, remove the plug from the outlet for safety purposes during that time.
  If an insulation failure occurs, this could cause a fire or give you an electric shock.

Caution

- Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could cause personal injury.
- Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the multifunctional digital systems. If the objects fall off, this could cause injury.
- Do not remove or connect the plug with wet hands, as this could give you an electric shock.
- Do not touch the fuser unit or the metal area around it. Since they are very hot, you could be burned or the shock could cause you to get your hand injured in the machine.
- Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer.
  This could injure you.
- Be careful not to let your fingers be caught between the equipment and the finisher (optional).
  This could injure you.
- Do not touch the metal portion of the guide plate in the automatic duplexer as it could burn you.
- Do not touch the hinge (= a connecting part) on the rear side of the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder. This could catch and injure your fingers when you open or close the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.
- Always keep hands and fingers clear of FINISHER TRAY HINGE, as the tray could move unexpectedly. Failure to do so could result in injury to your hand and/or fingers.

Position of Certification label, etc.



Explanatory label

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
APPAREIL À LASER DE CLASSE 1
LASER KLASSE 1
PRODUCTO DE LASER DE CLASE 1
クラス１レーザー製品
>PS<

Certification label

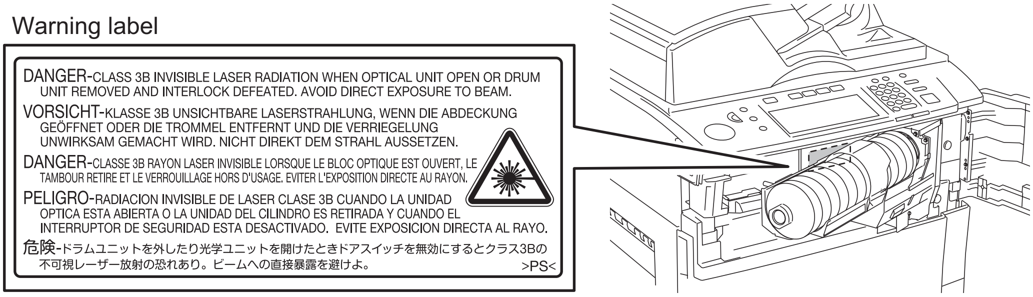
Product is certified by the manufacturer to comply with DHHS Rule 21 CFR subchapter J applicable at the date of Manufacture.

Manufactured: TC

TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION
2-17-2,HIGASHIGOTANDA,SHINAGAWA-KU,TOKYO,141-8664,JAPAN

Identification label

TOSHIBA
MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL SYSTEMS e-STUDIO520
MODEL DP-5200
115V ∿
50/60Hz 16A
NO.
c UL us LISTED I.T.E. E201821
TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION
TC
MADE IN CHINA



Warning label

DANGER-CLASS 3B INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPTICAL UNIT OPEN OR DRUM UNIT REMOVED AND INTERLOCK DEFEATED. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

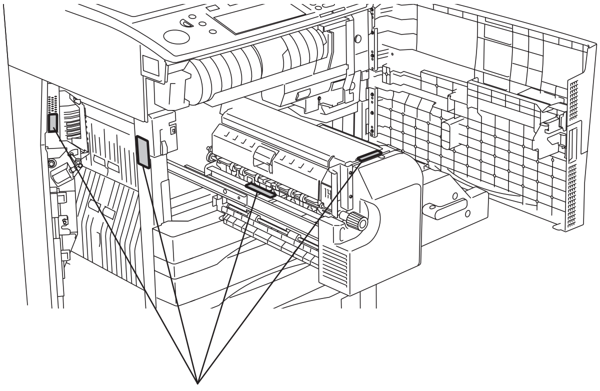
VORSICHT-KLASSE 3B UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG, WENN DIE ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET ODER DIE TROMMEL ENTFERNT UND DIE VERRIEGELUNG UNWIRKSAM GEMACHT WIRD. NICHT DIREKT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

DANGER-CLASSE 3B RAYON LASER INVISIBLE LORSQUE LE BLOC OPTIQUE EST OUVERT, LE TAMBOUR RETIRE ET LE VERROUILLAGE HORS D'USAGE. EVITER L'EXPOSITION DIRECTE AU RAYON.

PELIGRO-RADIACION INVISIBLE DE LASER CLASE 3B CUANDO LA UNIDAD OPTICA ESTA ABIERTA O LA UNIDAD DEL CILINDRO ES RETIRADA Y CUANDO EL INTERRUPTOR DE SEGURIDAD ESTA DESACTIVADO. EVITE EXPOSICION DIRECTA AL RAYO.

危険-ドラムユニットを外したり光学ユニットを開けたときドアスイッチを無効にするとクラス3Bの不可視レーザー放射の恐れあり。ビームへの直接暴露を避けよ。

>PS<



Other points

- Be very careful to treat the touch panel gently and never hit it. Breaking the surface could cause malfunctions.
- Do not turn the power OFF with jammed paper left inside the multifunctional digital systems.
  This could cause malfunctions when the main switch is turned ON next time.
  To turn the power OFF, see 📖 P.40 “Turning power off (Shutdown)”.
- Be sure to turn the power OFF when leaving the office or if there is a power outage. However, Do not turn the power OFF if the weekly timer is in use. To turn the power OFF, see 📖 P.40 “Turning power off (Shutdown)”.
- Be careful because the paper exit area and paper just after exiting are hot.
- Do not open/close the covers and the bypass tray, or pull out the drawers during printing.

During maintenance or inspection

Warning

- Never attempt to repair, disassemble or modify the multifunctional digital systems by yourself. You could cause a fire or get an electric shock.
  Always contact your Service representative for maintenance or repair of the internal parts of the multifunctional digital systems.
- Always keep the plug and outlet clean. Prevent them from accumulating dust and dirt. This could cause a fire and give you an electric shock due to the heat released by electric leakage.
- Do not let liquids such as water and oil get into the system when cleaning the floor. This could cause a fire and give you an electric shock.

Caution

- Do not touch the stapling area. The actual needle point could cause you personal injury.
  Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) 📖 P.327
  Finisher (optional) 📖 P.324

Other points

- Do not use such solvents as thinner or alcohol when cleaning the surface of the multifunctional digital systems.
  - This could warp the shape of the surface or leave it discolored.
  - When using a chemical cleaning pad to clean it, pay attention to any cautionary points.

When handling supplies

Caution

- Never attempt to incinerate toner cartridges and toner bags. Dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bags in accordance with local regulations.
  (📖 P.292 “3.Toner-Related Symbols”)

Disclaimer Notice

The following notice sets out the exclusions and limitations of liability of TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION (including its employees, agents and sub-contractors) to any purchaser or user ('User') of the e-STUDIO520/600/720/850 or e-STUDIO523/603/723/853, including its accessories, options and bundled software ('Product').

1. The exclusion and limitations of liability referred to in this notice shall be effective to the fullest extent permissible at law. For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this notice shall be taken to exclude or limit TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION's liability for death or personal injury caused by TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION's negligence or TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION's fraudulent misrepresentation.

2. All warranties, conditions and other terms implied by law are, to the fullest extent permitted by law, excluded and no such implied warranties are given or apply in relation to the Products.

3. TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION shall not be liable for any loss, cost, expense, claim or damage whatsoever caused by any of the following:
   - use or handling of the Product otherwise than in accordance with the manuals, including but not limited to Operator's Manual, User's Guide, and/or incorrect or careless handling or use of the Product;
   - any cause which prevents the Product from operating or functioning correctly which arises from or is attributable to either acts, omissions, events or accidents beyond the reasonable control of TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION including without limitation acts of God, war, riot, civil commotion, malicious or deliberate damage, fire, flood, or storm, natural calamity, earthquakes, abnormal voltage or other disasters;
   - additions, modifications, disassembly, transportation, or repairs by any person other than service technicians authorized by TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION; or
   - use of paper, supplies or parts other than those recommended by TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION.

4. Subject to paragraph 1, TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION shall not be liable to Customer for:
   - loss of profits; loss of sales or turnover; loss of or damage to reputation; loss of production; loss of anticipated savings; loss of goodwill or business opportunities; loss of customers; loss of, or loss of use of, any software or data; loss under or in relation to any contract; or
   - any special, incidental, consequential or indirect loss or damage, costs, expenses, financial loss or claims for consequential compensation;

   whatsoever and howsoever caused which arise out of or in connection with the Product or the use or handling of the Product even if TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION is advised of the possibility of such damages.

   TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION shall not be liable for any loss, cost, expense, claim or damage caused by any inability to use (including, but not limited to failure, malfunction, hang-up, virus infection or other problems) which arises from use of the Product with hardware, goods or software which TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION has not directly or indirectly supplied

Environmental Information

ENERGY STAR® Program

Toshiba Tec Corporation, as a member of the ENERGY STAR Program, attaches the ENERGY STAR logo to all products which meet the ENERGY STAR Program requirements.

The ENERGY STAR Program aims at the promotion of the development and wider usage of office equipment including energy-efficient computers in order to address environmental issues such as global warming. Manufacturers that participate in this program can attach the ENERGY STAR logo to products after confirming that they meet the energy saving standards of this program. Also, these standards and logo are commonly used within the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and participating countries.
Specified products, sales countries or regions may not be included.
To distinguish whether or not the product meets the ENERGY STAR Program requirements, check if the corresponding logo is on the product.
If you have any questions, contact your service representative.

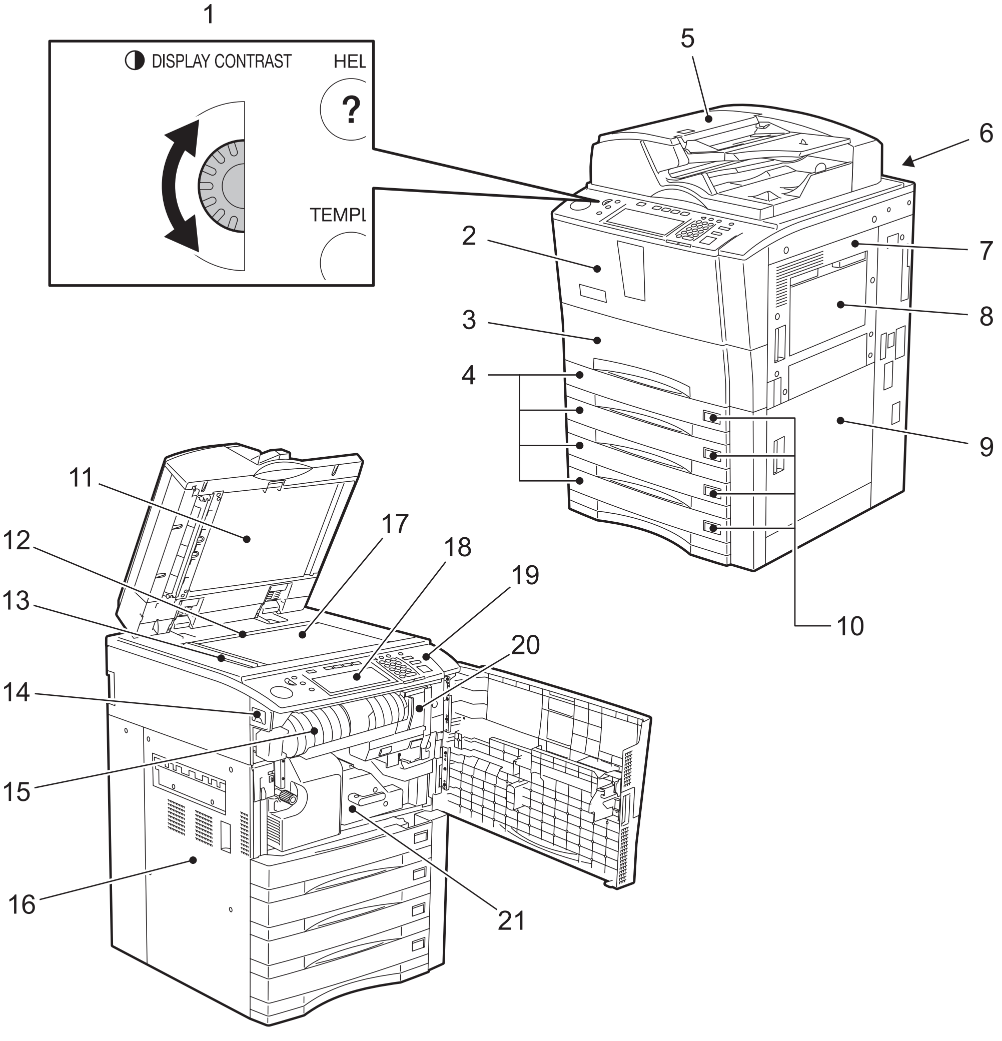
1. BEFORE USING EQUIPMENT

1. Description of Each Component 24
    - Main components 24
    - Configuration of options 25
    - Control panel 28
    - Touch panel 30
2. Turning Power On / Off 34
    - Turning power on 34
    - When department or user management is used 35
    - Turning power off (Shutdown) 40
3. Energy Saving Mode 43
4. Setting Copy Paper 45
    - About the “width” and the “length” of the original and the copy paper 45
    - Copy paper types and sizes 46
    - Toshiba-recommended paper / Handling and storing paper 48
    - Setting copy paper (size change) / Setting the drawer for special uses 49
    - Changing the setting of paper size 52

1. Description of Each Component

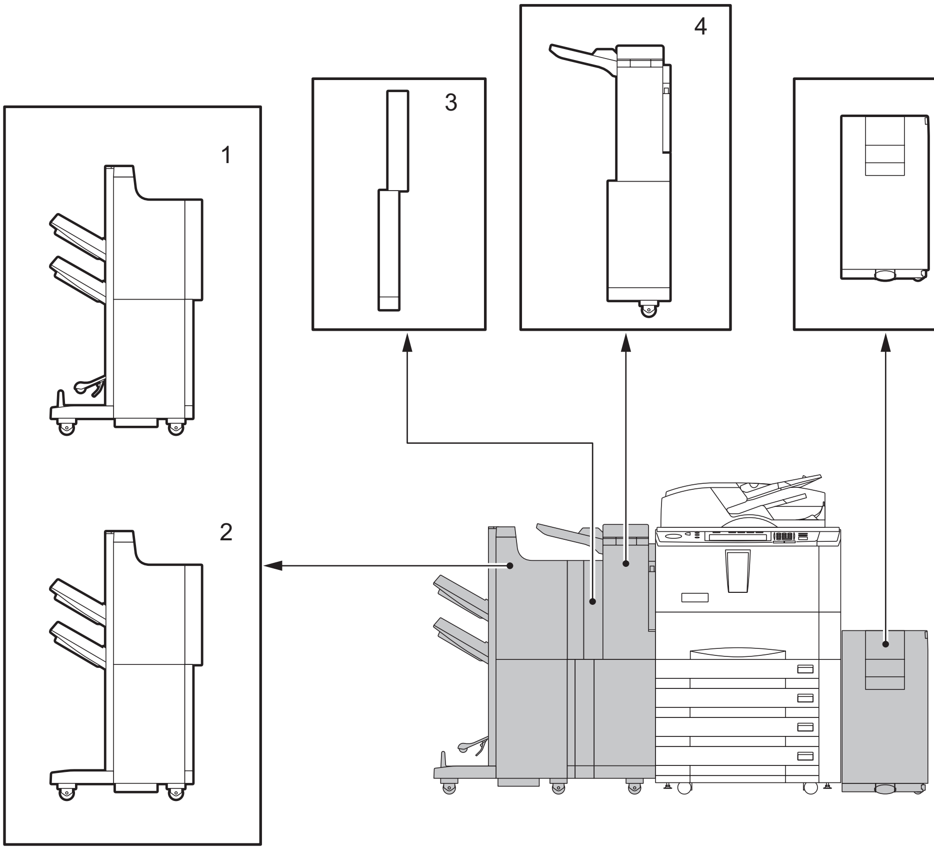
Main components

1. Touch panel contrast adjustment dial
2. Toner cover
3. Front cover
4. Drawers
5. Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (RADF)
6. Operator’s Manual pocket (Back side)
7. Bypass cover
8. Bypass tray
9. Paper feed cover
10. Paper size indicator
11. Original cover
12. Original scale
13. Scanning area
14. Power switch
15. Toner cartridge
16. Exit cover
17. Original glass
18. Touch panel
19. Control panel
20. Toner cartridge holder
21. Transfer/Transport unit



4: For the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder Type model, the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder is provided instead of lower 2 drawers.

Configuration of options



1. **Saddle Stitch Finisher (MJ-1024)**
   This finisher enables saddle stitching, in addition to sort/group finishing and stapling.
   (The Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6003) and the Inserter (MJ-7001) sold separately can be installed to this finisher.)

2. **Finisher (MJ-1023)**
   This finisher enables sort/group finishing and stapling. (The Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6003) and the Inserter (MJ-7001) sold separately can be installed to this finisher.)

3. **Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6003)**
   This unit enables you to punch holes on printouts.

4. **Inserter Unit (MJ-7001)**
   This unit enables you to insert a sheet of paper which does not need to be copied. An already copied sheet, as well as a blank sheet, can be inserted. This inserter is also usable for single finishing operation without copying, such as stapling or hole-punching.

5. **External Large Capacity Feeder** (MP-4004)
   This feeder enables you to feed LT paper up to 4000 sheets (20 lb. Bond). Thick paper (- 110 lb. Index) can also be set in this feeder.

Other options available are as follows. Contact your service technician or Toshiba product distributors for details.

FAX Unit (GD-1170)
This is a unit for using the equipment as a Fax.
- Installed inside of the equipment
- The PCI Slot (GO-1050) is necessary.

Printer Kit (GM-1050)
This is a kit for using the printing function.
- This kit is for the e-STUDIO520/600/720/850. Use the GM-1051 for the e-STUDIO523/603/723/853.
- Printing using a printer driver supporting XPS is not available.

Printer Kit (GM-1051)
This is a kit for using the printer function.
- Printing using a printer driver supporting XPS can be performed if the Memory (GC-1230) is installed in the equipment.

Printer/Scanner Kit (GM-2040)
This is a kit for using the printing and scanning functions.
- This kit is for the e-STUDIO520/600/720/850. Use the GM-2041 for the e-STUDIO523/603/723/853.
- Printing using a printer driver supporting XPS is not available.

Printer/Scanner Kit (GM-2041)
This is a kit for using the printing and scanning functions.
- Printing using a printer driver supporting XPS can be performed if the Memory (GC-1230) is installed in the equipment.

Scanner Kit (GM-4010)
This kit enables the scanning function.

Memory (GC-1230)
Printing using a printer driver supporting XPS can be performed if this memory is installed together with the Printer Kit (GM-1051) or Printer/Scanner Kit (GM-2041).

Data Overwrite Kit (GP-1060)
This is a kit to erase the data stored temporarily when copying, printing, scanning, Fax, internet Fax or network Fax is performed. It overwrites temporarily stored data with random data.
- Installed inside of the equipment

Scrambler Board (GP-1040)
This board enhances the security of the equipment. Data are encrypted when they are written into the hard disk of the equipment, and decrypted when they are read.
- Installed inside of the equipment
- The PCI Slot (GO-1050) is necessary.

Parallel Board (GF-1140)
This unit is used to connect between the equipment and a PC with a parallel cable.
- The PCI Slot (GO-1050) is necessary.

Wireless LAN Module (GN-1041)
This module enables the equipment to be used in a wireless LAN environment.
- Installed inside of the equipment
- The Antenna (GN-3010) is necessary.
- The equipment cannot be connected to the wireless and wired LAN at the same time.

Bluetooth Module (GN-2010)
This module enables the Bluetooth printing.

- Installed inside of the equipment
- The Antenna (GN-3010) is necessary.

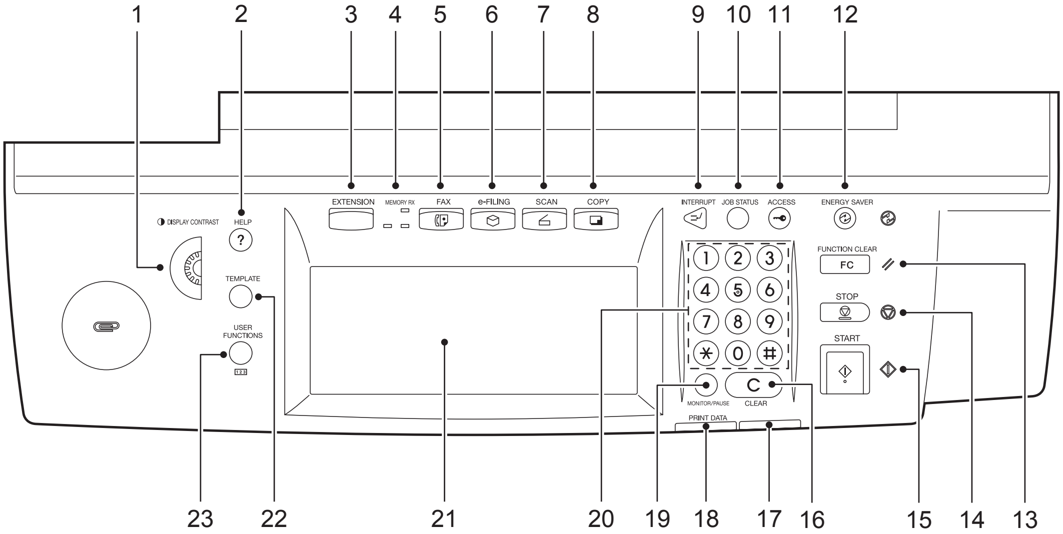
Antenna (GN-3010)
This is used when the Wireless LAN module and Bluetooth Module are installed.

Finisher Guide Rail (KN-1017)
This unit is used when the equipment is installed on soft surface flooring. This allows you to separate/install an optional finisher from/to the equipment easily.

e-BRIDGE ID Gate (KP-2004, KP-2005)
Users can login and use the equipment simply by holding their IC card over the e-BRIDGE ID Gate.

Control panel

Use the buttons on the control panel for various operations and settings through the equipment.


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
EXTENSION
MEMORY RX
FAX
e-FILING
SCAN
COPY
INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
C
MONITOR/PAUSE
CLEAR
PRINT DATA
23
22
21
20
19
18
17
16
15
14
13

1. **Touch panel contrast adjustment dial**
   Adjust the contrast of the touch panel with this dial.

2. **[HELP] button**
   Use this button to display the description of the functions and the buttons on the touch panel.

3. **[EXTENSION] button**
   Any operation with this button is invalid at present. This button is to extend functions in the future.

4. **MEMORY RX / FAX communication lamps**
   These lamps show the status of FAX data reception and FAX communication. The equipment can be operated even while these lamps are lit.

5. **[FAX] button**
   Use this button to use the FAX / Internet FAX function.

6. **[e-FILING] button**
   Use this button to access saved image data.

7. **[SCAN] button**
   Use this button to use the scanning function.

8. **[COPY] button**
   Use this button to use the copier function.

9. **[INTERRUPT] button**
   Use this button to interrupt the copy job in process and perform another one. The interrupted job is resumed by your pressing this button again.

10. **[JOB STATUS] button**
    Use this button to confirm each job status, printing status, and FAX transmission/reception status of a print job, scan job and FAX job. (📖 P.252 “1.Job Status”)

11. **[ACCESS] button**
    Use this button when the department code or user information has been set. If this button is pressed after copying, the next user cannot use functions such as copying without keying in the department code or user information. See the User Functions Guide for the department and user management.

12. **[ENERGY SAVER] button**
    Use this button when you want to shut down the equipment or when you want the equipment enter into the energy saving mode. When you press this button, the menu for the energy saving mode appears. Press the [SLEEP] button on this menu to enter into the energy saving mode and press the [SHUT-DOWN] button to shut down the equipment.

13. **[FUNCTION CLEAR] button**
    When this button is pressed, all selected functions are cleared and returned to the default settings. If the default setting is changed on the control panel, and copying, scanning, Fax or similar is performed, the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button blinks.

14. **[STOP] button**
    Use this button to stop any scanning and copying operations in progress.

15. **[START] button**
    Use this button to start copying, scanning and FAX operations.

16. **[CLEAR] button**
    Use this button to correct numbers keyed in, such as the copy quantity.

17. **ERROR lamp**
    This lamp lights when an error occurs and the equipment needs some actions to be taken.

18. **PRINT DATA lamp**
    This lamp lights when print data are being received.

19. **[MONITOR/PAUSE] button**
    Use this button only when a FAX Unit (optional) is installed. (See the Operator’s Manual for Facsimile Function for details.)

20. **Digital keys**
    Use these keys to enter any numbers such as the copy quantity.

21. **Touch panel**
    Use this panel for the various settings of each function of the copier, scanner and FAX. This panel also indicates the status of the equipment, such as when you run out of paper or there is a paper jam.

22. **[TEMPLATE] button**
    Use this button to register and recall frequently used copy, scan, and Fax settings as a template.

23. **[USER FUNCTIONS] button**
    Use this button for paper size or media type setting of drawers, and registration of the copy, scan and FAX settings (including a default setting change.) See the User Functions Guide for the functions enabled by this button.

Touch panel

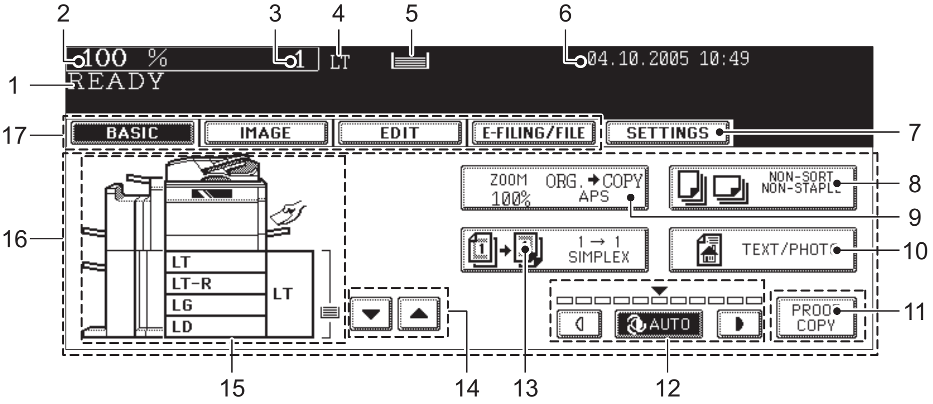
When the power is turned on, the basic menu for the copier function appears on this touch panel. The status of the equipment is also displayed on the touch panel with messages and illustrations.

1. Message
2. Reproduction ratio
3. Number of copy sets
4. APS/AMS* or currently selected paper size
5. Remaining paper level
6. Date and time
7. [SETTINGS] button
8. Finisher button
9. Enlargement/Reduction ([Zoom...]) button
10. Original mode button

11 [PROOF COPY] button

12. Density adjustment buttons
13. Simplex / duplex button
14. Paper source selection buttons
15. Equipment status indication area
16. Function setting area
17. Index buttons

* APS : Automatic paper selection, AMS : Automatic magnification selection


2
3
4
5
6
100 %
1
LT
04.10.2005 10:49
1
READY
17
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
7
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
8
9
16
1→1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
10
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY
11
15
14
13
12

Message display

The following information appears at the top of the touch panel:
Equipment status, operational instructions, cautionary messages, reproduction ratios, number of copy sets, paper size of a selected drawer, amount of paper in a selected drawer and date and time.

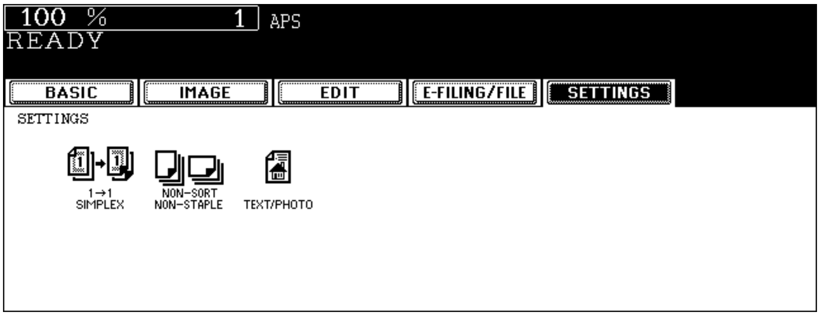
Touch-buttons

Press these buttons on the touch panel lightly to set various functions.

Index buttons
Press these buttons to switch menus. The type and number of the index buttons vary depending on the function of the copier, scanner and e-Filing.

Function setting area
This area includes buttons for selecting and setting each function.

[SETTINGS] button
Press this button to confirm currently set functions.
(An example is shown below.)



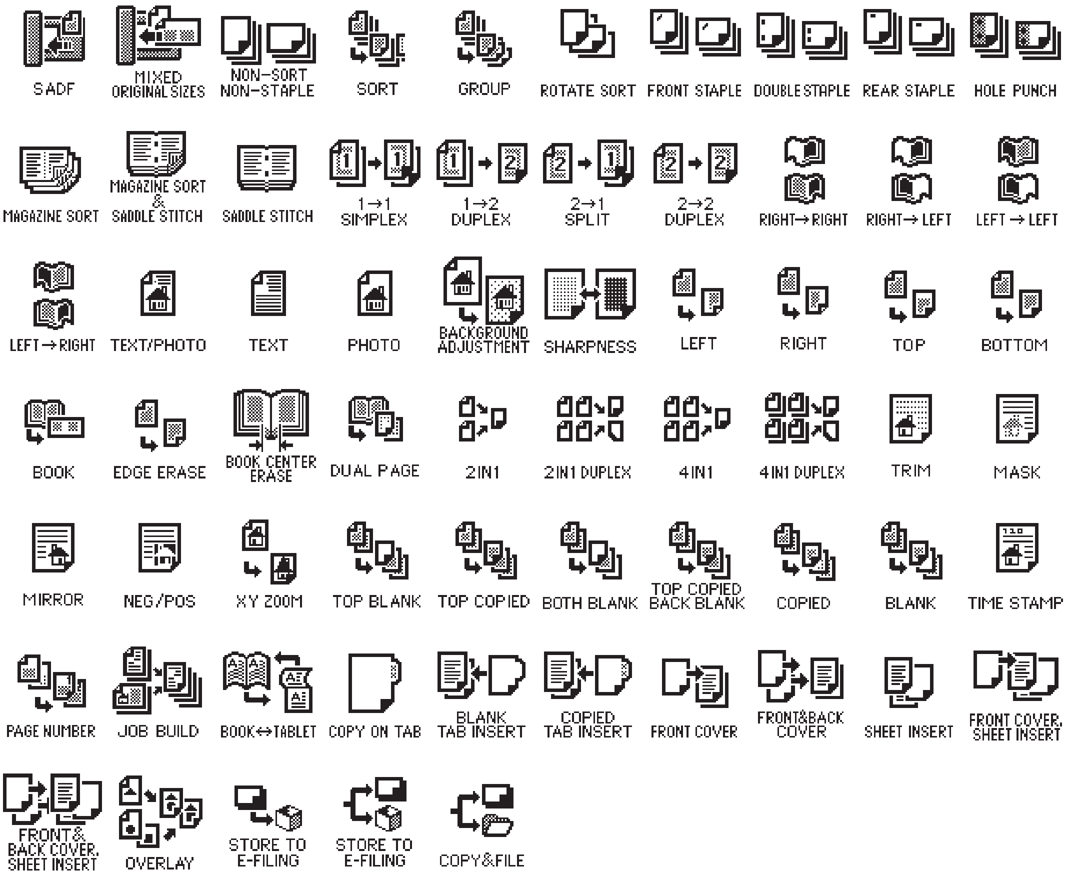
100 % 1 APS
READY

SETTINGS

1→1 SIMPLEX
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
TEXT/PHOTO

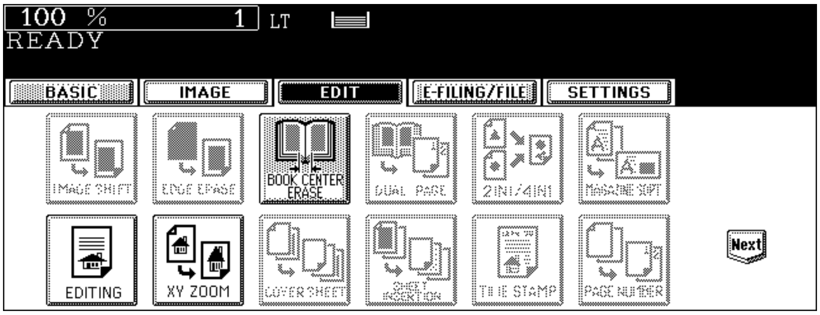
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS

Buttons appearing on the various menus are as follows (some buttons may not appear on the menu):


SADF
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
SORT
GROUP
ROTATE SORT
FRONT STAPLE
DOUBLE STAPLE
REAR STAPLE
HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZINE SORT
MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH
SADDLE STITCH
1→1 SIMPLEX
1→2 DUPLEX
2→1 SPLIT
2→2 DUPLEX
RIGHT→RIGHT
RIGHT→LEFT
LEFT→LEFT
LEFT→RIGHT
TEXT/PHOTO
TEXT
PHOTO
BACKGROUND ADJUSTMENT
SHARPNESS
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1
2IN1 DUPLEX
4IN1
4IN1 DUPLEX
TRIM
MASK
MIRROR
NEG/POS
XY ZOOM
TOP BLANK
TOP COPIED
BOTH BLANK
TOP COPIED BACK BLANK
COPIED
BLANK
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
JOB BUILD
BOOK↔TABLET
COPY ON TAB
BLANK TAB INSERT
COPIED TAB INSERT
FRONT COVER
FRONT&BACK COVER
SHEET INSERT
FRONT COVER, SHEET INSERT
FRONT& BACK COVER, SHEET INSERT
OVERLAY
STORE TO E-FILING
STORE TO E-FILING
COPY&FILE

Clearing functions selected

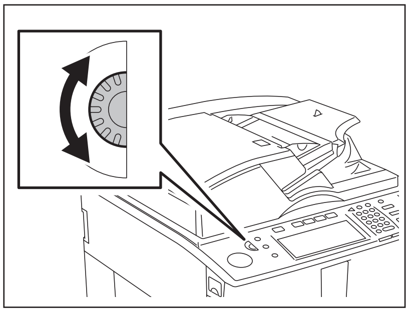
When you press the selected button, the function which has been selected is cleared. Or the selected setting is cleared automatically by the automatic function clear* when the equipment has been left inactive for a specified period of time.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

* Automatic function clear:
This function works when a specified period of time has passed since the last paper exit or the last entry of any button. This function returns all the function settings to default without the need to press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button. When the department or user management function is being used, the display returns to the department code or user information input menu. When these functions are not being used, the display returns to the basic menu of the copier function.
The period for the automatic function clear is set at 45 seconds by default at the time of installation of the equipment. See the User Functions Guide for change of this setting.

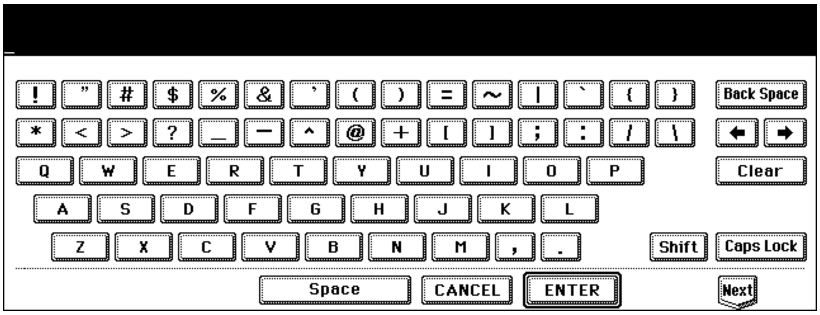
Adjusting the contrast of the touch panel

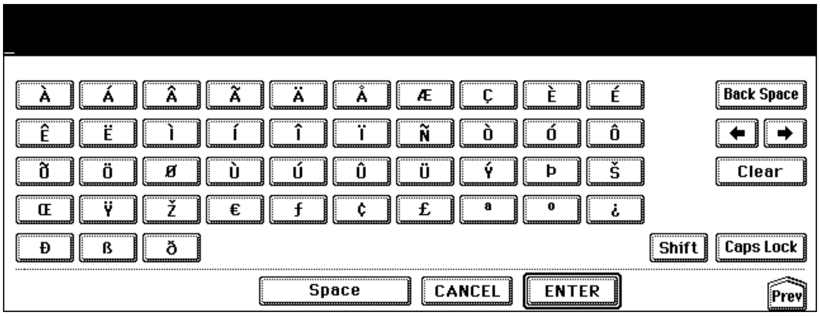
Turn this adjustment dial on the left side of the control panel to adjust the contrast of the touch panel.



Setting letters

The following menu appears when any letter entry is required for the operations of scanning, e-Filing, template and Internet FAX.
Use the buttons on the touch panel for letter entry and use the digital keys on the control panel for number entry.
After entering the letters, press the [ENTER] button. The menu will be changed.


! " # $ % & ' ( ) = ~ | ` { }
Back Space
* < > ? _ − ^ @ + [ ] ; : / \
← →
Q W E R T Y U I O P
Clear
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M , .
Shift
Caps Lock
Space
CANCEL
ENTER
Next


À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È É
Back Space
Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ñ Ò Ó Ô
← →
Õ Ö Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ Š
Clear
Œ Ÿ Ž € ƒ ¢ £ ª º ¿
Ð ß ð
Shift
Caps Lock
Space
CANCEL
ENTER
Prev

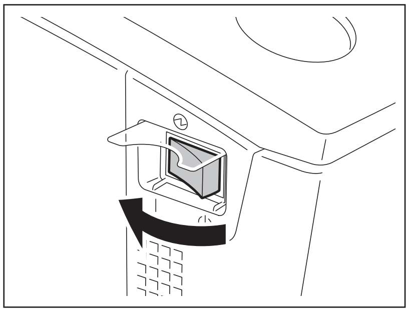
The following buttons are used for letter entry.

[Space]: Press this to enter a space.
[CANCEL]: Press this to cancel the entry of letters.
[ENTER]: Press this to fix all entered letters.
[Back Space]: Press this to delete the letter before the cursor.
[←] [→]: Press them to move the cursor.
[Clear]: Press this to delete all letters entered.
[Shift]: Press this to enter capital letters.
[Caps Lock]: Press this to switch capital letters and small letters.
[Next]: Press this to access the special keys.

2. Turning Power On / Off

Turning power on

Open the switch cover, and then turn the power switch on.



- The equipment starts warming-up. “Wait Warming Up” appears during warming-up.
- While the equipment is warming up, you can use the auto job start function.
  (🕮 P.71 “3.Auto Job Start (Job Preset)”)

The equipment will be ready for copying after about 130 seconds and "READY" appears. When you turn the power of the equipment OFF, do not simply turn the power switch to turn it off but be sure to shut it down. 🕮 P.40 “Turning power off (Shutdown)”

Tip

When the use of the equipment is managed under department management or user management function, you need to enter the department code or user information before making a copy.
For details, see 🕮 P.35 “When department or user management is used”.

When department or user management is used

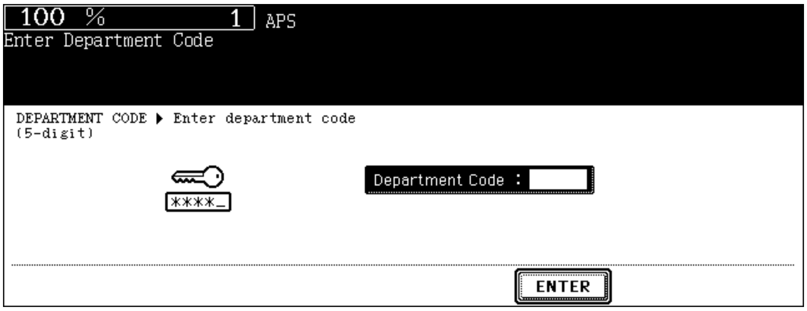
When the use of the equipment is managed under department management or user management function, each user needs to enter the department code or user information.

Department management

You can restrict users or manage copy volumes made by an individual group or department in your company using the department codes. When the copy volume is controlled under the department code, enter the code after turning the power on. See the User Functions Guide for setting and registration of the department codes.

When the power is turned on, the following menu appears.

- This menu also appears when the [ACCESS] button is pressed or the automatic function clear has worked.



100 % 1 APS
Enter Department Code

DEPARTMENT CODE ▶ Enter department code
(5-digit)

****_

Department Code :

Key in a department code (5 digits) previously registered and press the [ENTER] button. The menu will switch and the equipment will be ready to be used.

- If the department code keyed in is incorrect, the menu does not change. Key in the correct department code.

When copying is finished
When you finish all operations, press the [ACCESS] button to prevent unauthorized use of the equipment. The display returns to the department code input menu.

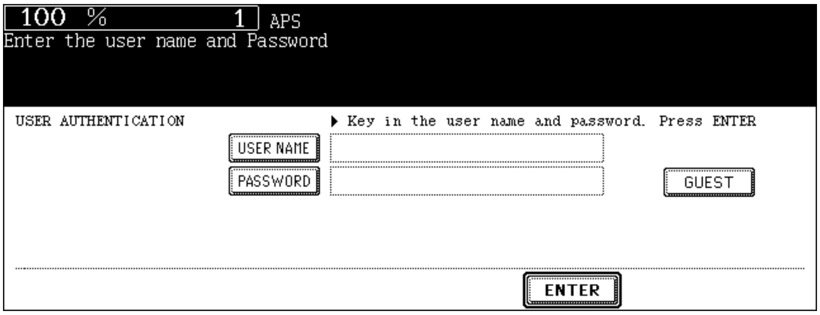
User management

Users of the equipment can be limited and the available functions and past record of each user can be controlled by using the user management function. When the equipment is managed under this function, turn the power of the equipment ON and enter the information required (e.g. user name, password) to use the equipment. The menu for entering user information also appears when you pressed the [ACCESS] button on the control panel or automatic function clear has worked. Enter the information following the procedure below.

Tip

If guest user is enabled in the user management, the [GUEST] button is displayed on the touch panel. Press the [GUEST] button to login as a guest user. For the types of functions available, consult the administrator.

MFP local authentication, LDAP authentication



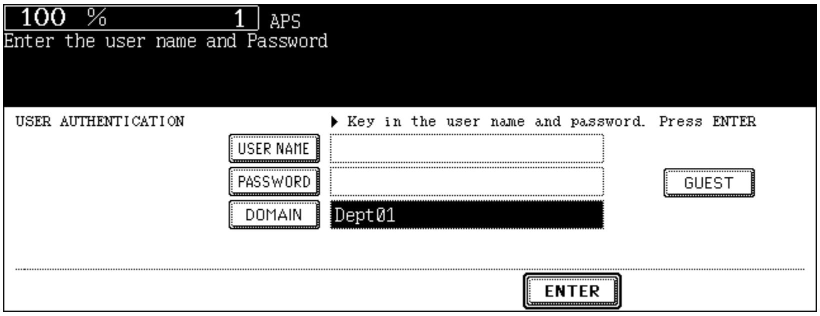
100 % 1 APS

Enter the user name and Password

USER AUTHENTICATION

▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

Windows Domain Authentication



100 % 1 APS

Enter the user name and Password

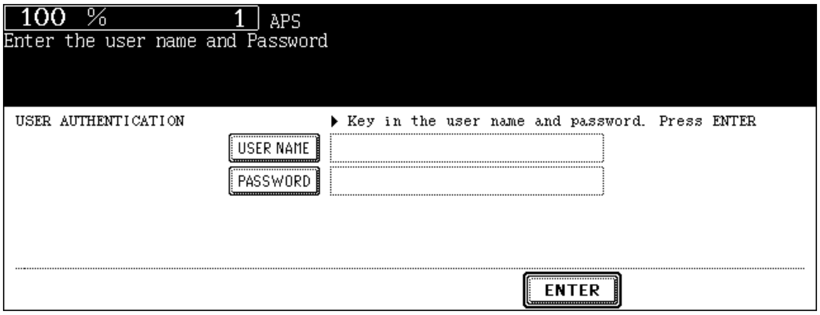
USER AUTHENTICATION

▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

DOMAIN: Dept01

1 The menu for user authentication appears.

MFP local authentication, LDAP authentication



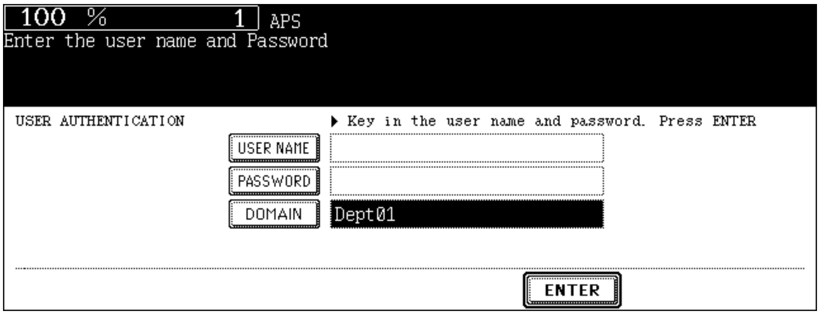
100 % 1 APS

Enter the user name and Password

USER AUTHENTICATION

▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

Windows Domain Authentication



100 % 1 APS

Enter the user name and Password

USER AUTHENTICATION

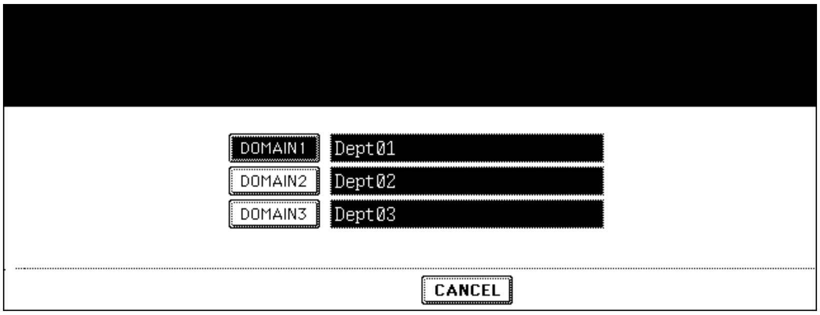
▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

DOMAIN: Dept01

- The domain name previously set by the network administrator is displayed in [DOMAIN].

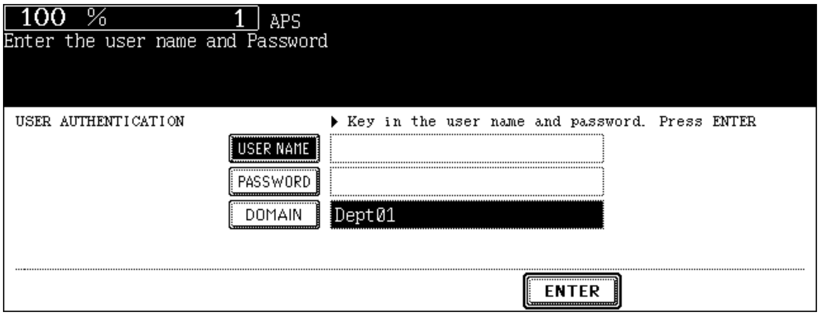
Tip

If the domain name belonging to your organization is not displayed, press the [DOMAIN] button and select it.



DOMAIN1: Dept01
DOMAIN2: Dept02
DOMAIN3: Dept03

2 Press the [USER NAME] button.



100 % 1 APS
Enter the user name and Password

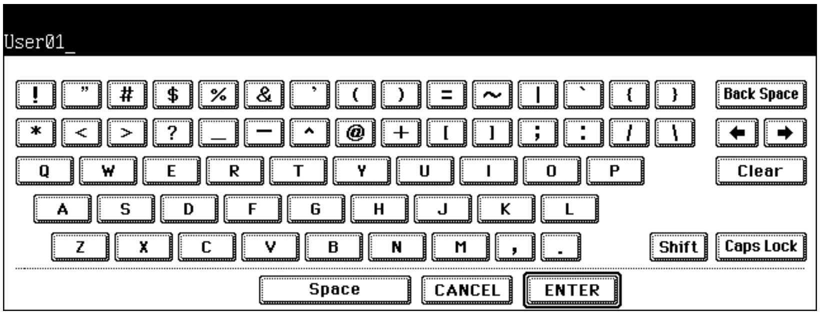
USER AUTHENTICATION

▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

DOMAIN: Dept01

USER NAME
PASSWORD
DOMAIN
ENTER

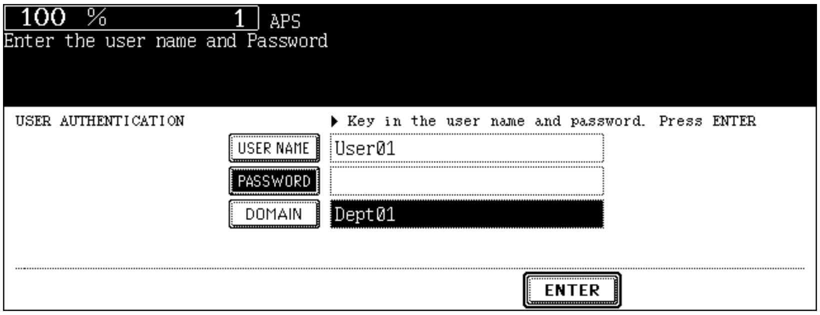
3 Enter the user name (maximum 128 letters) and then press the [ENTER] button.



User01_

! ” # $ % & ’ ( ) = ~ | ` { }
Back Space
* < > ? _ − ^ @ + [ ] ; : / \
← →
Q W E R T Y U I O P
Clear
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M , .
Shift
Caps Lock
Space
CANCEL
ENTER

4 Press the [PASSWORD] button.



100 % 1 APS
Enter the user name and Password

USER AUTHENTICATION

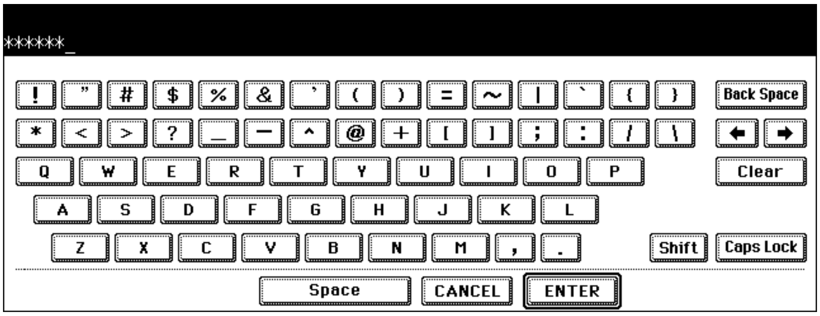
▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

USER NAME: User01

DOMAIN: Dept01

USER NAME
PASSWORD
DOMAIN
ENTER

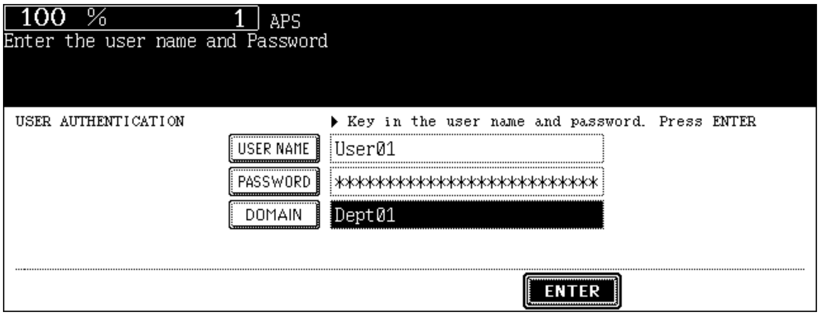
5 Enter the password (maximum 64 letters) and then press the [ENTER] button.



******_

! ” # $ % & ’ ( ) = ~ | ` { }
Back Space
* < > ? _ − ^ @ + [ ] ; : / \
← →
Q W E R T Y U I O P
Clear
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M , .
Shift
Caps Lock
Space
CANCEL
ENTER

6 Press the [ENTER] button.



100 % 1 APS

Enter the user name and Password

USER AUTHENTICATION

▶ Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER

USER NAME: User01

PASSWORD: **************************

DOMAIN: Dept01

USER NAME
PASSWORD
DOMAIN
ENTER

The menu will switch and the equipment will be ready to be used.

- If the user information is incorrectly entered, the menu will not switch. In this case, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button and then enter it again.

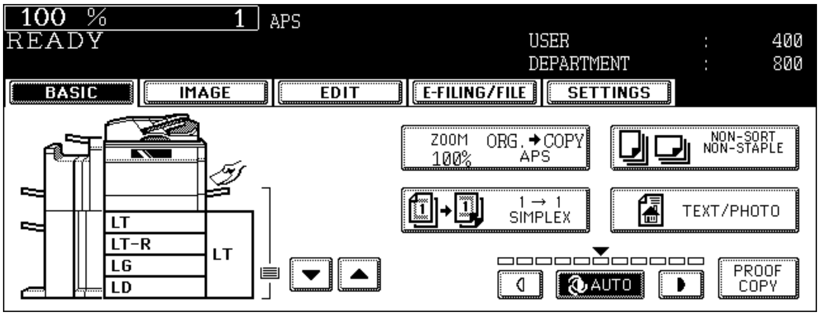
Displaying the available number of copies

How many copies the user and the department have remaining is displayed, respectively.
The number appears for 5 seconds on the upper right of the screen.

USER:	Available number of copies for the user
DEPARTMENT:	Available number of copies for the department

Tip

The available number of copies is displayed only when both the department and user management functions are enabled.



100 % 1 APS

READY

USER : 400

DEPARTMENT : 800

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- The display differs depending on the management setting of this equipment.

When copying is finished

When you finish all operations, press the [ACCESS] button to prevent unauthorized use of the equipment. The display returns to the one for entering user information.

Turning power off (Shutdown)

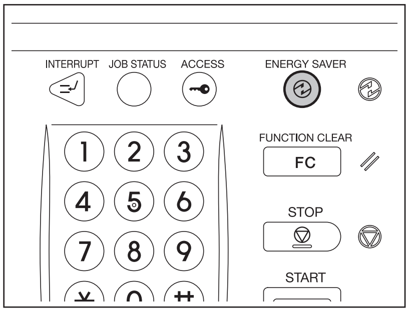
When turning OFF the power of the equipment, be sure to shut it down following the procedure below. Check the following three points before shutdown.

- No jobs should be left in the print job list. (📖 P.252 “1.Job Status”)
- None of the PRINT DATA, MEMORY RX and FAX communication lamps should be blinking. (If the equipment is shut down while any of the above lamps is blinking, jobs in progress such as FAX reception will be aborted.)
- No PC should access the equipment via the network.

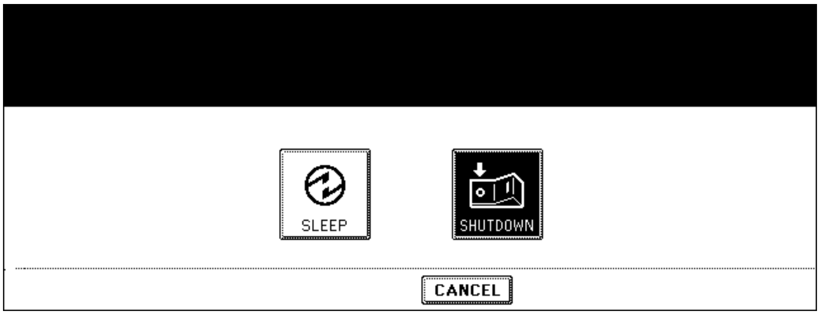
Note

- Do not press the power switch to turn the power OFF, otherwise the stored data may be lost or the hard disk may be damaged.
- When the equipment is shut down, the job in progress is cleared.

1 Press the [ENERGY SAVER] button on the control panel.

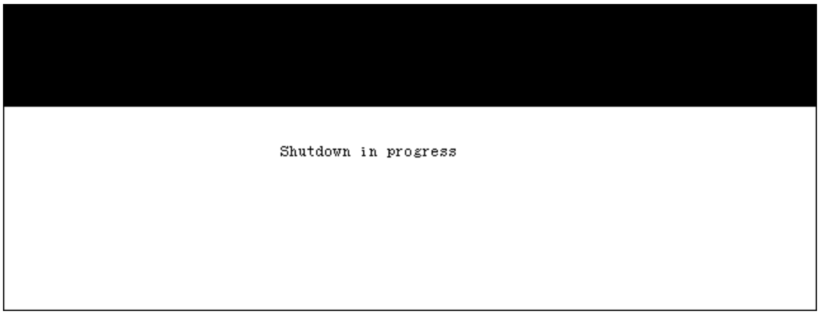

INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

2 Press the [SHUTDOWN] button on the touch panel.


SLEEP
SHUTDOWN
CANCEL

- To cancel the shutdown operation, press the [CANCEL] button.

3 “Shutdown in progress” appears on the menu. After a while, the equipment is shut down and the power is turned OFF.



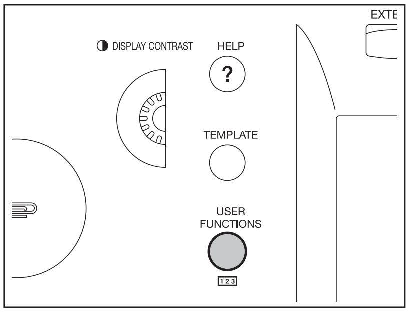
Shutdown in progress

- The power switch automatically returns to the OFF position.

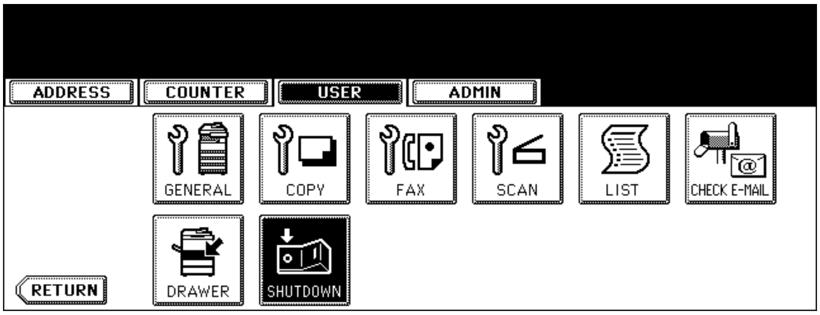
Turning the power off (Shutting down) with the [USER FUNCTIONS] button

The equipment can also be shut down by following the procedure below.

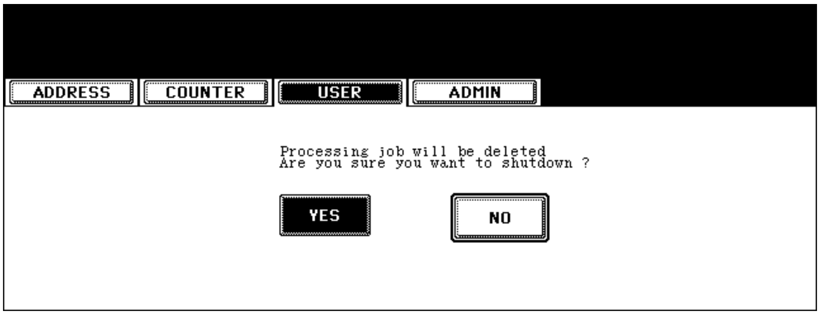
1 Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to enter the user setting menu, and then press the [SHUTDOWN] button.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
COPY
FAX
SCAN
LIST
CHECK E-MAIL
DRAWER
SHUTDOWN
RETURN

3 “Processing job will be deleted. Are you sure you want to shutdown?” appears on the menu. Press the [YES] button.



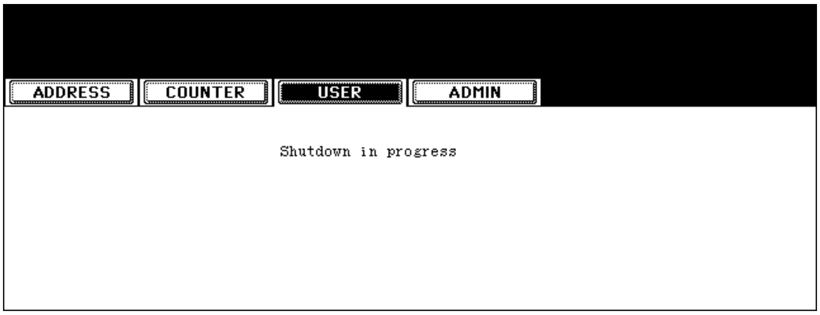
ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN

Processing job will be deleted
Are you sure you want to shutdown ?

YES
NO

- To cancel the shutdown operation, press the [NO] button.

4 “Shutdown in progress” appears on the menu. After a while, the equipment is shut down and the power is turned OFF.



ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN

Shutdown in progress

- The power switch automatically returns to the OFF position.

3. Energy Saving Mode

This equipment supports three energy saving modes; the Automatic Energy Save mode, the Off mode and the Sleep Mode.

Automatic Energy Save Mode

The equipment enters the Automatic Energy Save mode automatically after a specified period of time [*1] since its last use. During this mode, "Saving energy - Press START button" appears on the touch panel.

Off Mode

The equipment enters the Off mode automatically after a specified period of time [*2] since its last use. The equipment is automatically shut down and the power switch is turned off.

Tips

- This mode is applied only to the copier model.
- Turn the power switch on again to use the copier.

Sleep Mode

The equipment enters the Sleep Mode automatically after a specified period of time [*2] since its last use. During this mode, the message of the Automatic Energy Save mode disappears and the [ENERGY SAVER / SHUTDOWN] button lights in green.

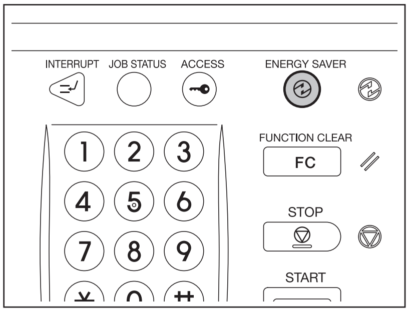
Tips

- This mode is applied to the multifunction model with any of the FAX Unit, Printer/Scanner Kit and Scanner Kit (all optional) installed.
- This mode is automatically cleared upon the reception of print data, Fax data, Internet Fax data or E-mails. It is also cleared by pressing the [START] button.

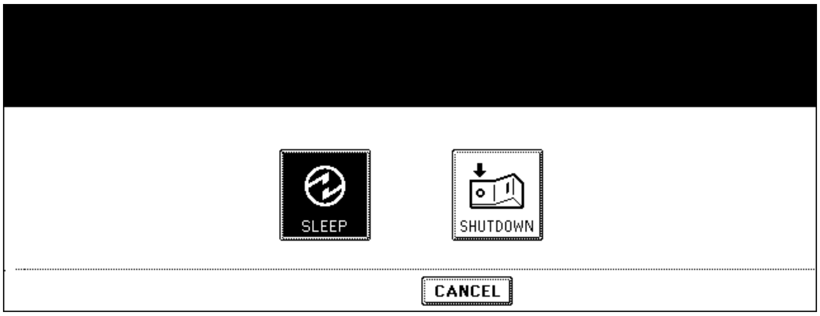
*1 This period is set at 5 minutes by factory default.
*2 This period is set at 10 minutes by factory default.
See the User Functions Guide to change the default settings noted above.
If ‘Automatic Energy Save’ and ‘Off Mode’/’Sleep Mode’ have the same setting time, ‘Off Mode’/’Sleep Mode’ takes priority.

The equipment can also be made to enter the sleep mode manually by means of the following procedure.

1 Press the [ENERGY SAVER] button on the control panel.



2 Press the [SLEEP] button on the touch panel.



- The equipment enters into the sleep mode. During this mode, the display on the touch panel disappears and the [ENERGY SAVER] button lights in green.

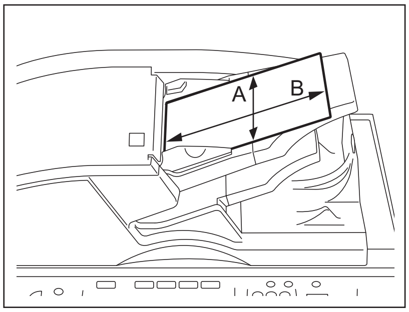
To canceling the energy saving mode
Press the [ENERGY SAVER] button on the control panel again. The sleep mode is cleared and the equipment will be ready for copying.
The sleep mode is also cleared by pressing any button of [COPY], [SCAN], [FAX], [e-FILING] and [START].

- The [SCAN] button is enabled only when the Printer/Scanner Kit or the Scanner Kit (both optional) is installed.
- The [FAX] button is enabled only when any of the FAX Unit, Printer/Scanner Kit and Scanner Kit (all optional) is installed.

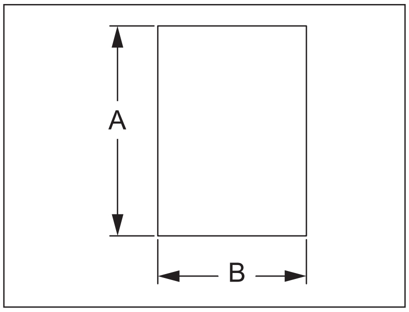
4. Setting Copy Paper

About the “width” and the “length” of the original and the copy paper

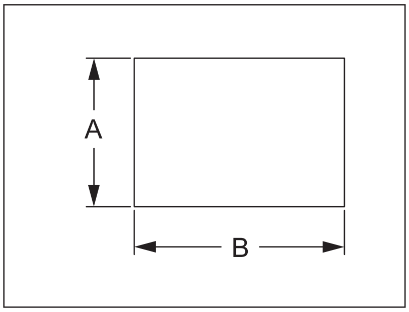
Originals and copy paper whose size is LT can be set in both portrait and landscape directions. In the size descriptions of original and copy paper throughout this manual, “A” in the figure below is called “length” and “B” is called “width”. (In the figure below, the operator is standing in front of the equipment.)



When “B” is shorter than “A”, it is called “placing the original in a portrait direction.”



When “B” is longer than “A”, it is called “placing the original in a landscape direction.”



In this manual, when an original or copy paper which can be set in both in portrait and landscape directions is placed horizontally, its paper size is identified by adding “-R” at the end. (e.g. “LT-R”)

Copy paper types and sizes

Feeder	Paper type	Paper size	Maximum sheet capacity
Drawers	Plain paper (16 - 20 lb. Bond)	(Standard size) LT format: LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP, 13"LG, 8.5"SQ A/B format: A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO K format: 8K, 16K, 16K-R	550 sheets (17 lb. Bond) 500 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
	Thick 1 (- 28 lb. Bond)		400 sheets
	Thick 2 (- 90 lb. Index)		200 sheets
	Thick 3 (- 110 lb. Index)		150 sheets
	Tab paper	(Standard size) LT, A4	The tab paper can be set in any one drawer and the bypass tray except Large Capacity Feeder. (The recommendation is to set in the 2nd drawer.)*1 & *3
Tandem Large Capacity Feeder	Plain paper (16 - 20 lb. Bond)	(Standard size) LT, A4	3000 sheets (17 lb. Bond) 2500 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
	Thick 1 (- 28 lb. Bond)		2000 sheets
	Thick 2 (- 90 lb. Bond)		1000 sheets
	Thick 3 (- 110 lb. Bond)		750 sheets
External Large Capacity Feeder (optional)	Plain paper (16 - 20 lb. Bond)	(Standard size) LT, A4	4500 sheets (17 lb. Bond) 4000 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
	Thick 1 (- 28 lb. Bond)		3500 sheets
	Thick 2 (- 90 lb. Index)		2000 sheets
	Thick 3 (- 110 lb. Index)		1500 sheets
Bypass tray	Plain paper (16 - 20 lb. Bond)	(Standard size) LT format: LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP, 13"LG, 8.5"SQ A/B format: A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO K format: 8K, 16K, 16K-R (Non-Standard size) Length: 3.9-11.7", Width: 5.8-17"	100 sheets (17 lb. Bond) 100 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
	Thick 1 (- 28 lb. Bond)		80 sheets (- 28 lb. Bond)
	Thick 2 (- 90 lb. Index)		40 sheets (- 90 lb. Index)
	Thick 3 (- 110 lb. Index)		30 sheets (- 110 lb. Index)
	Tracing paper (20 lb. Bond only)		*1
	Sticker labels		*2
	Tab paper	(Standard size) LT, A4	*1
	OHP film	(Standard size) LT only	30 sheets *1

*1 Automatic duplex copying is not available.

*2 Use Thick 3 mode for sticker labels.

*3 When the optional finisher is attached to the equipment, only 5 or 8-bank tab paper is available.

- Multiple paper sizes cannot be set in one drawer.
- “Maximum Sheet Capacity” refers to the maximum number of sheets when Toshiba-recommended paper is set.
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated inside of the guide.
- “K format” is a Chinese standard size.

Abbreviations for paper sizes:
LT: Letter, LD: Ledger, LG: Legal, ST: Statement, COMP: Computer, SQ: Square

Toshiba-recommended paper / Handling and storing paper

Recommended paper

To make copies with a fine image, the following types of paper are recommended.
If you wish to use copy paper other than the recommended types, consult your service technician.

Paper type	Toshiba recommendations/Manufacturer		Mode
Plain paper	TIDAL/Hammermill (20 lb. Bond)		PLAIN
Thick	Laser/Hammermill	(24 lb. Bond)	THICK1
		(32 lb. Bond)	THICK2
	Exact Index/WAUSAU	(90 lb. Index)	THICK2
		(110 lb. Index)	THICK3
Tab paper	Copytabs/Blanks USA		TAB
Tracing paper	20 lb. Bond tracing paper		PLAIN
Sticker labels	5165/Avery		THICK3
OHP film *	PP2500L/3M		OHP FILM
	X-10.0/Folex		OHP FILM

* Only Toshiba-recommended OHP film should be used. Using any other film may cause a malfunction.

Handling and storing paper

Pay attention to the following points:

- Avoid using paper that is specially treated or previously printed on another machine, and also avoid performing double copying on the same side of the paper, since this may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use paper with creases, wrinkles or curls, paper prone to curling, smooth or rough paper; this may cause paper misfeeds.
- Paper should be wrapped in its wrapping and stored in a damp-free place.
- To prevent paper from being folded or bent, store it evenly on a flat surface.

Setting copy paper (size change) / Setting the drawer for special uses

When you set or add copy paper in the drawer, follow the procedure below.

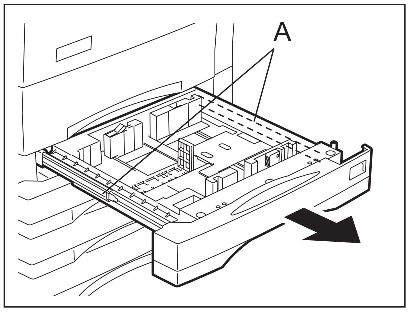
Placing paper in the drawer

1. **Turn the power on.**

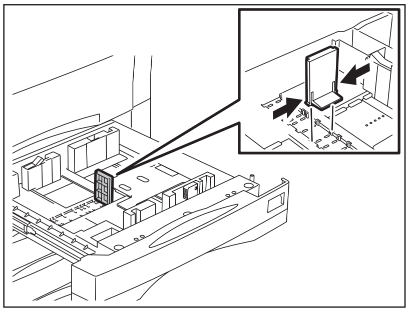
2. **Pull out the drawer carefully until it comes to a stop.**

   A: Slide rail

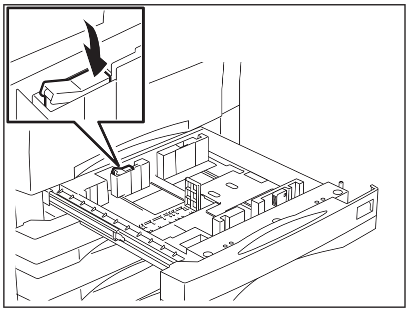
   - Be careful not to touch the slide rail of the drawer.



3. **Push the lower part of the end guide in the direction of the arrow to remove it, then reinstall it at the desired paper size (indicated on the bottom inner surface on the drawer).**

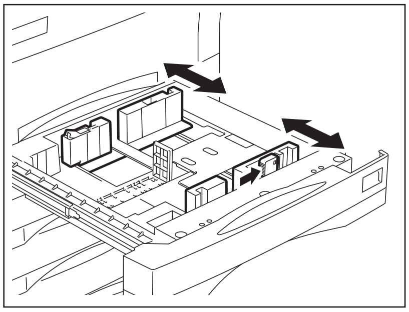


4. **Push the arrow part (right side) of the side guide to unlock it.**

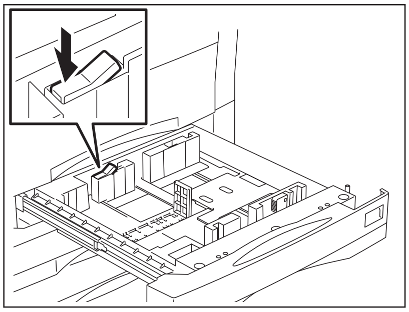


5 While pushing the green lever of the side guide in the direction of the arrow, set the side guide to the desired paper size.

- Adjust the side guides with both hands.

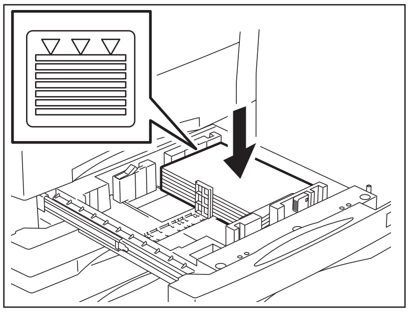


6 Push the arrow part (left side) to lock the side guide.



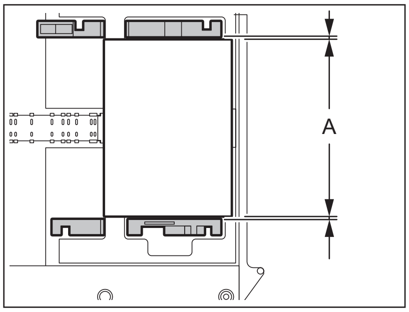
7 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- Place paper with its copy side down. (The copy side may be described on the wrapping paper.)
- For the maximum number of sheets that can be set, see 🕮 P.46 “Copy paper types and sizes”.
- Fan the paper well before placing it in the drawer.
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated inside of the guide.
- Do not use creased, folded, wrinkled or damp sheets of paper.

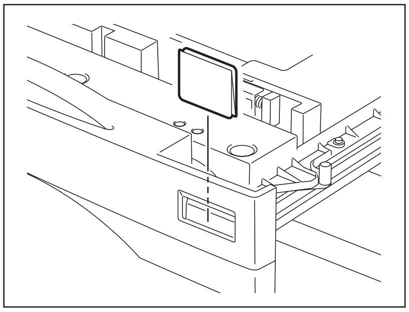


Note

Make sure that a gap of 0.02" (0.04" or less in total) is left between the paper and the side guide for plain paper, and approx. 0.02" to 0.04" (approx. 0.04" to 0.08" in total) for thick paper. If the gap is insufficient, it could cause paper misfeeding.



8 **When the paper size is different from the one in the drawer, change the paper size indicator to match with the size of paper which has been set.**



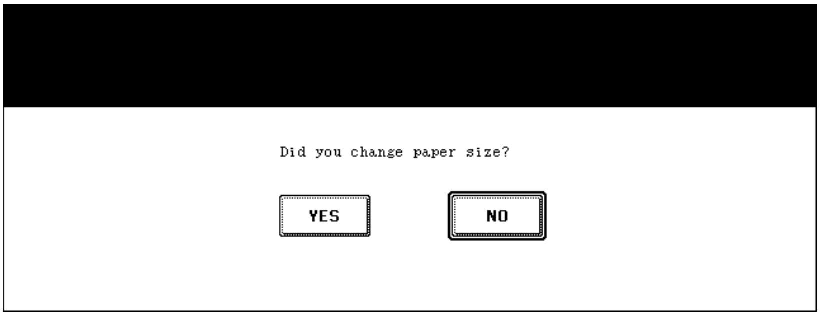
9 **Push the drawer straight into the equipment until it comes to a stop.**

- Be sure to close the drawer securely and carefully.

Caution

Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer. This could injure you.

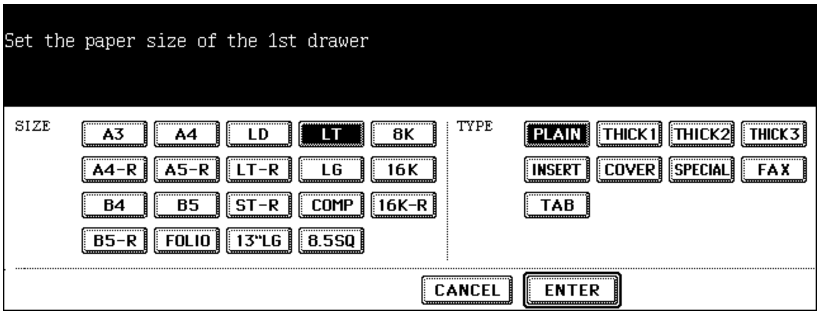
10 **When the paper size is different from the one in the drawer, press the [YES] button. When the paper is the same size as the one in the drawer, press the [NO] button.**



Did you change paper size?

- When setting the same size of paper, step 11 is not necessary.

11 **Press the paper size button corresponding to the paper that has been set, and then press the [ENTER] button.**



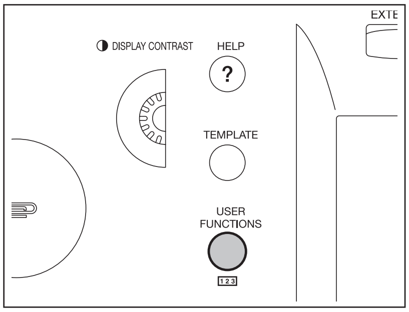
Set the paper size of the 1st drawer

SIZE
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
TYPE
PLAIN
THICK1
THICK2
THICK3
INSERT
COVER
SPECIAL
FAX
TAB
CANCEL
ENTER

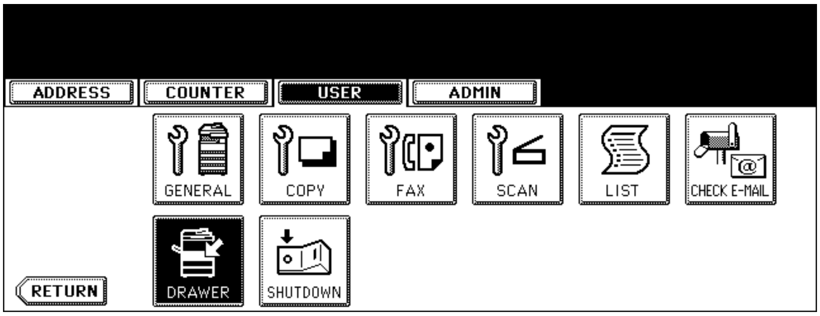
Changing the setting of paper size

If the setting of the paper size registered in the equipment does not correspond to the one in the drawer, it could cause a paper jam. In this case, replace the paper corresponding to the setting of the paper size (📖 P.49 "Placing paper in the drawer"), or change the setting of the paper size according to the following procedure.

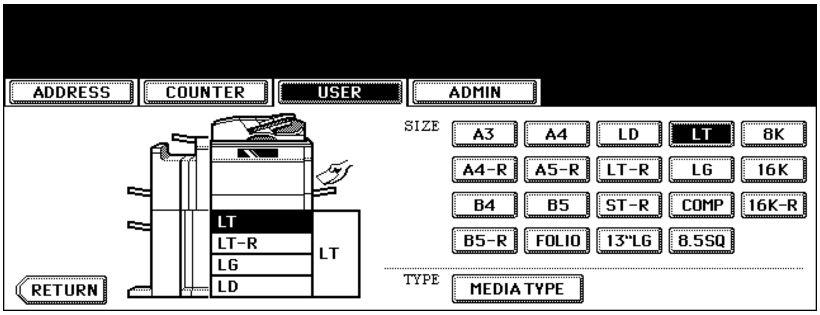
1 Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to enter the user setting menu, then press the [DRAWER] button.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
COPY
FAX
SCAN
LIST
CHECK E-MAIL
DRAWER
SHUTDOWN
RETURN

3 Press the drawer on the touch panel corresponding to the one in which the paper size has been set, and then press the button indicating the new one.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
SIZE
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
TYPE
MEDIA TYPE
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
RETURN

Drawer for special uses

When you set paper for special uses other than normal copying (e.g. sheets for cover copying) in the drawer, you need to set this drawer for the special use in advance. If the drawer has been set for a special use, its indication will change on the touch panel. A drawer with this setting will not be used for normal copying.

The following paper types are selectable according to each purpose.

Paper type	Purpose	Indication	Reference
Cover sheet	Sheet used in the cover copying mode	“COVER”	📖 P.154 “9.COVER SHEET”
Insertion sheet	Sheet used in the sheet insertion mode (Up to 2 drawers can be set for this mode. First, set Insert source 1, then press the drawer for the paper type of Insert source 2, and then press the [INSERT] button.)	“INSERT 1” (or “INSERT 2”)	📖 P.157 “10.SHEET INSERTION”
Tab paper	Paper used for the tab paper mode	“TAB PAPER”	📖 P.173 “17.TAB PAPER”
FAX paper*	Fax paper (FAX Unit (optional) is required for the Fax function.)	F	(See the manual of each option.)
Special paper	Special types of paper (e.g. Paper with a watermark)	∗	-

* Lists are printed from a drawer for which FAX paper was set. For printing lists, see the User Functions Guide.

Select the suitable paper type from the following according to its paper weight.

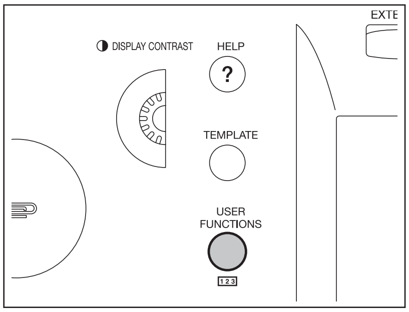
Paper type	Paper wight	Indication	Reference
Thick 1	- 28 lb. Bond	$\asymp_1$	📖 P.46 “Copy paper types and sizes”
Thick 2	- 90 lb. Index	$\asymp_2$	
Thick 3	- 110 lb. Index	$\asymp_3$	

Setting the drawer for special uses

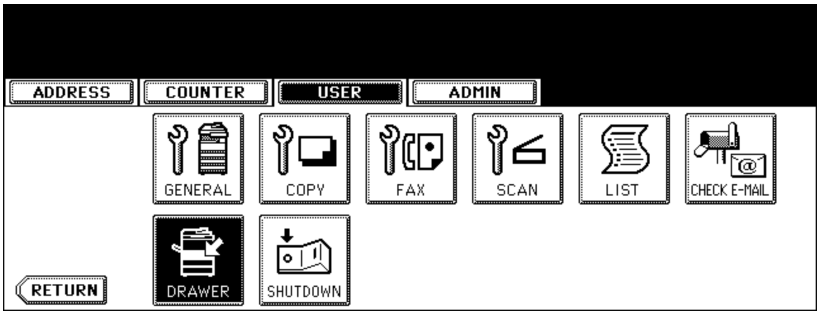
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- Set the paper with its copy side down.
- Set the paper size as required. (📖 P.52 “Changing the setting of paper size”)
- To set tab paper, see 📖 P.173 “17.TAB PAPER”.

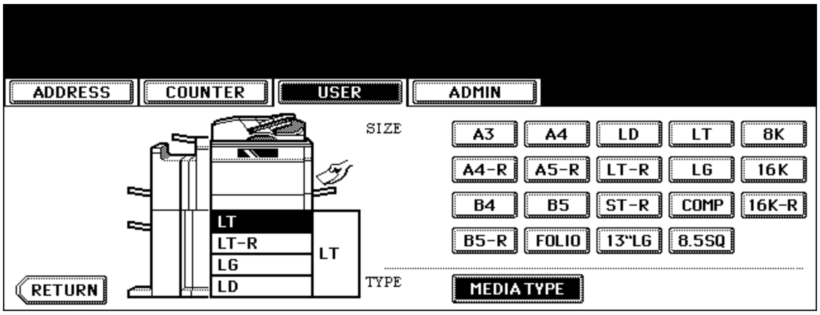
2 Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

3 Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to enter the user setting menu, then press the [DRAWER] button.

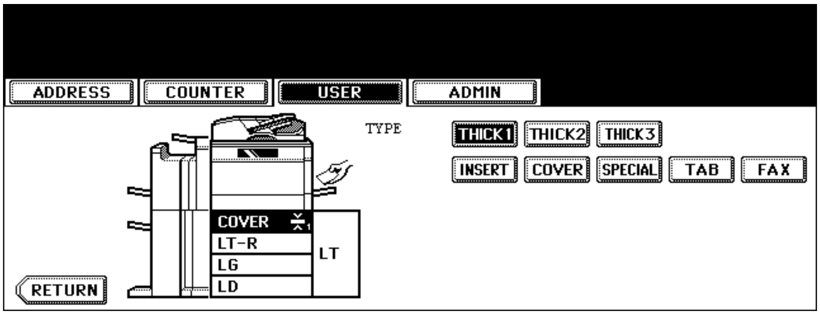

ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
COPY
FAX
SCAN
LIST
CHECK E-MAIL
DRAWER
SHUTDOWN
RETURN

4 Press the [MEDIA TYPE] button.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
SIZE
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
TYPE
MEDIA TYPE
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
RETURN

5 Press the desired drawer and paper type button on the touch panel.

(e.g. when paper with a paper weight of “Thick 1” is set as a cover sheet in the 1st drawer)

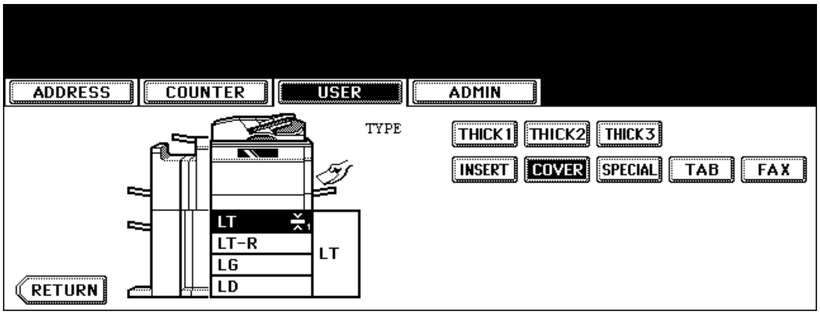

ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
TYPE
THICK1
THICK2
THICK3
INSERT
COVER
SPECIAL
TAB
FAX
COVER
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
RETURN

- Press the [RETURN] button three times or the [COPY] button on the control panel to return to the basic menu.

Clearing the drawer for special uses

1 **Follow steps 1 to 4 of “Setting the drawer for special uses” (📖 P.54).**

2 **Press the drawer on the touch panel corresponding to the one whose setting you want to clear, and then press the button indicating the paper type in this drawer.**


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
TYPE
THICK1
THICK2
THICK3
INSERT
COVER
SPECIAL
TAB
FAX
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
RETURN

- The paper type setting is cleared and the indication of drawer returns to the original state.

Tip

When both [INSERT SOURCE 1] and [INSERT SOURCE 2] have been set and only the setting of [INSERT SOURCE 1] is cleared, the drawer for [INSERT SOURCE 2] changes to the one for [INSERT SOURCE 1].

Adding paper in the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder

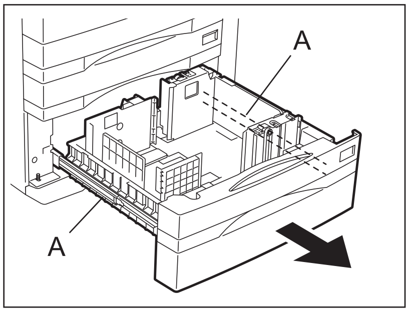
Tip

This operation is applied only to the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder Type.

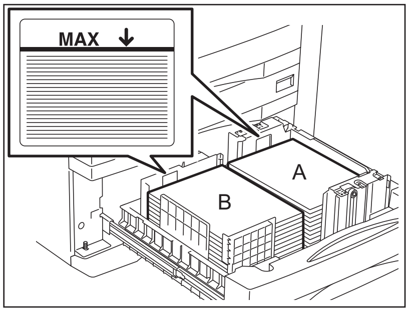
1 **Pull the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder out carefully until it comes to a stop.**

A: Slide rail

- Be careful not to touch the drawer slide rail.



2 Open some packages of paper, take out entire reams of paper and set them aligned in tray A and tray B with their copy side down.



- For the maximum number of sheets that can be set, see 🕮 P.46 “Copy paper types and sizes”.
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated on the side guide.
- Fan and jog the paper well before placing them on the trays. Set the paper for A to the right side, and set it for B to the left side. (The paper can be set neatly if you pile it up gradually and alternately in trays A and B.) Be sure that the center lever is not open (see the labels attached in the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder).
- Paper starts being fed out of the elevator tray A at first. When the paper on the tray A has run out, the paper on the tray B moves to the position of A and starts being fed.
- Do not use creased, folded, wrinkled or damp sheets of paper.

3 Push the drawer of the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder straight into the equipment until it comes to a stop.

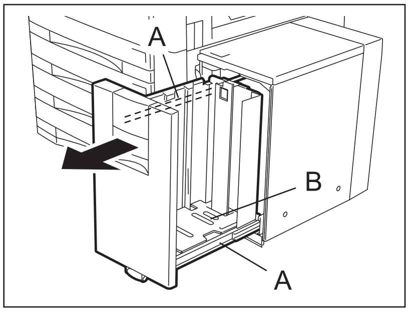
- Close the drawer completely. The elevator tray automatically moves up to the paper feeding position.

Caution

Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer. This could injure you.

Setting paper in the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional)

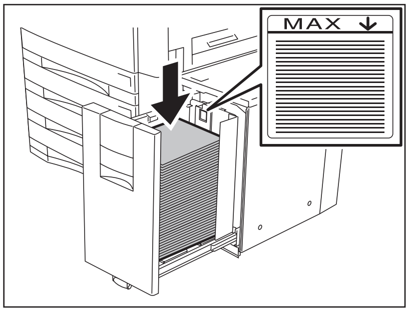
1 Pull out the External Large Capacity Feeder carefully until it comes to a stop.



A: Slide rail
B: Elevator tray

- Be careful not to touch the slide rail.

2 Place the paper on the elevator tray.



- Set the paper with its copy side up.
- For the maximum number of sheets that can be set, see 📖 P.46 “Copy paper types and sizes”.
- Fan and jog the paper well before placing it on the elevator tray. Set the paper aligned with the rear guide.
- If there is a gap between the set paper and the rear guide, the copied image may tilt.
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated on the rear guide.
- Do not use creased, folded, wrinkled or damp sheets of paper.

3 Push the drawer of the External Large Capacity Feeder straight into the equipment until it comes to a stop.

- Close the drawer completely. The elevator tray automatically moves up to the paper feeding position.

Caution

Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer. This could injure you.

2. HOW TO MAKE COPIES

1. General Copying Procedures........60
2. Setting Originals........63
    - Originals sizes and types / Maximum number of sheets........63
    - Placing originals on the glass........66
    - Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder........68
3. Auto Job Start (Job Preset)........71
4. Interrupt Copying........73
5. Stopping Copy Operation........74
6. Bypass Copying........75
    - Bypass copying........75
    - Bypass copying on standard size paper........76
    - Bypass copying on non-standard size paper........80
    - Registering non-standard size in the memory........83
7. Proof Copy........84

1. General Copying Procedures

Set originals after placing paper or confirming that there is paper in the drawers. When the [START] button on the control panel is pressed with any of the settings unchanged, copies are made in the initial (default) settings. You can make copies as desired by setting various copy modes.

Initial (Default) settings

When the power is turned on, when the energy saving mode is cleared, and when the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button on the control panel is pressed, various setting items are automatically set. These items are called the initial (default) settings. These initial settings can be changed as desired. See the User Functions Guide for details.

The table below lists the various items of the initial settings at the time of installation of this equipment.

Item	Initial (Default) setting
Reproduction ratio	100%
Copy quantity	1
Paper selection	Automatic Paper Selection (APS)
Original -> Copy	1-Sided -> 1-Sided
Density adjustment	Automatic copy density adjustment
Image quality	TEXT/PHOTO MODE
Finishing mode	Placing originals on the original glass: Non-sort/ Non-staple mode Placing originals on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder: Sort mode
Using Reversing Automatic Document Feeder	Continuous feed mode

Copying procedure

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- For the types and sizes of paper selectable, see 🕮 P.46 “Copy paper types and sizes”.

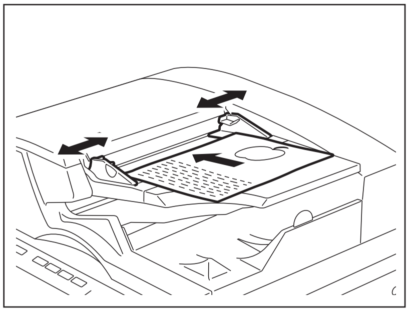
Tip

When the desired size or type of paper is not in any of the drawers or the External Large Capacity Feeder, see the following pages.
- 🕮 P.49 “Setting copy paper (size change) / Setting the drawer for special uses”
- 🕮 P.57 “Setting paper in the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional)”
- 🕮 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”

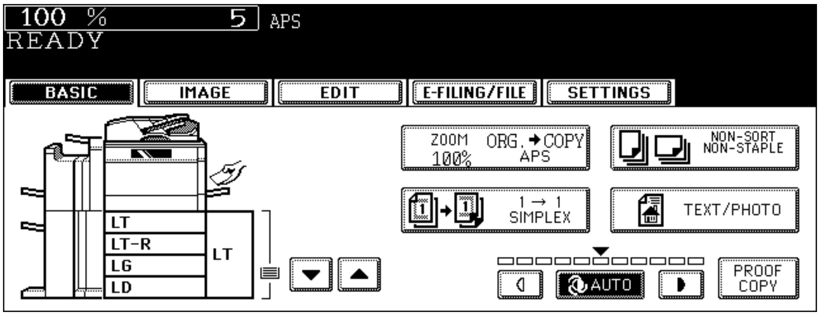
2 Place the original(s). See the following pages to set the originals.

- 📖 P.63 “Originals sizes and types”
- 📖 P.66 “Placing originals on the glass”
- 📖 P.68 “Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder”

The originals are copied in the order of being scanned.



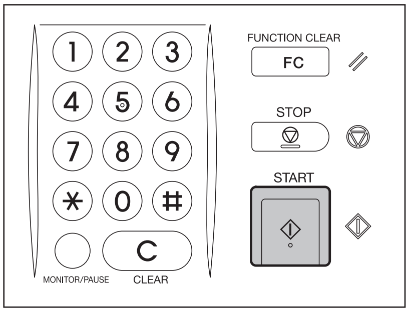
3 Select the copy modes as required. When you want to copy more than one set, key in the desired number of copies.


100 %
5
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- Press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel to correct the number keyed in.
- Note that some combinations of copy modes are restricted. (📖 P.357 “4.Copying Function Combination Matrix”)
- Once the [START] button on the control panel has pressed, any change in copy modes (including setting of the previously divided sets of originals) cannot be applied afterward.

4 Press the [START] button.

- Copying starts.


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
C
MONITOR/PAUSE
CLEAR
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START

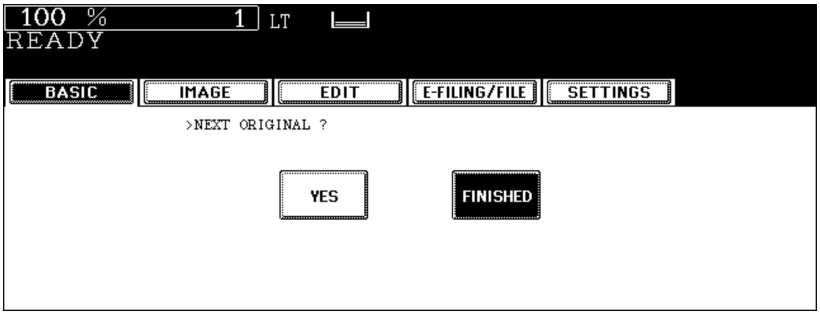
Tip

When you copy by placing originals on the original glass (e.g. using the sort mode, or making 1-sided original 2-sided copies), the data of these originals are scanned into the memory. In this case, proceed to steps 5 and 6.

5 Place the next original, and press the [START] button.

- Data scanning of this original starts.
- The next original will also be scanned in the same manner when you press the [YES] button on the touch panel and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
- Repeat the above procedure until the scanning of the last page of the original finishes.

6 When scanning of all pages has finished, press the [FINISHED] button on the touch panel.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
YES
FINISHED

>NEXT ORIGINAL ?

- Copying starts. The paper exits with its copied side down.
- When the drawer runs out of paper during copying, a paper source of the same size and direction is automatically selected and copying continues.
- When the drawer runs out of paper during copying, the corresponding drawer on the touch panel and the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel blink. Add paper to this drawer or select another one with the same paper size.

Originals sizes and types / Maximum number of sheets

Originals sizes and types

Setting position	Type of original	Maximum size	Acceptable sizes for automatic size detection
Original glass *1	Sheets 3-dimensional object Books	Length: 11.69" Width: 17.01"	(Standard size) LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R
Reversing Automatic Document Feeder *2 *3	Plain paper Recycled paper 1-sided originals: 13.3 - 33.8 lb. 2-sided originals: 13.3 - 27.7 lb.	Length: 11.69" Width: 17.01"	(Standard size) LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP

*1 Do not place any heavy objects (9 lb. or over) on the glass.

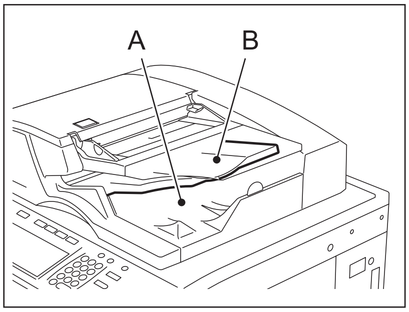
*2 Even if listed under “Type of original”, some originals may not be possible depending on their paper quality.

*3 Be sure to place ST-size originals in the landscape direction.

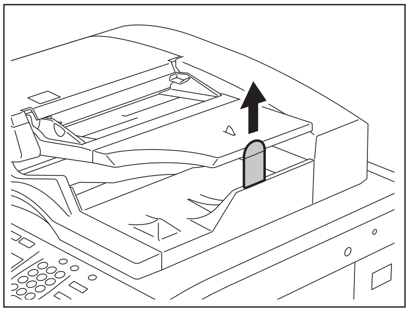
Automatic size detection does not work properly when A/B or K format paper is used for printing.
(K format is a standard paper size for China.)

Tips

- Regardless of their sizes, originals are acceptable up to 100 sheets (13.3 to 20 lb.) or 0.62" in height.
- Scanned originals automatically exit on A or B depending upon the size of originals.
  A: LT, ST-R
  B: LD, LG, LT-R, COMP

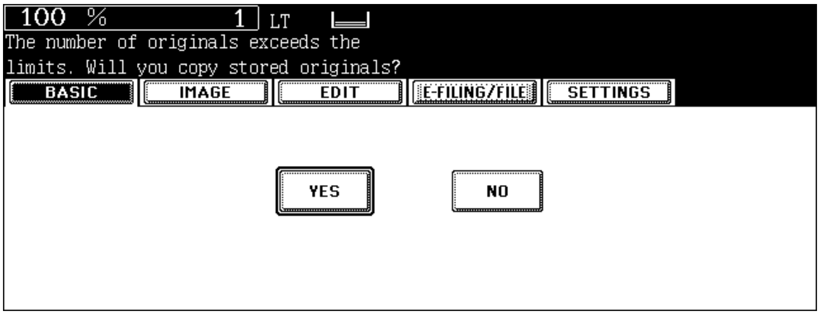


- When you copy a large number of landscape originals using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, use the original stopper to prevent them from being scattered.



Maximum number of sheets

A maximum of 2000 LT sheets, or up until the memory becomes full can be accepted per 1 copy job. When the number of scanned sheets has exceeded the above limit, a message “The number of originals exceeds the limits. Will you copy stored originals?” appears. If you want to print out the data of originals stored (scanned) up till then, press the [YES] button on the touch panel. If you want to delete the stored data, press the [NO] button.



100 % 1 LT

The number of originals exceeds the limits. Will you copy stored originals?

Placing originals on the glass

Sheet originals

Caution

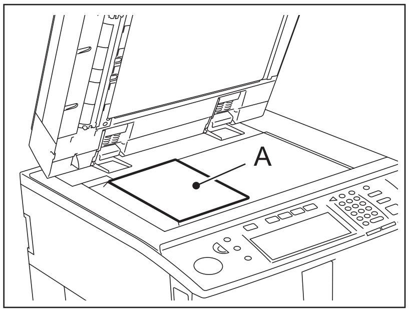
Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

1 **Raise the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.**

- Raise it 60 degrees or more for detecting the original.

2 **Place the original with its face down on the original glass and align it against the left rear corner of the glass.**

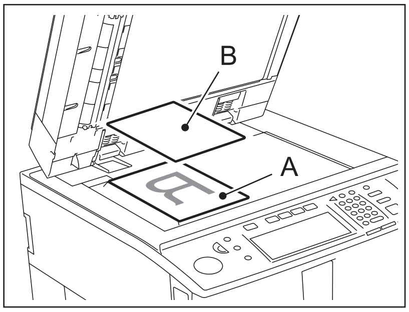
A: Original



3 **Lower the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder slowly.**

- When you want to copy originals with high transparency such as OHP films or tracing paper, place a blank sheet of paper, the same size as the original or larger, over the original.

A: Original
B: Blank sheet



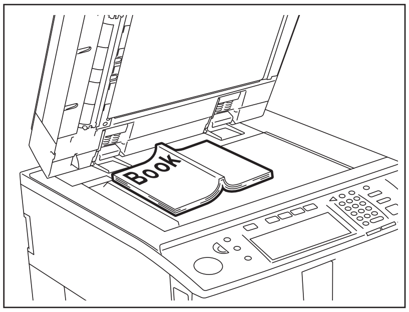
Book-type originals

Caution

Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

1 Raise the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.

2 Open the desired page of the original and place it face down. Align it against the left rear corner of the glass.



- When you want to use the 2-sided copying function or the dual-page function on the book-type originals, align the center of the original on the yellow indicator line of the glass.
  (📖 P.118 “Book-type original -> 2-sided copy”)
  (📖 P.140 “4.DUAL PAGE”)

3 Lower the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder slowly.

- Do not lower the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder forcibly when the original is very thick. There will be no problem in copying even if the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is not fully lowered.
- Do not look fully at the original glass because intensive light may leak out during copying.

Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder

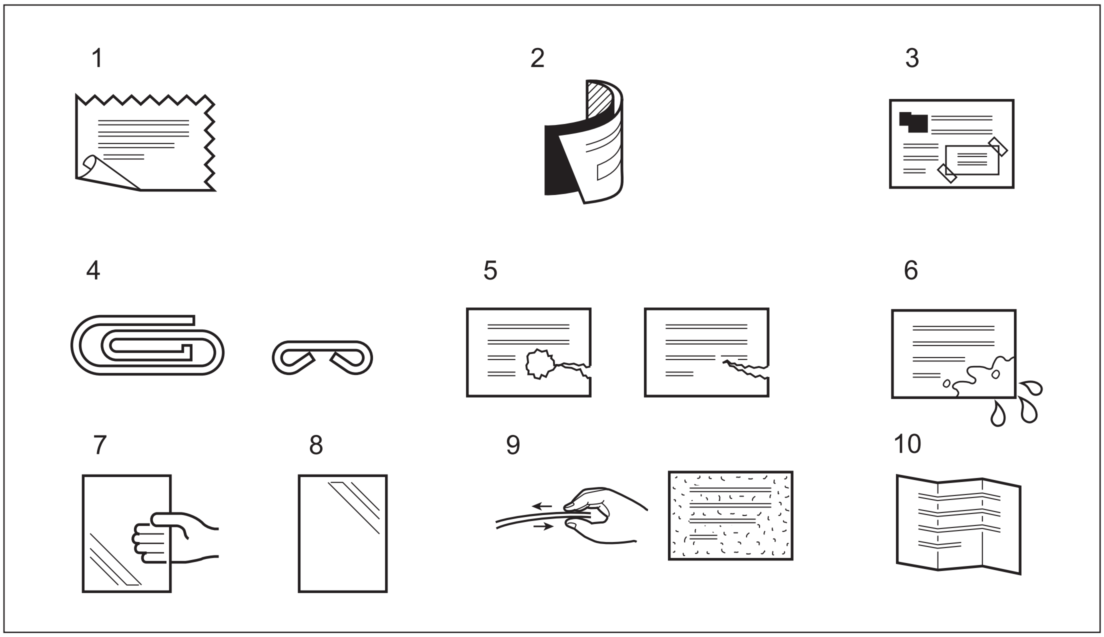
Precautions

Do not use the types of original 1 to 8 shown below because such types may cause misfeeding or damage to the equipment.

1. Badly wrinkled, folded or curled originals
2. Original with carbon paper
3. Taped, pasted or cut-out originals
4. Clipped or stapled originals
5. Originals with holes or tears
6. Damp originals
7. OHP films or tracing paper
8. Coating paper (coated with wax, etc.)

Use types of original 9 and 10 shown below with extra care.

9. Originals which cannot be moved with the fingers, or surface-treated originals
   (The sheets of such originals may not be able to be separated.)
10. Folded or curled originals should be smoothed out before being used.

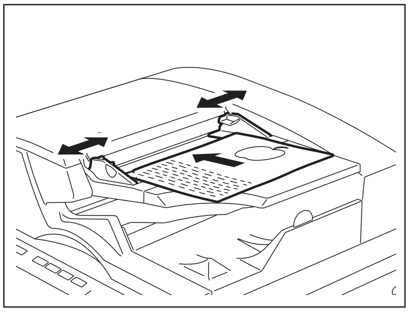


Tip

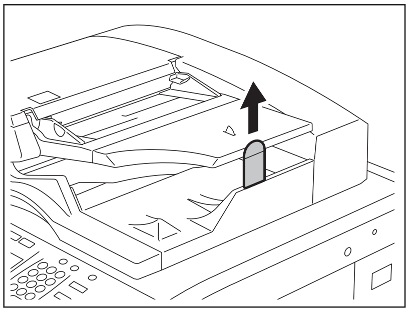
If the scanning area or the guide area is dirty, image trouble such as black streaks may occur in the print-out. Weekly cleaning of these areas is recommended. (📖 P.344 “1.Daily Inspection”)

Continuous feed mode

1 Align all the originals. Then place them face up and align the side guides to the original length.



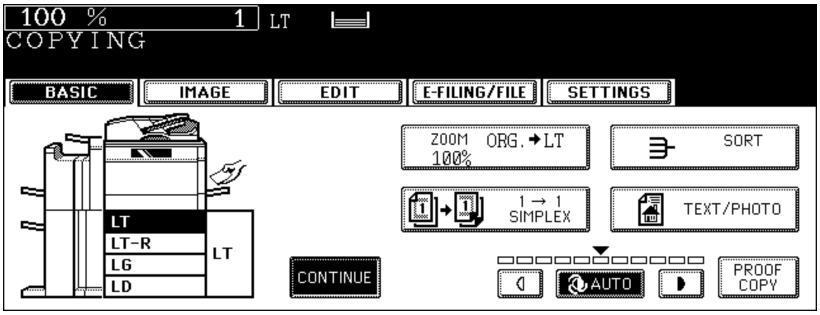
- Place the originals straight along the side guides.
- Collate the originals in the order that you want them to be copied. The top sheet of the originals will be fed first.
- This mode is also available for one-sheet originals.
- Regardless of their sizes, originals are acceptable up to 100 sheets (13.3 to 20 lb.) or 0.62" in height.
- For mixed-size originals, see 📖 P.91 “When copying mixed-size originals in one go”.



- Use the original stopper as required.

Tip

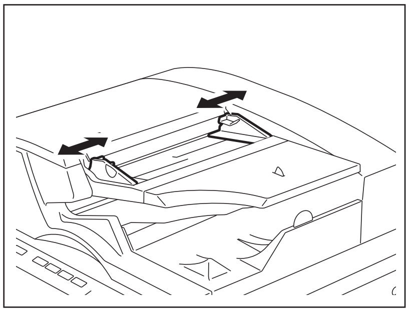
When the number of originals is too large to be set at one time, you can previously divide the originals into several sets to copy them continuously. To do so, place the first set of the originals and press the [CONTINUE] button on the touch panel while the data of this set are being scanned. When this scanning has finished, set the next set of the originals and press the [START] button on the control panel.


100 %
1
LT
COPYING
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔LT
SORT
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
CONTINUE
AUTO
PROOF COPY

Single feed mode

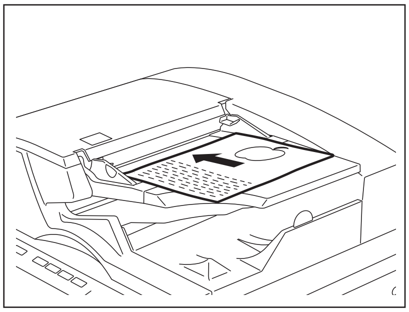
To switch over between the continuous feed mode and the single feed mode, see 📖 P.170 “16.ADF / SADF”.

1 Align the side guides to the original width.

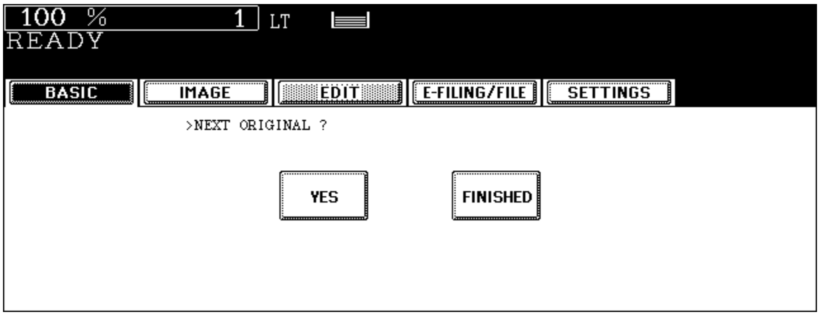


2 Insert the original with its face up and straight along the side guides.

- The original will be pulled in automatically. Be sure to let go of it when it starts being pulled.
- The menu of step 3 will be displayed.



3 If there are more originals, set them in the same way.



>NEXT ORIGINAL ?

- The same operation is performed whether or not you press the [YES] button.

4 After all originals have finished being fed, press the [FINISHED] button.

- If the [FINISHED] button is not pressed, copying is started when the automatic function clear is operated. 📖 P.32 “Clearing functions selected”

3. Auto Job Start (Job Preset)

You can reserve a copy job by scanning the original during continuous copying or while "READY (WARMING UP)" appears.

Setting auto job start

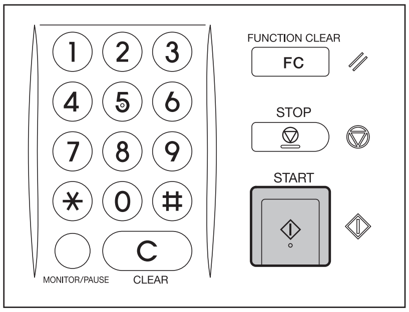
1 Place the original(s).

2 Select the copy mode and set the number of copies.

Tip

Note that the job starts in the copy modes of the previous job unless you set new ones particularly for this job.

3 Press the [START] button on the control panel.

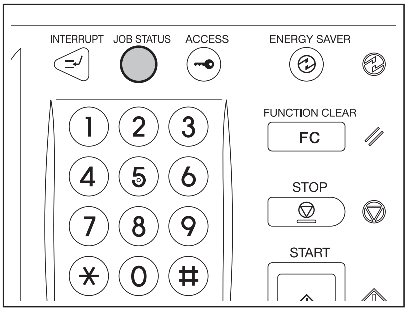


- Up to 10 jobs can be stored in the memory. When an 11th job is placed on the original glass or the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder and the [START] button is pressed, “Auto Start” appears on the touch panel.
- A maximum of 2000 LT sheets, or up until the memory becomes full can be accepted per 1 copy job. (📖 P.65 “Maximum number of sheets”)

Confirming and canceling auto job

Confirming auto job and canceling job in waiting

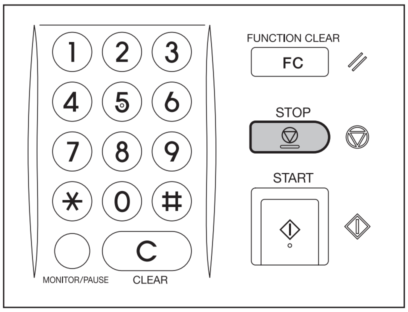
Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel to display the job list for confirming the set auto job and canceling a job waiting to be copied. To cancel auto jobs, see 📖 P.254 “Deleting print jobs”.


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#

Canceling auto job

Press the [STOP] button on the control panel to stop a job while originals are being scanned. To restart the job, press the [START] button. To clear the job, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button. (However, the originals which have been scanned before the job is stopped are copied even though the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button is pressed.)

To cancel the 11th auto job, press the [STOP] button.


FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
C
MONITOR/PAUSE
CLEAR

4. Interrupt Copying

While continuous copying is in progress, you can interrupt this job with another copy job.
The following features cannot be used together with interrupt copying:

- Cover sheet copying
- Sheet insertion copying
- Job build
- Store to e-Filing / Copy & File
- [e-FILING] / [SCAN] / [FAX] buttons

Tips

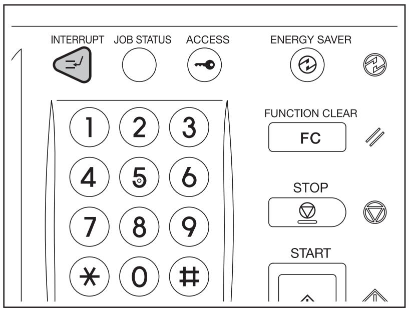
- To enable “Copy & File”, the Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is required.
- The [SCAN] button is enabled only when the Printer/Scanner Kit or the Scanner Kit (both optional) is installed.
- The [FAX] button is enabled only when any of the FAX Unit, Printer/Scanner Kit and Scanner Kit (all optional) is installed.

1 Press the [INTERRUPT] button on the control panel.

- The [INTERRUPT] button blinks first, then lights after “Job interrupted job 1 saved” appears.

Tip

When the [INTERRUPT] button is pressed while originals are being scanned, the [INTERRUPT] button blinks first. Then the button lights after “Job interrupted job 1 saved” appears when the scanning is finished.



2 Replace the original with a new one.

- Set other copy modes as required.

3 Press the [START] button on the control panel.

4 After you have finished the interrupt copying, press the [INTERRUPT] button again.

- The message “READY to resume job 1” appears and the interrupted job resumes.

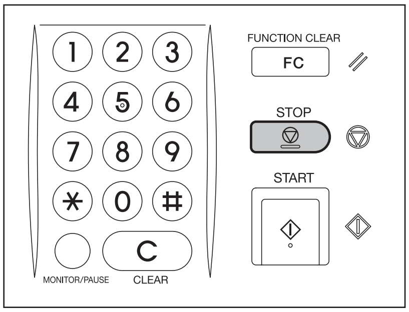
Tip

Interrupt copying is automatically canceled after a certain period by automatic function clearing without the need to press the [INTERRUPT] button again. The interrupted job (= Job 1) resumes after this automatic function clearing.

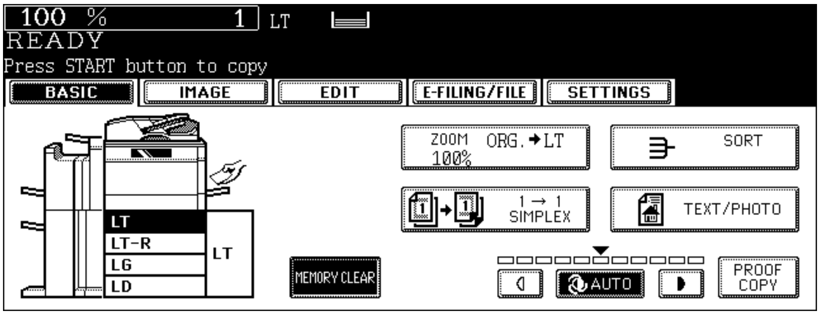
5. Stopping Copy Operation

Press the [STOP] button on the control panel to stop scanning or continuous copying.

1 Press the [STOP] button on the control panel during scanning (or continuous copying).


FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
MONITOR/PAUSE
CLEAR

2 When the following menu is displayed, press the [MEMORY CLEAR] button on the touch panel.


100 % 1 LT
READY
Press START button to copy
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100% ORG.→LT
SORT
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
MEMORY CLEAR
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- During scanning: The data scanned up to then are deleted.
- During continuous copying: Copying stops and the data scanned up to then are deleted.

Tip

If there is any copy job waiting, this job will start.

Bypass copying

When you want to make copies on OHP film, sticker labels, or non-standard size paper, place the sheets of paper on the bypass tray. Bypass copying is also recommended for copying on standard size paper which is not in any of the drawers.

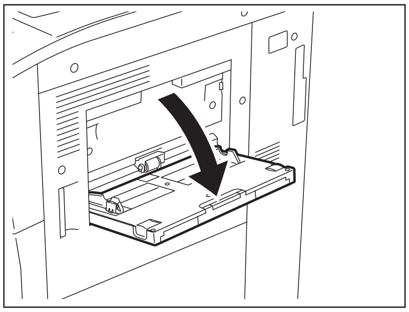
The following basic features can be used without specifying the paper size.

- Book Center Erase, XY Zoom, Cover Sheet, Sheet Insertion, Job Build, Image Direction, Book Tablet and Inserter

The following features can be used by specifying the paper size in addition to the basic features.

- Image Shift, Edge Erase, Dual Page, 2IN1/4IN1, Magazine Sort, Editing, Time Stamp, Page Number and Tab Paper in the Edit menu
- Rotate Sort, Hole Punch and Magazine Sort in the Sort Options menu
- "1 -> 2 Duplex", "2 -> 2 Duplex" and "Book -> 2" in the Duplex Modes menu
- APS and AMS in the Enlargement/Reduction menu

To carry out bypass copying, open the bypass tray.



The operating procedure of bypass copying differs depending on the paper size used. See the corresponding page for the operating procedure of each size. The table below shows these pages.

Paper size		Procedure
Standard size	LD, LT, LG, ST-R	📖 P.76
	Other than the above	📖 P.78
Others (Non-standard size)		📖 P.80

To set tab paper on the bypass tray, see 📖 P.175 “Setting tab paper on the bypass tray”.

Tips

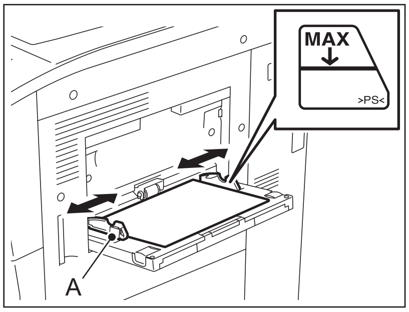
- Bypass copying stops when the paper placed on the bypass tray runs out during copying, even if the same size paper is in any of the drawers. Copying is resumed when paper is supplied to the bypass tray.
- When bypass copying has completed, the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button on the control panel blinks. Press this button to switch it to default copying using the drawers. (Bypass copying is automatically canceled after a certain period by automatic function clearing without the need to press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button. The bypass copying returns to default copying using the drawers after this automatic function clearing.)

Bypass copying on standard size paper

Making bypass copies on LD, LT, LG and ST-R

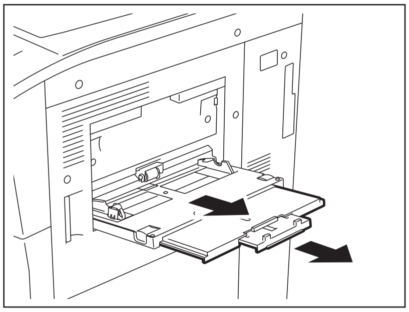
1 Place some sheets of paper with their copy side up on the bypass tray. Align the side guides to the paper length while holding A.

- The message “Ready for bypass feeding” appears.
- Rear side of the side guides of the bypass tray has an indicator for paper height. The height of the sheets must not exceed this indicator.
- When you use more than one sheet, fan the sheets well before setting them on the tray.
- Do not push the sheets into the entrance of the bypass feeder; this may cause a paper jam.



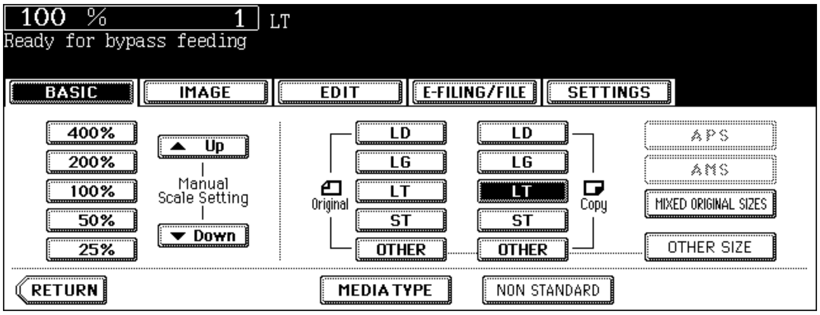
Tip

When the paper size is larger, draw out the three-stage paper holder.



2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the button of the same size as the one of the paper you have set on the tray.

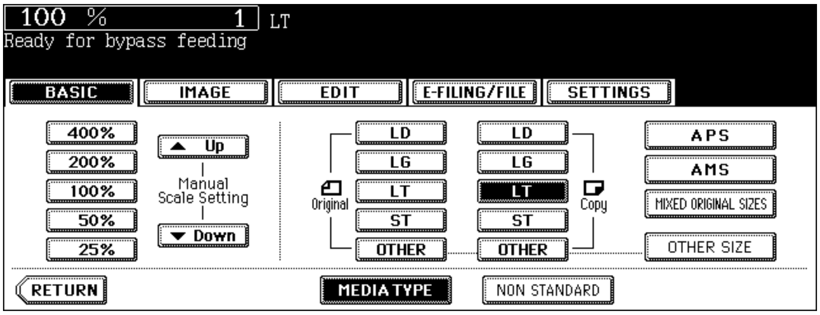


100 % 1 LT
Ready for bypass feeding

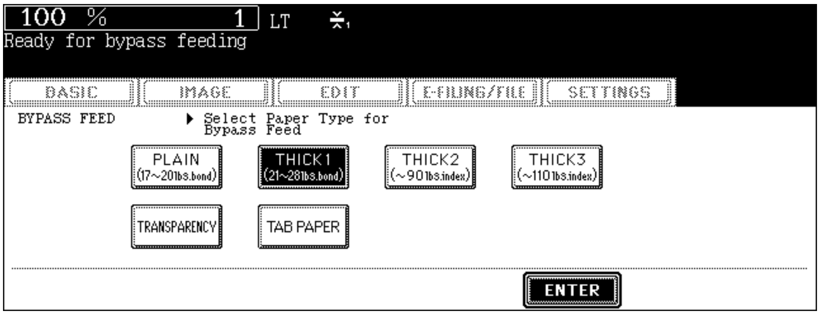
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN
MEDIA TYPE
NON STANDARD

- If the paper size is not specified here, copying may be slowed down.

4 Press the [MEDIA TYPE] button on the touch panel if the media type of the paper you have set on the tray is other than plain paper.


100 % 1 LT
Ready for bypass feeding
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN
MEDIA TYPE
NON STANDARD

5 Press the button of the same media type as the one of the paper you have set on the tray, and then press the [ENTER] button on the touch panel.


100 % 1 LT
Ready for bypass feeding
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BYPASS FEED
Select Paper Type for Bypass Feed
PLAIN (17~20lbs.bond)
THICK1 (21~28lbs.bond)
THICK2 (~90lbs.index)
THICK3 (~110lbs.index)
TRANSPARENCY
TAB PAPER
ENTER

- Set other copy modes as required.
- If a media type which is not same as the one you have set is selected here, this may cause a paper jam or significant image trouble.

6 Press the [START] button on the control panel.

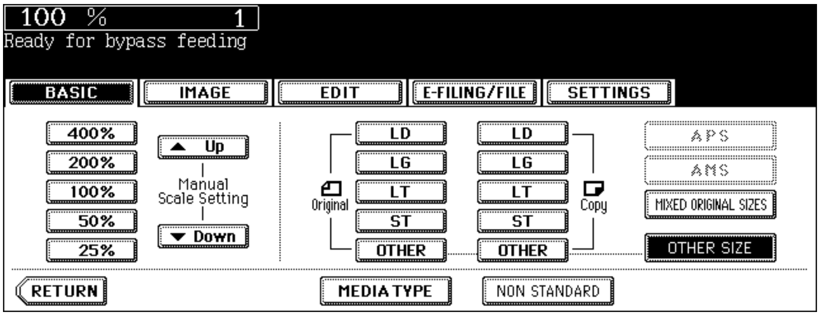
Tip

When you copy on OHP films, remove the copied OHP films, which have exited on to the receiving tray one by one. When the films pile up, they may become curled and may not be projected properly.

Making bypass copies on standard size paper other than LD, LT, LG and ST-R

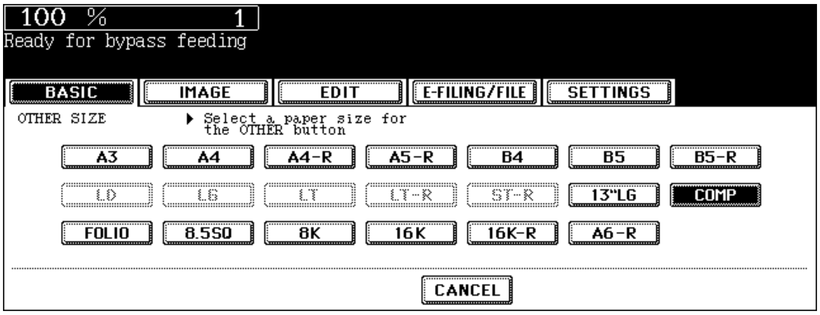
1 Follow steps 1 to 2 of 📖 P.76 "Making bypass copies on LD, LT, LG and ST-R"

2 Press the [OTHER SIZE] button on the touch panel.

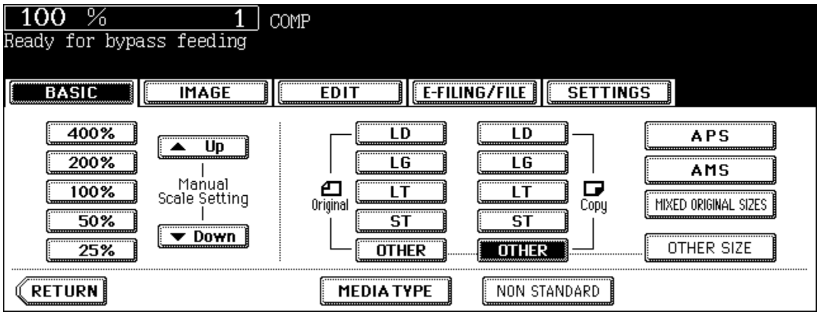

100 % 1
Ready for bypass feeding
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN
MEDIA TYPE
NON STANDARD

3 Press the button of the same size as the one of the paper you have set on the tray.

e.g.) When COMP-size paper is set

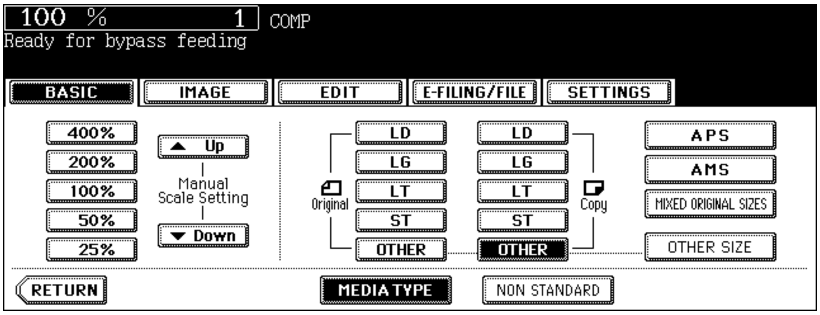

100 % 1
Ready for bypass feeding
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
OTHER SIZE
▶ Select a paper size for the OTHER button
A3
A4
A4-R
A5-R
B4
B5
B5-R
LD
LG
LT
LT-R
ST-R
13"LG
COMP
FOLIO
8.5SQ
8K
16K
16K-R
A6-R
CANCEL

4 Press the [OTHER] button for the media type.


100 % 1 COMP
Ready for bypass feeding
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN
MEDIA TYPE
NON STANDARD

- If the paper size is not specified here, copying may be slowed down.

5 Press the [MEDIA TYPE] button on the touch panel if the media type of the paper you have set on the tray is other than plain paper.



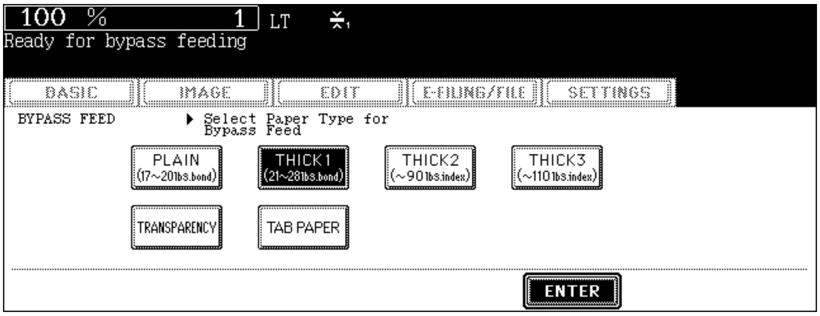
100 % 1 COMP

Ready for bypass feeding

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN
MEDIA TYPE
NON STANDARD

6 Press the button of the same media type as the one of the paper you have set on the tray, and then press the [ENTER] button on the touch panel.

e.g.) When Thick 1 paper is set



100 % 1 LT

Ready for bypass feeding

BYPASS FEED ▶ Select Paper Type for Bypass Feed

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
PLAIN (17~20lbs.bond)
THICK1 (21~28lbs.bond)
THICK2 (~90lbs.index)
THICK3 (~110lbs.index)
TRANSPARENCY
TAB PAPER
ENTER

- Set other copy modes as required.
- If a media type which is not same as the one you have set is selected here, this may cause a paper jam or significant image trouble.

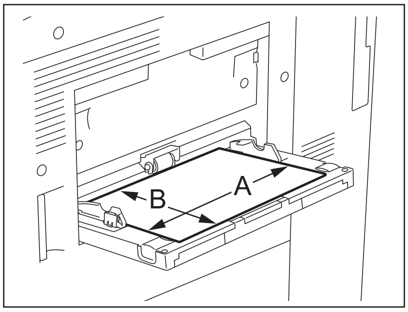
7 Press the [START] button on the control panel.

Tip

When you copy on OHP films, remove the copied OHP films, which have exited on to the receiving tray one by one. When the films pile up, they may become curled and may not be projected properly.

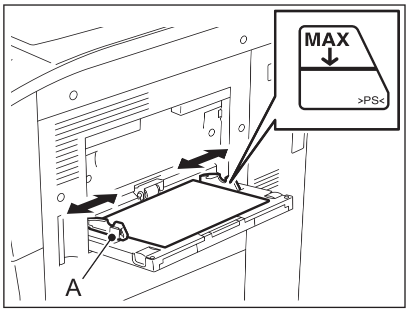
Bypass copying on non-standard size paper

Non-standard size paper should be within the following ranges:
A (Length): 3.9" to 11.7", B (Width): 5.8" to 17"



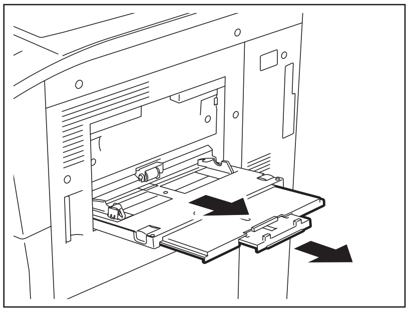
1 Place some sheets of paper with their copy side up on the bypass tray. Align the side guides to the paper length while holding A.

- The message “Ready for bypass feeding” appears.
- Rear side of the side guides of the bypass tray has an indicator for paper height. The height of the sheets must not exceed this indicator.
- When you use more than one sheet, fan the sheets well before setting them on the tray.
- Do not push the sheets into the entrance of the bypass feeder; it may cause a paper jam.



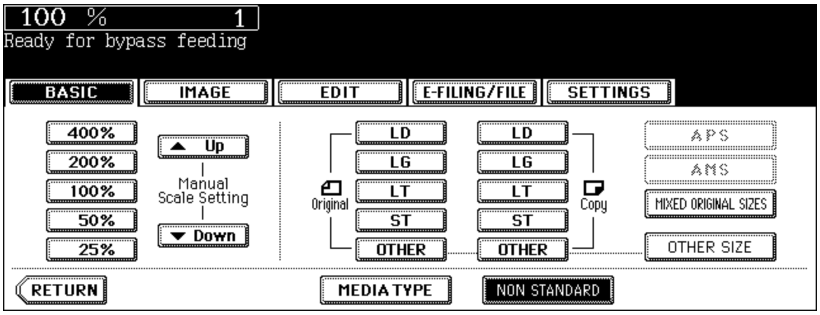
Tip

When the paper size is larger, draw out the three-stage paper holder.



2 Place the original on the original glass.

3 Press the [NON STANDARD] button on the touch panel.

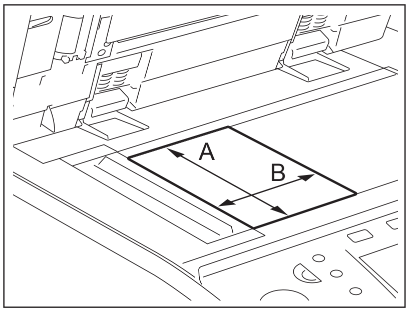


100 % 1

Ready for bypass feeding

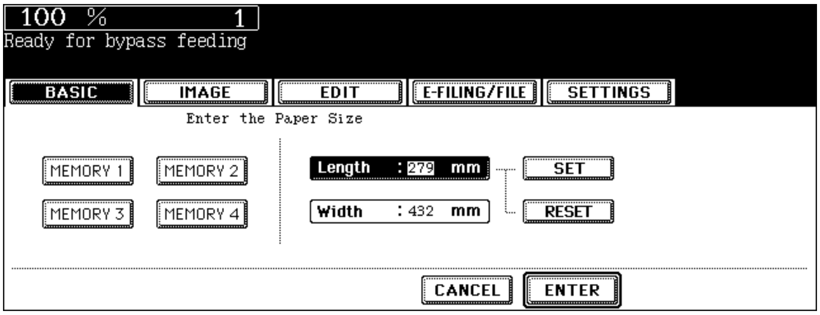
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN
MEDIA TYPE
NON STANDARD

4 Set each dimension following the procedure below.



Using the digital keys

Key in the value in [Length] and press the [SET] button on the touch panel. Set the width in the same way and press the [ENTER] button.



100 % 1

Ready for bypass feeding

Enter the Paper Size

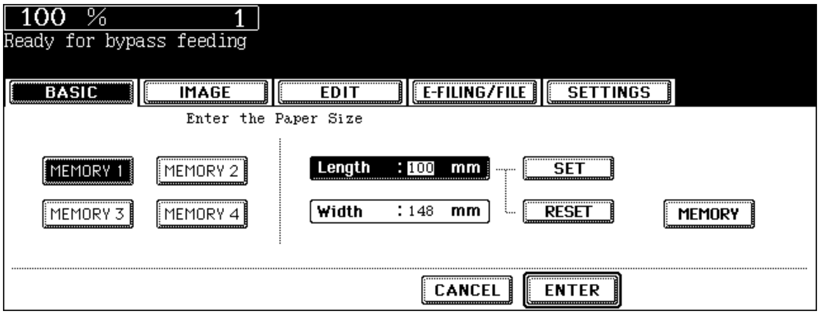
Length : 279 mm

Width : 432 mm

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
MEMORY 1
MEMORY 2
MEMORY 3
MEMORY 4
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

Recalling dimensions registered in the memory

Press the desired memory number button from [MEMORY 1] to [MEMORY 4] to recall the dimension data registered previously, and then press the [ENTER] button.



100 % 1

Ready for bypass feeding

Enter the Paper Size

Length : 100 mm

Width : 148 mm

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
MEMORY 1
MEMORY 2
MEMORY 3
MEMORY 4
SET
RESET
MEMORY
CANCEL
ENTER

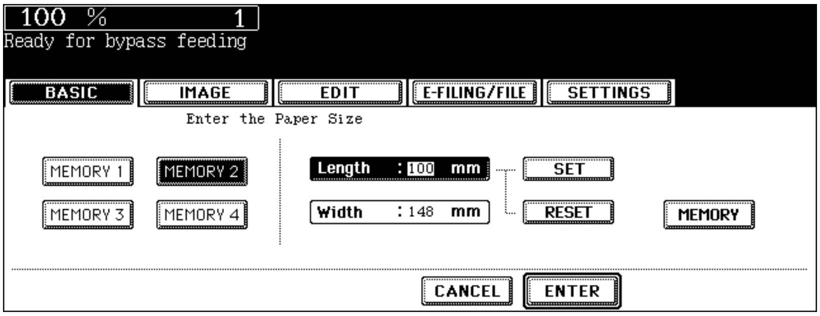
- Paper size that can be set is as follows:
  Length: 100 mm (3.94") to 297 mm (11.69")
  Width: 148 mm (5.83") to 432 mm (17.01")
- To register the dimension data in the memory, see 📖 P.83 “Registering non-standard size in the memory”.
- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button on the control panel.

Registering non-standard size in the memory

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on 📖 P.80 “Bypass copying on non-standard size paper”.

2 Press the memory number button (from [MEMORY 1] to [MEMORY 4]) you want to register the dimension.



100 % 1

Ready for bypass feeding

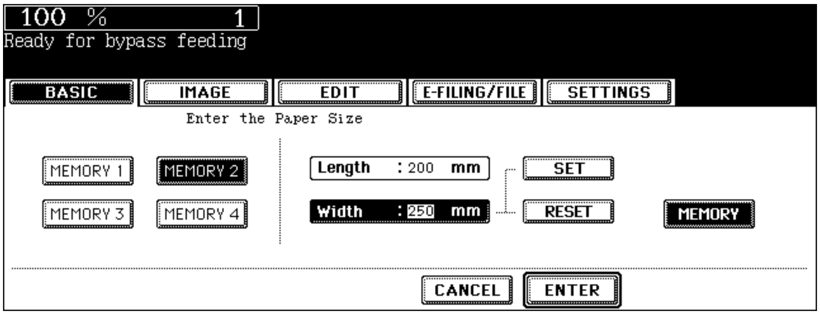
Enter the Paper Size

Length : 100 mm

Width : 148 mm

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
MEMORY 1
MEMORY 2
MEMORY 3
MEMORY 4
SET
RESET
MEMORY
CANCEL
ENTER

3 Key in each dimension, and press the [MEMORY] button on the touch panel.



100 % 1

Ready for bypass feeding

Enter the Paper Size

Length : 200 mm

Width : 250 mm

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
MEMORY 1
MEMORY 2
MEMORY 3
MEMORY 4
SET
RESET
MEMORY
CANCEL
ENTER

- Key in its length in [Length] and press the [SET] button on the touch panel. Set its width in the same manner.
- Maximum paper size to be set: 297 mm (11.69") (length) x 432 mm (17.01") (width)

7. Proof Copy

This function allows you to check that the copy density, zoom and margin width, etc. are properly set by making only one set of copies.
You can prevent miscopying by using this function before committing yourself to mass-copying.

Tips

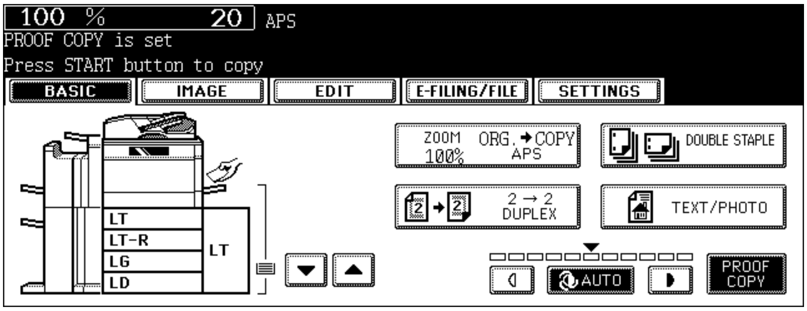
- The setting of the number of copy sets, page number, time stamp, sort/stapling (when the optional Finisher has been installed) and hole punch (when the optional Hole Punch Unit has been installed) can be changed after having made the proof copy.
- Press the [MEMORY CLEAR] button to clear the proof copy before changing the setting of the zoom or copy density, etc. When you make copies again after changing the settings, the data of the originals need to be scanned.

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Select the copy modes as required.

4 Press the [PROOF COPY] button.



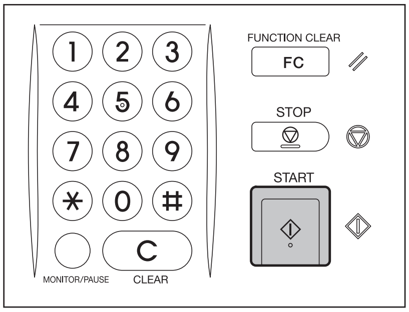
100 % 20 APS
PROOF COPY is set
Press START button to copy

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
DOUBLE STAPLE
2 → 2 DUPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- “PROOF COPY is set Press START button to copy” appears (for approx. 2 sec.).
- If “NON-SORT/NON-STAPLE” or “GROUP” is set as the finishing mode, the setting will be changed to “SORT” automatically.

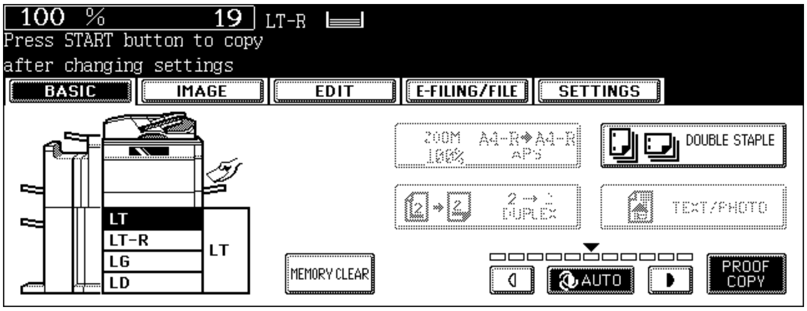
5 Press the [START] button.

- The data scanning of the originals is started and one set of copies is made.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
C
MONITOR/PAUSE
CLEAR
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START

6 Change the settings as required.



100 % 19 LT-R

Press START button to copy
after changing settings

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
A4-R→A4-R APS
DOUBLE STAPLE
2→2 DUPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
MEMORY CLEAR
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- The setting of the number of copy sets, page number, time stamp, sort/stapling (when the optional Finisher has been installed) and hole punch (when the optional Hole Punch Unit has been installed) can be changed.
- If you want to change the setting of the copy density, original mode, zoom or simplex/duplex, press the [MEMORY CLEAR] button to clear the proof copy. After the change, perform the instructions from step 1 again.

7 Press the [START] button.

- If the number of copy sets is not changed in step 6, one less than the previously specified number is copied. However, if “1” is specified for the number of copy sets, one set of copies is made.

3. SETTING OF BASIC COPY MODES

1. Paper Selection...88
   - Automatic Paper Selection (APS) 88
   - Manual paper selection 90
   - When copying mixed-size originals in one go 91
2. Enlargement and Reduction Copying 93
3. Selecting Finishing Modes 99
   - Finishing modes and finishers (optional).................................99
   - Sort/Group copying 101
   - Rotate sort mode..103
   - Staple sort mode 104
   - Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode) 106
   - Hole punch mode (optional)..109
   - Inserter mode (optional) 111
4. Duplex Copying... 113
5. Original Mode..122
6. Copy Density Adjustment..123

1. Paper Selection

Automatic Paper Selection (APS)

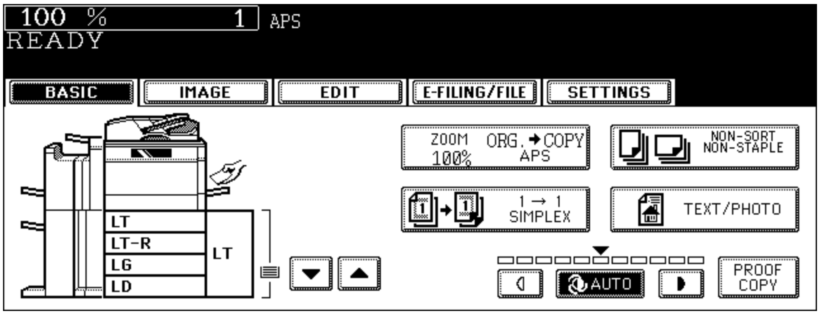
When you place standard size originals on the original glass or the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, the size of the originals is automatically detected, which helps the equipment select paper that is the same size as the originals.

- The automatic paper selection may not work correctly depending on the type of the originals. In that case, select the paper size manually.(📖 P.90 “Manual paper selection”)
- For original sizes available for automatic paper selection, see 📖 P.63 “Originals sizes and types”.

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Confirm that automatic paper selection has been selected on the basic menu. ("APS" is displayed at the top of the screen as shown below.)


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

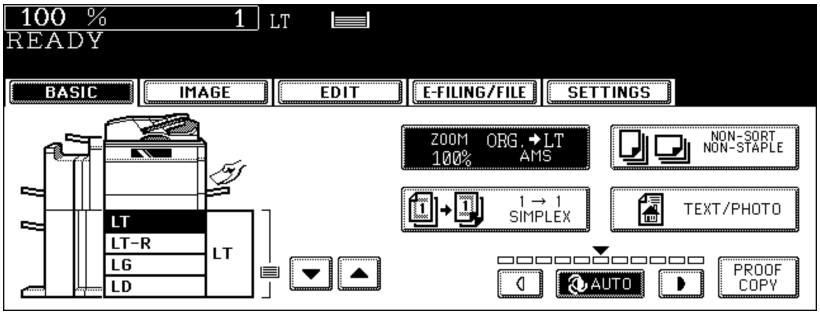
- Automatic paper selection is selected by default at the installation of the equipment.
- If “Change direction of original” or “CHANGE DRAWER TO CORRECT PAPER SIZE” appears, perform the action accordingly.
- Set other copy modes as required.

Tip

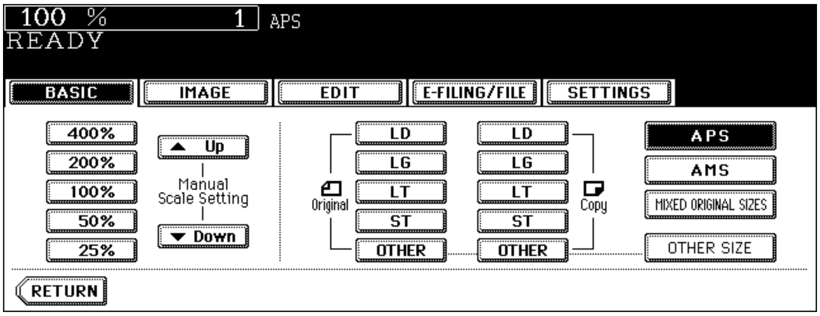
Even if the direction of the paper set in the selected drawer differs from that of the original, the equipment rotates the data of the original by 90 degrees to make copies as long as their sizes are the same. (This works on LT paper only.) For example, when an LT original is set in a portrait direction and LT-R paper is placed in the drawer, the data of LT original will be rotated and copied correctly on LT-R paper.

When automatic paper selection is not selected

(1) Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔LT AMS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

(2) Press the [APS] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
▲ Up
Manual
Scale Setting
▼ Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

4 Press the [START] button.

Manual paper selection

Automatic paper selection cannot be selected for the following originals because their sizes are not detected correctly. Select the paper size manually for these originals.

- Highly transparent originals (e.g. OHP film, tracing paper)
- Wholly dark originals or originals with dark borders
- Non-standard size originals (e.g. newspapers, magazines)

Tip

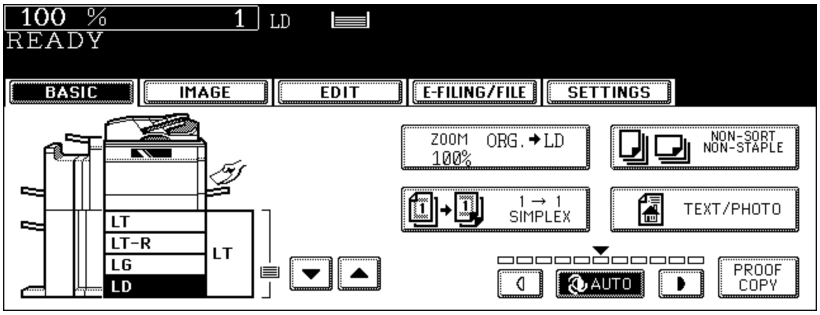
When the desired size of paper is not set in any of the drawers, place this size of paper in the selected drawer or place the paper on the bypass tray manually.
(🕮 P.49 “Placing paper in the drawer”, 🕮 P.75 “Bypass copying”)

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- When using the bypass tray, be sure to specify the paper size.

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the drawer button representing the desired paper size on the touch panel.


100 %
1
LD
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM ORG.→LD
100%
NON-SORT
NON-STAPLE
1 → 1
SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF
COPY

- You can use the paper source selection (▼/▲) buttons to select the desired drawer.
- Set other copy modes as required.

4 Press the [START] button.

When copying mixed-size originals in one go

You can copy a set of originals whose sizes are individually different, using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, by pressing the [MIXED ORIGINAL SIZE] button.

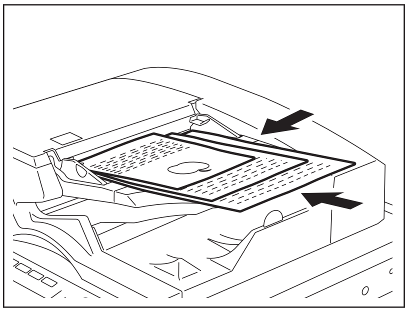
- This mixed original size setting is available only in the following combinations.
  LD, LG, LT, LT-R, 8.5", SQ, COMP
- Note that the copied image may be dislocated depending on the combination.

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

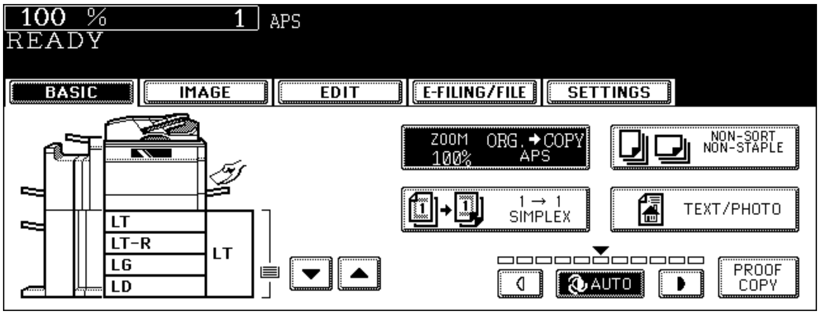
- Bypass copying is not available.

2 Adjust the side guides to the widest original, and then align the original against the guide at the front side.

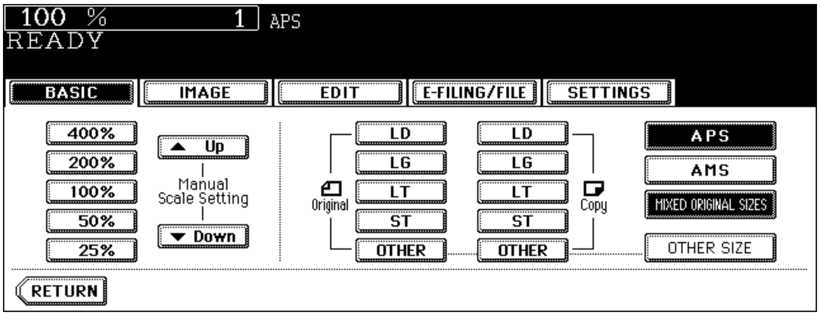
- Place the originals face up.



3 Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button to enter the setting menu of the original or paper size.

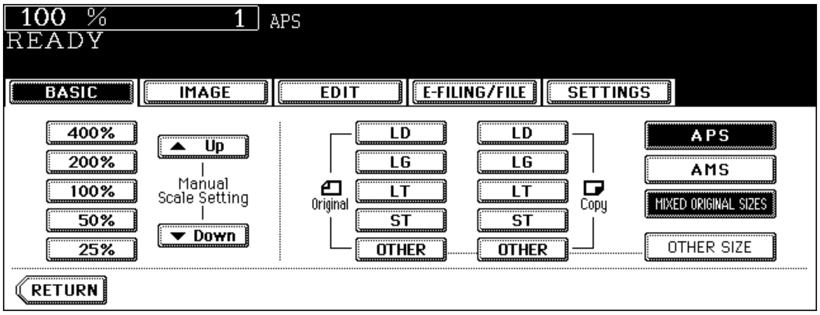

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
▲ Up
Manual Scale Setting
▼ Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

5 Select either automatic paper selection (APS) or automatic magnification selection (AMS).

Automatic paper selection: Copies on the same size of paper as that of originals (📖 P.88).
Automatic magnification selection: Copies all in one size (📖 P.93).


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual
Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

- Before you use automatic paper selection, be sure that all paper sizes corresponding to the original sizes have been set in the drawers.
- In automatic magnification selection, the copies cannot be enlarged from LT (portrait) to LD (landscape)/LG (landscape).
- If “Change direction of original” appears when [AMS] is used with [MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES], change the direction according to the message.
- Set other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

2. Enlargement and Reduction Copying

You can enlarge or reduce the size of copies by means of the following procedures.

- Specifying the copy paper size in advance so that the equipment will detect the original size and automatically select the most appropriate reproduction ratio for the copy paper size (= automatic magnification selection)
- Specifying both original size and copy paper size separately
- Using the zoom buttons or the one-touch zoom buttons

Tip

The enlargement/reduction ratio available differs depending on whether the originals have been set on the original glass or on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.

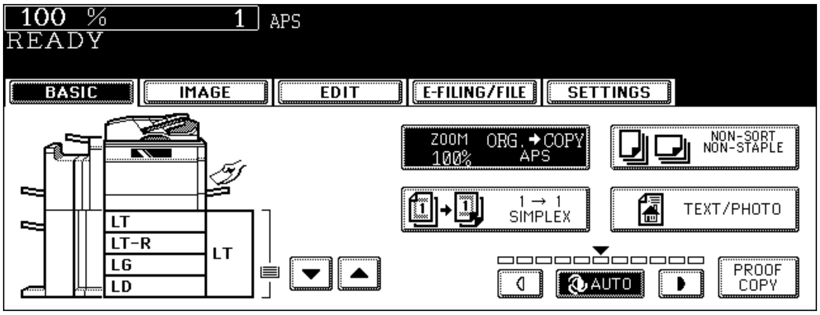
On the original glass: 25 to 400%
On the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder: 25 to 200%

Automatic Magnification Selection (AMS)

- The automatic magnification selection cannot be selected for the following originals. Set their reproduction ratios in other ways.
  - Highly transparent originals (e.g. OHP film, tracing paper)
  - Wholly dark originals or originals with dark borders
  - Non-standard size originals (e.g. newspapers, magazines)
- For the original sizes available for this automatic magnification selection, see 🕮 P.63 “Originals sizes and types / Maximum number of sheets”.

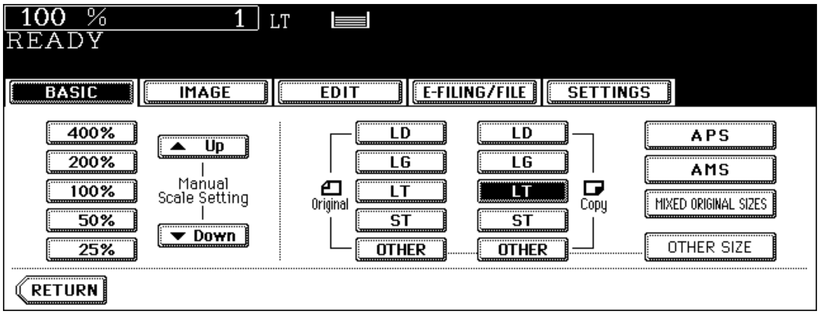
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

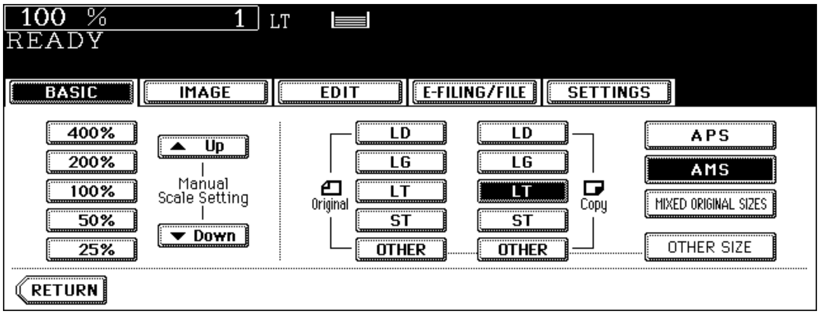
3 Press the button representing the desired copy paper size.

e.g.) When LT-size paper is selected


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

- The copy paper size can also be set by pressing the drawer button on the touch panel.

4 Press the [AMS] button.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

5 Place the original(s).

- If “Change direction of original” appears, make the change accordingly.
- Set other copy modes as required.

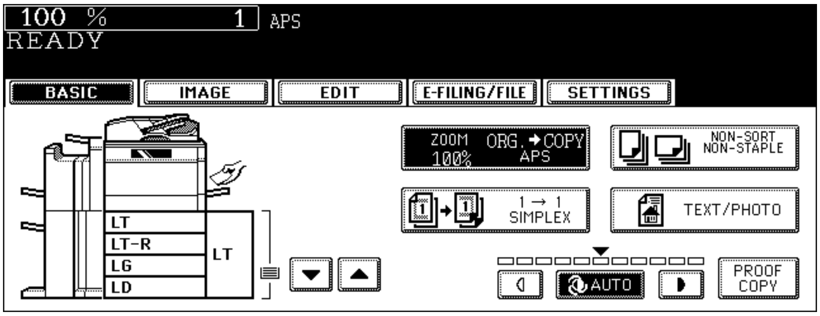
6 Press the [START] button.

Specifying both original size and copy size separately

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

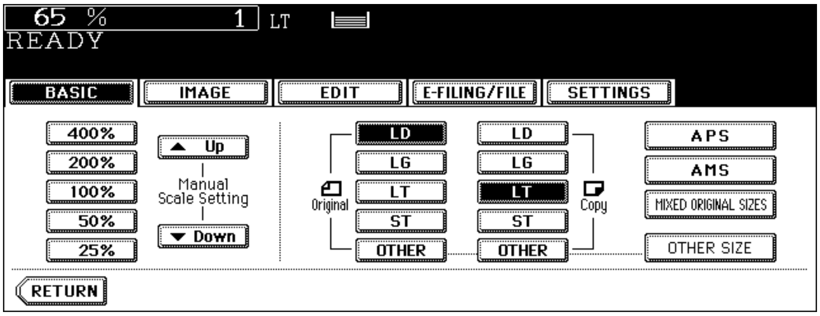
3 Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Specify the original size and copy paper size.

Original size: Press the size button representing the same size as that of the set original.
Copy paper size: Press the size button representing the desired copy paper size.

e.g.) When LD for the original size and LT for the copy paper size are selected


65 % 1 LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
▲ Up
Manual Scale Setting
▼ Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

- The copy paper size can also be set by pressing the drawer button on the touch panel.
- When the original size and copy paper size have been specified, the enlargement/reduction ratio is computed and displayed on the touch panel.
- Set other copy modes as required.

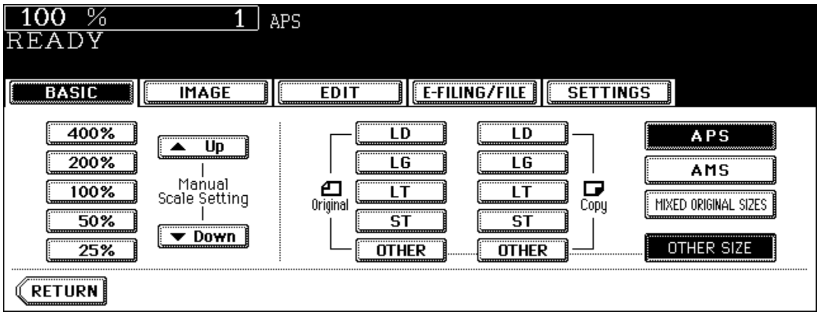
Tip

When the original or copy paper is a standard size other than LD, LG, LT or ST, you need to register this paper size in the selections of the [OTHER] button in advance. See “When a standard size paper other than LD, LG, LT and ST-R is set” below for the registration.

5 Press the [START] button.

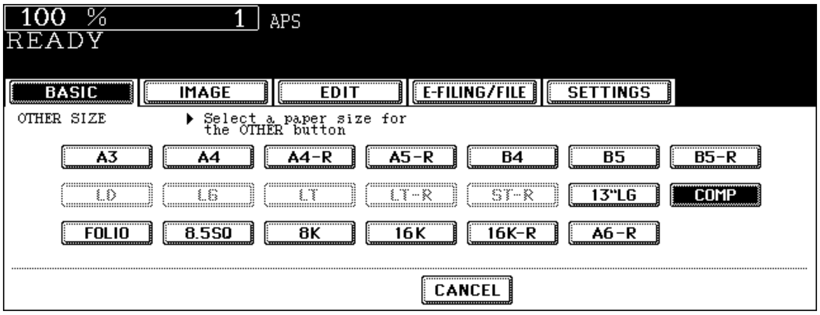
When a standard size paper other than LD, LG, LT and ST-R is set
Register the size of the placed paper to the [OTHER] button with the following procedure. The registered paper size is automatically selected when the [OTHER] button is pressed.

1 Press the [OTHER SIZE] button.

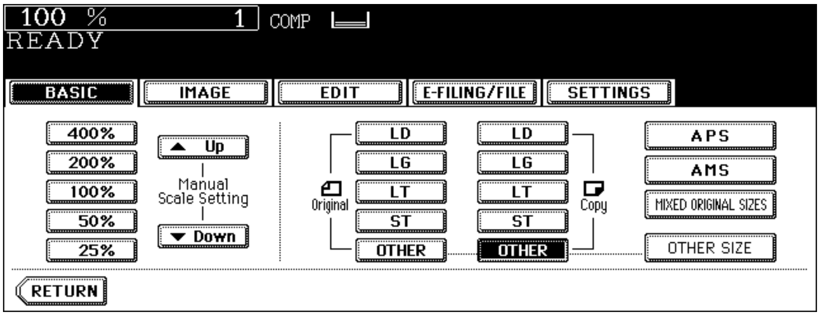

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual
Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

2 Press the paper size button corresponding to the paper that has been set.

e.g.) When COMP-size paper is set


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
OTHER SIZE
Select a paper size for the OTHER button
A3
A4
A4-R
A5-R
B4
B5
B5-R
LD
LG
LT
LT-R
ST-R
13"LG
COMP
FOLIO
8.5SQ
8K
16K
16K-R
A6-R
CANCEL

3 Press the [OTHER] button.

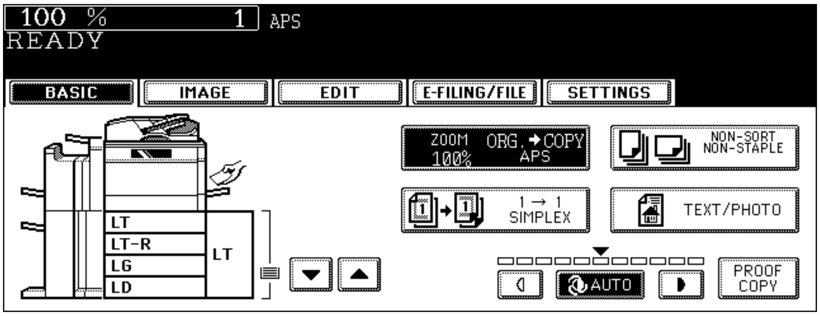

100 %
1
COMP
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual
Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

Using the zoom buttons or the one-touch zoom buttons

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

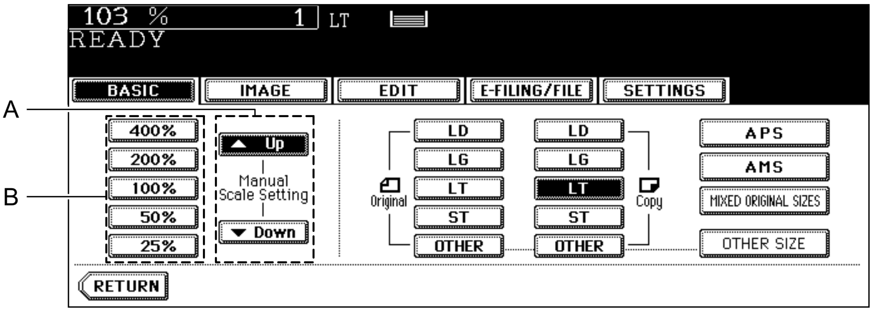
3 Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the following buttons to set the desired reproduction ratio.

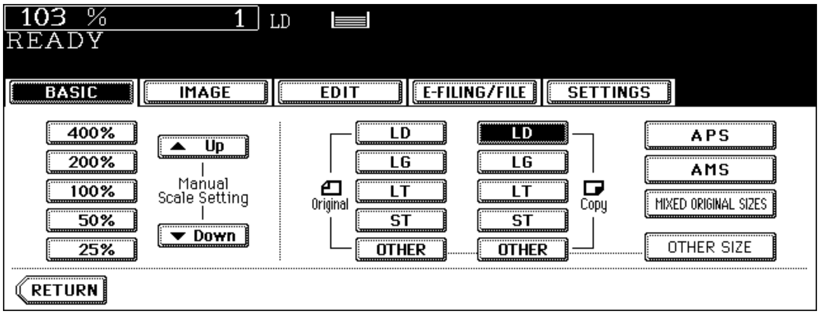
A: Zoom ([▲ Up] and [▼ Down]) buttons
The reproduction ratio changes by 1% every time it is pressed. When you hold down either of them, the ratio goes up or down automatically.
B: One-touch zoom buttons
You can select the ratio from [400%], [200%], [100%], [50%] and [25%].

- The maximum ratio when the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is used is 200%.


103 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
A
B
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
▲ Up
Manual Scale Setting
▼ Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

5 Press the button representing the desired copy paper size.

e.g.) When LD-size paper is selected


103 %
1
LD
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual
Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

- The copy paper size can also be set by pressing the drawer button on the touch panel.
- Set other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

3. Selecting Finishing Modes

Finishing modes and finishers (optional)

The available finishing modes differ depending on the type of finishing device installed (MJ-1027, MJ-1028, MJ-6003 or MJ-7001).

Type of finishing mode

Check the available finishing modes with the table below.

Yes: Available
No: Not available

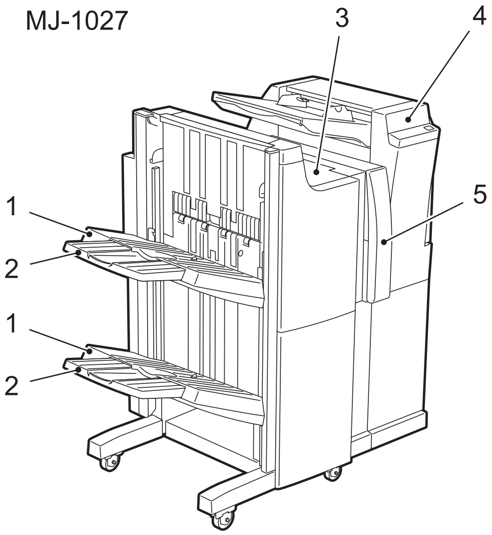
Finishing device		Type of finishing mode						
		Sort/ Group	Rotate sort	Staple sort	Maga-zine sort	Maga-zine sort & Saddle stitch	Saddle stitch	Hole punch
MJ-1027	MJ-1027 only	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	MJ-1027 + MJ-6003	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
	MJ-1027 + MJ-7001	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	MJ-1027 + MJ-6003 + MJ-7001	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
MJ-1028	MJ-1028 only	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
	MJ-1028 + MJ-6003	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	MJ-1028 + MJ-7001	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
	MJ-1028 + MJ-6003 + MJ-7001	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
No finishing device		Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No

MJ-1027: Finisher
MJ-1028: Saddle Stitch Finisher
MJ-6003: Hole Punch Unit
MJ-7001: Inserter Unit

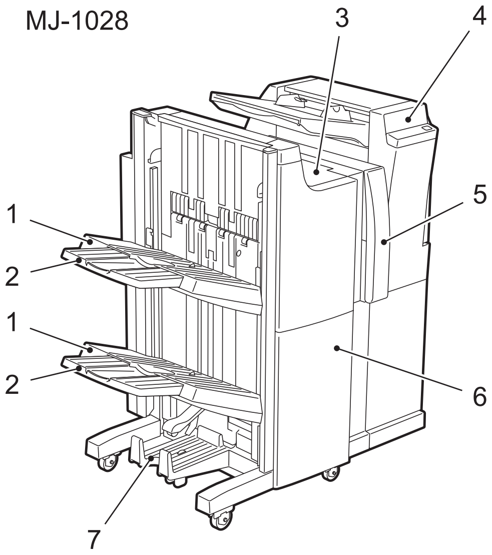
Name of each part in the Finisher (optional)

1. Tray
2. Sub-tray
3. Upper cover
4. Inserter Unit (MJ-7001)
5. Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6003)
6. Saddle stitch unit
7. Saddle stitch tray

MJ-1027



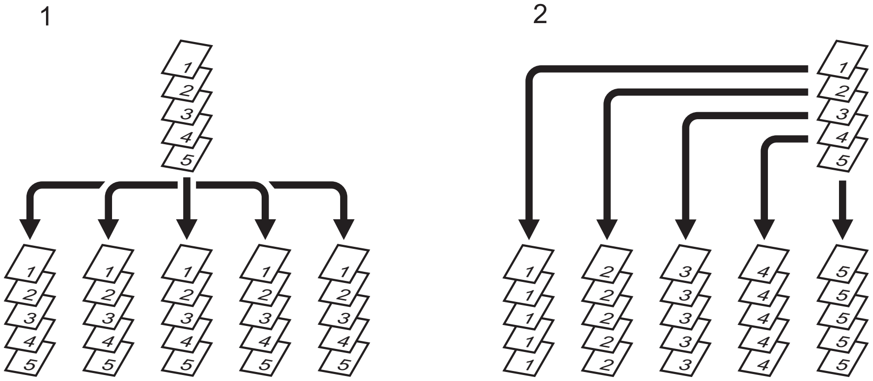
MJ-1028



Sort/Group copying

To make multiple copies, select the sort mode or the group mode as required.

(Example of making 5 sets of copies from 5 original sheets)
1. Sort copying
2. Group copying



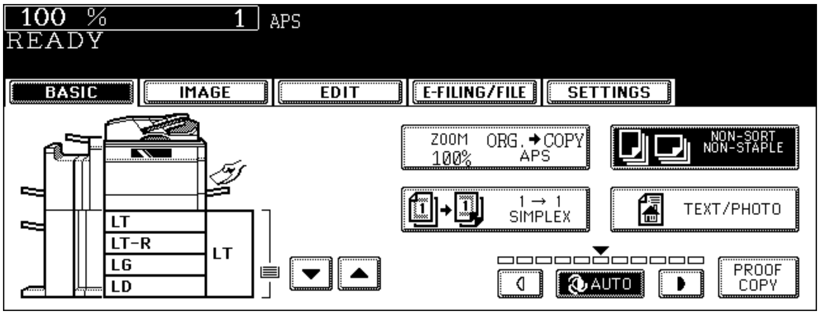
Tip

When you use the LD or LG size copy paper, pull out the sub-tray in advance. The copied paper may fall or may not be sorted properly without the sub-tray.

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

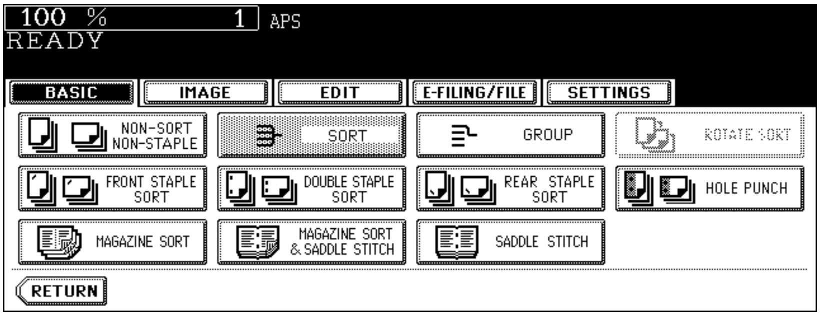
3 Press the finisher button on the basic menu.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

Tip

When the original is placed in the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, the sort mode is automatically selected.

4 Press the [SORT] (or [GROUP]) button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
SORT
GROUP
ROTATE SORT
FRONT STAPLE SORT
DOUBLE STAPLE SORT
REAR STAPLE SORT
HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZINE SORT
MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH
SADDLE STITCH
RETURN

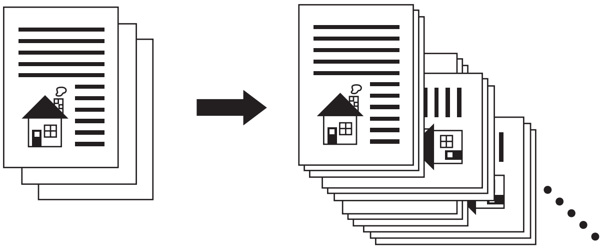
- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

Rotate sort mode

In the rotate sort mode, one set of copies is made to exit on another set of copies, being alternated length-wise or crosswise.
The available paper sizes for this mode is LT/LT-R. Set the LT/LT-R size paper in the drawers or on the bypass tray in advance.

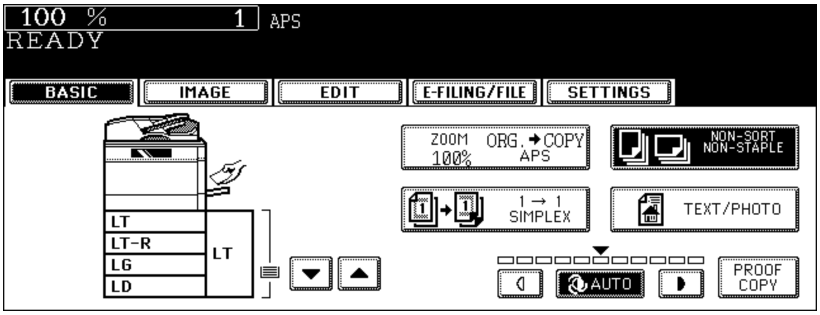
- This mode cannot be used with automatic paper selection.
- When the Finisher or Saddle Stitch Finisher is installed, this mode cannot be used.



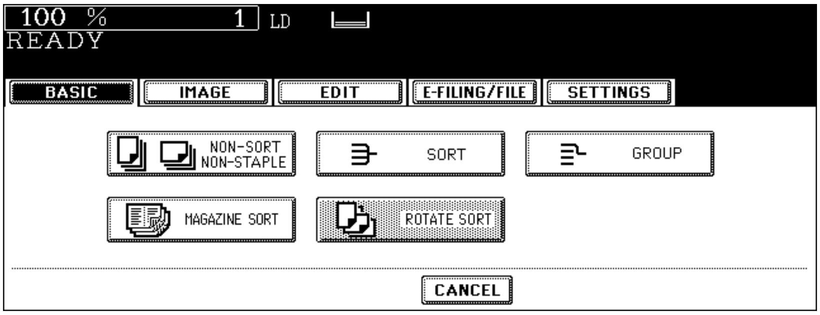
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the finisher button on the basic menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [ROTATE SORT] button.


100 %
1
LD
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
SORT
GROUP
MAGAZINE SORT
ROTATE SORT
CANCEL

- Set other copy modes as required.

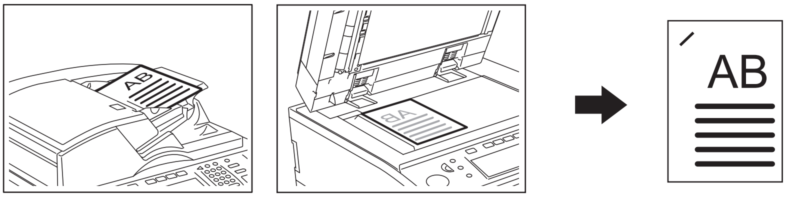
5 Press the [START] button.

Staple sort mode

When the Finisher or the Saddle Stitch Finisher (both optional) is installed, automatic stapling is enabled. You can select the stapling position from three types.

- The paper weight applicable for this mode is 17 to 28 lb. Bond.
- Special paper such as OHP films or sticker label cannot be used for stapling.
- Copies in different size cannot be stapled.
  When the lengths of the copies are the same, they can be stapled even if their sizes are different.

(Example of selecting the [FRONT STAPLE SORT] button)



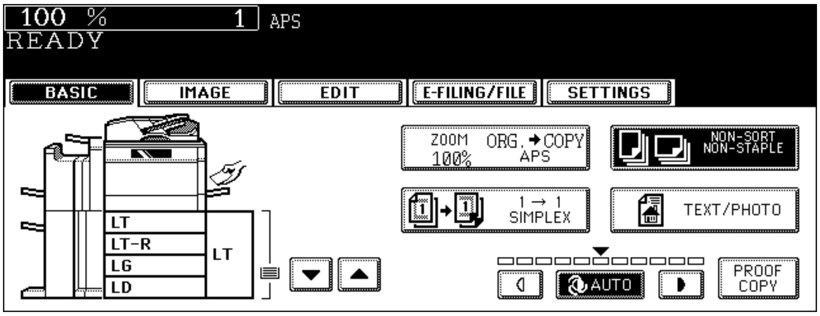
Setting the staple sort mode

1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

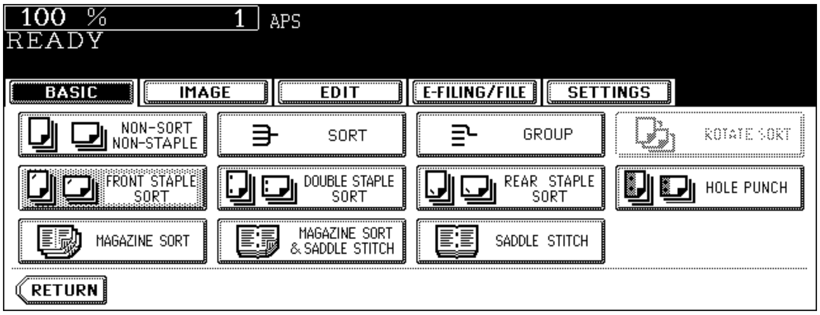
- When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”)

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press the finisher button on the basic menu.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [FRONT STAPLE SORT] (or [DOUBLE STAPLE SORT] or [REAR STAPLE SORT]) button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
SORT
GROUP
ROTATE SORT
FRONT STAPLE SORT
DOUBLE STAPLE SORT
REAR STAPLE SORT
HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZINE SORT
MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH
SADDLE STITCH
RETURN

- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

Tip

If the paper quantity exceeds the maximum number of sheets that can be stapled, the Finisher automatically enters the sort mode.

Maximum number of sheets for stapling

The maximum number of sheets can be stapled at a time (in case of 17 to 20 lb. Bond plain paper) is shown below.

Finisher (MJ-1027)

Paper size	Number of sheets
LT, A4, B5	50
LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, A3, B4, A4-R, FOLIO	30

Saddle Stitch Finisher (MJ-1028)

Paper size	Number of sheets
LT, A4, B5	50
LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, A3, B4, A4-R, FOLIO	30

- For the tray loading capacity, see 📖 P.354 “2.Specifications of Options”
- Two covers of 17 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Index can be added. In this case, the covers are included in the maximum number of sheets that can be stapled.

Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode)

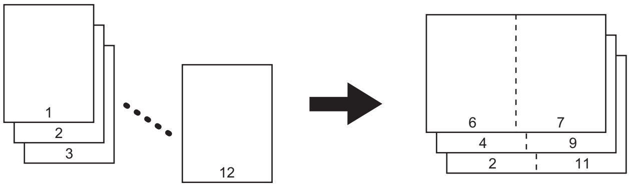
In the magazine sort mode, more than one original can be copied and bound like magazines or booklets. Also, a set of copied sheets can be automatically folded and stapled at its center when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed. The available copy paper sizes for these modes are LD, LT-R and LG.

- Special paper such as OHP films or sticker label cannot be used for saddle stitching.
- The paper weight applicable for this mode is 17 to 28 lb. Bond.

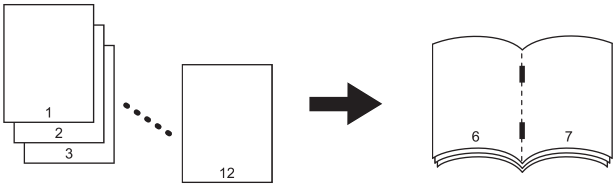
Tip

When placing portrait originals horizontal to you in the magazine sort mode, set the Image Direction in the edit menu. Otherwise the originals will not be copied in the proper page order. (📖 P.167 “14.IMAGE DIRECTION”)

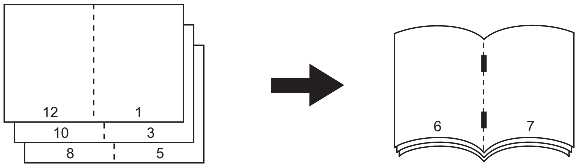
1. When [MAGAZINE SORT] is selected



2. When [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] is selected



3. When [SADDLE STITCH] is selected



You can select the magazine sort mode from the edit menu, as well as from the basic menu. When this mode is selected from the edit menu, you can adjust the binding margin of the copy. To select this mode from the edit menu, see 📖 P.145 “6.MAGAZINE SORT”.

Setting magazine sort & saddle stitch mode

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

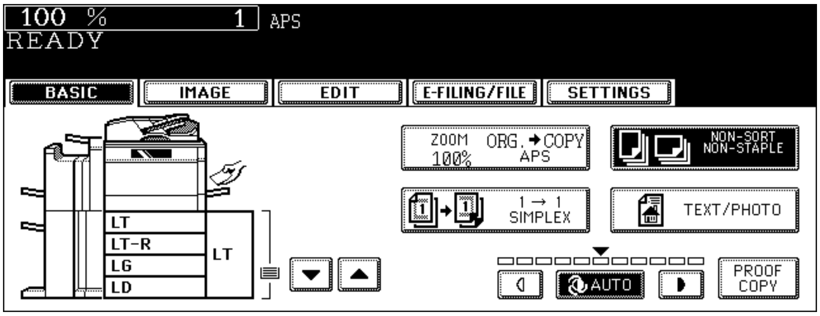
2 Select the paper size.

- Available copy paper sizes are LD, LT-R and LG.
- For bypass copying, see 📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”.

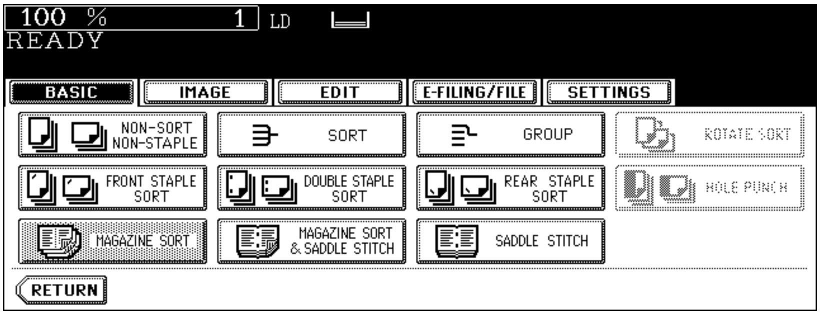
3 Place the original(s).

- When placing originals on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, see the illustrations (📖 P.106) for the proper page order of the copies.
- When placing originals on the original glass, follow the procedure below.
  - When [MAGAZINE SORT] or [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] is selected: Place the first page of the originals first.
  - When [SADDLE STITCH] is selected: In case of 12-page originals, set them in the order of pages 12-1, 2-11, 10-3, 4-9, 8-5, then 6-7.

4 Press the finisher button on the basic menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

5 Press the [MAGAZINE SORT] (or [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] or [SADDLE STITCH]) button.


100 %
1
LD
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
SORT
GROUP
ROTATE SORT
FRONT STAPLE SORT
DOUBLE STAPLE SORT
REAR STAPLE SORT
HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZINE SORT
MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH
SADDLE STITCH
RETURN

- The [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] button and the [SADDLE STITCH] button are selectable only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher is installed.
- Set other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

- When placing the originals on the original glass, follow the procedure in 📖 P.66 “Placing originals on the glass”.

Available conditions for saddle stitching

Paper size	Paper weight	Maximum number of sheets for saddle stitching	Tray loading capacity
LD, LT-R	17 - 20 lb. Bond	15	Set of 11 - 15 sheets: 10 sets, Set of 6 - 10 sheets: 20 sets, Set of 2 - 5 sheets: 25 sets
	21 - 28 lb. Bond	10	Set of 6 - 10 sheets: 15 sets, Set of 2 - 5 sheets: 25 sets
LG	17 - 20 lb. Bond	15	Set of 11 - 15 sheets: 10 sets, Set of 6 - 10 sheets: 10 sets, Set of 2 - 5 sheets: 20 sets
	21 - 28 lb. Bond	10	Set of 6 - 10 sheets: 10 sets, Set of 2 - 5 sheets: 20 sets

- One cover of 17 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Index can be added. In this case, this cover is included in the maximum number of sheets that can have saddle stitching.
- When paper of different weights is loaded, the maximum number of sheets for saddle stitching should refer to that of the paper with the highest weight.
- To add one cover of 110 lb. Index or more to the paper of 21 to 28 lb. Bond, the tray loading capacity is always 5 sets.

Hole punch mode (optional)

When the Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed to the Finisher or the Saddle Stitch Finisher (both optional), you can punch holes in the copies.

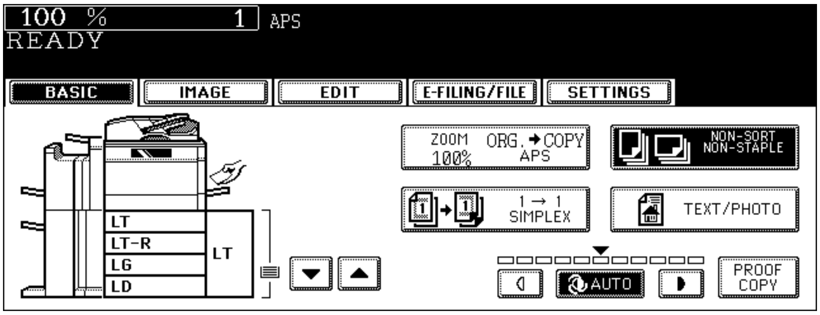
- The available copy paper sizes for this mode are LD, LG, LT, LT-R and COMP.
- The paper weight applicable for this mode is 17 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index.
- Special paper such as OHP films or sticker label cannot be used for hole punching.

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

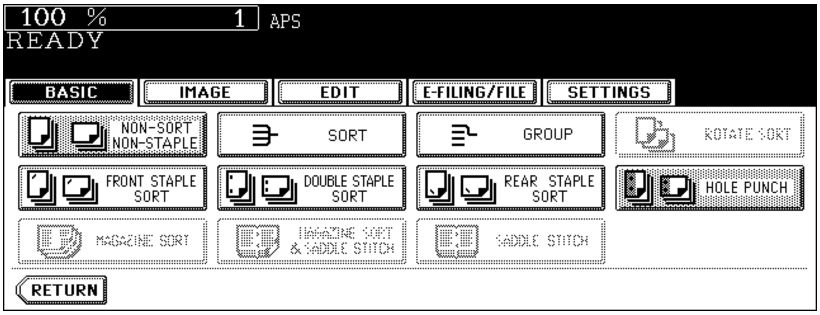
- When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (📖 P.75 "6.Bypass Copying")

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the finisher button on the basic menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [HOLE PUNCH] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
SORT
GROUP
ROTATE SORT
FRONT STAPLE SORT
DOUBLE STAPLE SORT
REAR STAPLE SORT
HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZINE SORT
MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH
SADDLE STITCH
RETURN

- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

Tip

When the Inserter Unit (optional) is installed, you can punch holes without the need to go through any copying operation by setting paper on the unit.

Number of punch holes and available paper sizes

Since the number of punch holes and the distance between the holes vary depending on the country/region, purchase a hole punch unit that meets your requirements. (For details, consult your service technician.)

	Number of punch holes and hole diameter	**Available paper sizes**
MJ-6003E (Japan and most of Europe)	2 holes (0.26" dia.)	LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO
MJ-6003N (North America)	2/3 holes switchable (0.32" dia.)	2 holes: LG, LT-R 3 holes: LD, LT, A3, A4
MJ-6003F (France)	4 holes (0.26" dia.; 3.15" pitch)	LD, LT, A3, A4
MJ-6003S (Sweden)	4 holes (0.26" dia.; 2.76" and 0.83" pitch)	LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO

Inserter mode (optional)

When you want to staple or punch holes on the paper without going through any copying operation, place sheets on the Inserter Unit (optional).

Also, when you want to insert blank sheets of paper at specified pages, place sheets on the Inserter Unit. (📖 P.183 “18.INSERTER”)

- Be sure to place the same size of sheets of paper on the Inserter Unit and align them.
- If the paper is fed from more than one paper source, such as the drawer, External Large Capacity Feeder, bypass tray or Inserter Unit, set all sheets of paper in one size in the same direction.

Available paper size and type for the Inserter Unit

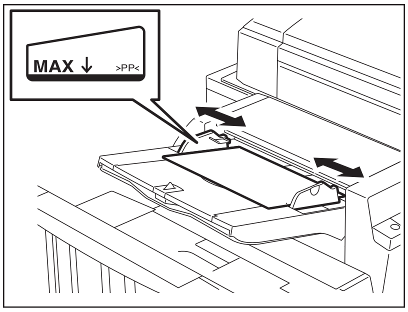
Paper size	LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP
Media type	Plain paper (17 - 20 lb. Bond) Thick paper (21 lb. Bond - 140 lb. Index) Recycled paper Special paper (e.g. OHP film, color paper) (Contact a Toshiba-product distributor for details of the special paper available.)
Maximum number of sheets can be set	17 - 20 lb. Bond: 100 sheets 21 lb. Bond - 140 lb. Index: Less than 0.47" in paper height (less than 0.28" in case of special paper)

- Note that some types of paper may not be applicable for the Inserter Unit due to their paper qualities, even if you are using the paper listed above.
- The use of the Inserter Unit has some restrictions on stapling and saddle stitching respectively. (📖 P.105 “Maximum number of sheets for stapling”, 📖 P.108 “Available conditions for saddle stitching”)

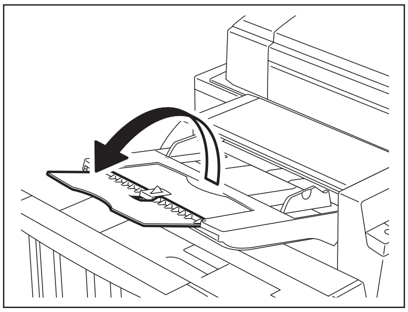
Setting paper on the Inserter Unit

1 Place paper on the Inserter Unit and adjust the side guides to the width of the paper.

- Place the paper with its face up.
- Be sure that the top and bottom of the paper to be inserted are the same as those of originals.
- Be sure that the height of the paper placed on the Inserter Unit does not exceed the indicator on the side guide.



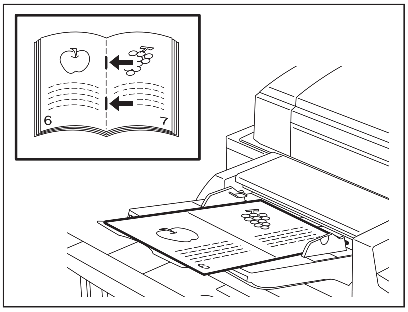
- When you place large-sized paper on the Inserter Unit, widen the tray as shown in the illustration on the right.



Using only staple mode or hole punch mode

When the Inserter Unit is installed, the individual operations of stapling, saddle stitching and hole punching without the need for any copying operation are enabled. In this case, use the control panel of the Inserter Unit.

1 Place paper on the Inserter Unit.



📖 P.111 “Setting paper on the Inserter Unit”

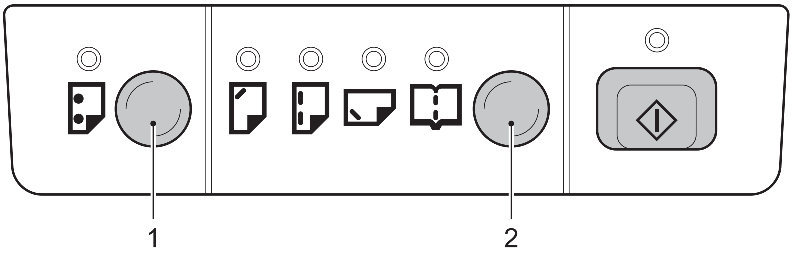
- When paper is placed on the unit, the [START] button of the unit is lit green.

Tip

When you use the saddle stitch mode, place the sheets to be the top and back covers of the document at the bottom of the paper. (If paper is placed in the Inserter Unit as shown in the figure, it will be stapled in the position indicated by the arrows.)

2 Set each mode with the control panel of the Inserter Unit.

- When you use the hole punch mode, press the button 1 on the control panel of the unit. The hole punch mode lamp is lit.
- When you use the staple mode or the saddle stitch mode, press the button 2 on the control panel of the unit. The lamp for the mode you have selected is lit. Each time you press the button 2, these two modes switch over.



Tips

- The saddle stitch mode is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.
- The hole punch mode and the staple mode can be used together. The hole punch mode and the saddle stitch mode cannot be used together.

3 Press the [START] button on the control panel of the unit.

- The operation starts and the [START] button on the control panel of the unit blinks in green. When the operation has finished, all the lamps on the control panel of the unit go out.

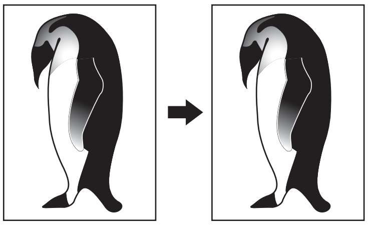
4. Duplex Copying

The following 5 combinations are available for duplex copying.

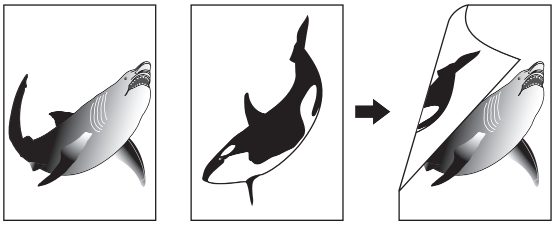
1. 1-sided original -> 1-sided copy (default setting at installation)
2. 1-sided original -> 2-sided copy
3. 2-sided original -> 2-sided copy
4. 2-sided original -> 1-sided copy
5. Book-type original -> 2-sided copy

- Duplex copying is available for plain paper (17 to 20 lb. Bond), thick 1 paper (- 28 lb. Bond), thick 2 paper (- 90 lb. Index) and thick 3 paper (- 110 lb. Index).

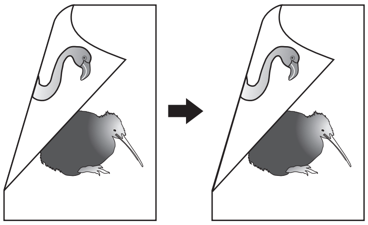
1



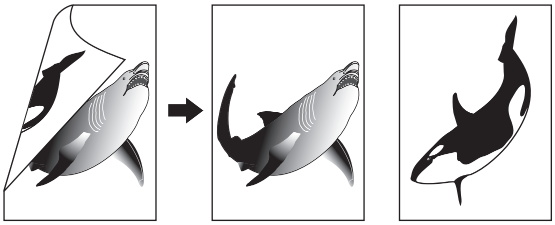
2



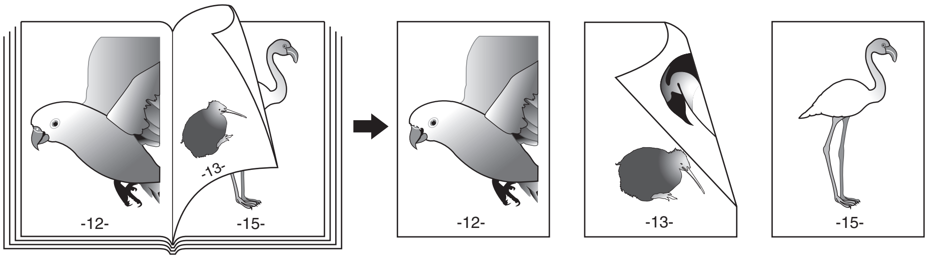
3



4



5

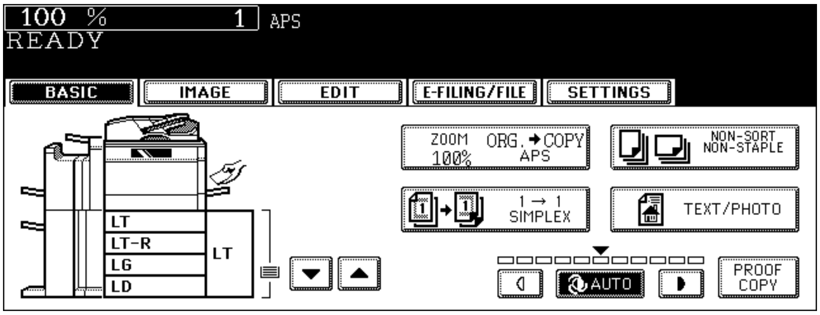


1-sided original -> 1-sided copy (default setting at installation)

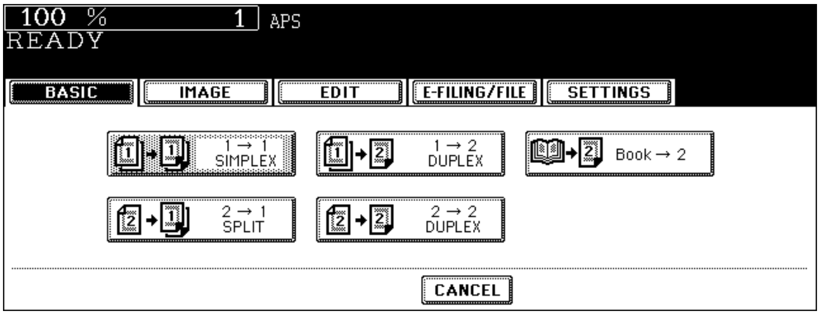
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Confirm that the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu is [1 -> 1 SIMPLEX].**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- If [1 -> 1 SIMPLEX] is not shown, press the simplex/duplex button to display the next menu, and then press the [1 -> 1 SIMPLEX] button on that menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
1 → 2 DUPLEX
Book → 2
2 → 1 SPLIT
2 → 2 DUPLEX
CANCEL

- Set other copy modes as required.

4 **Press the [START] button.**

1-sided original -> 2-sided copy

Tip

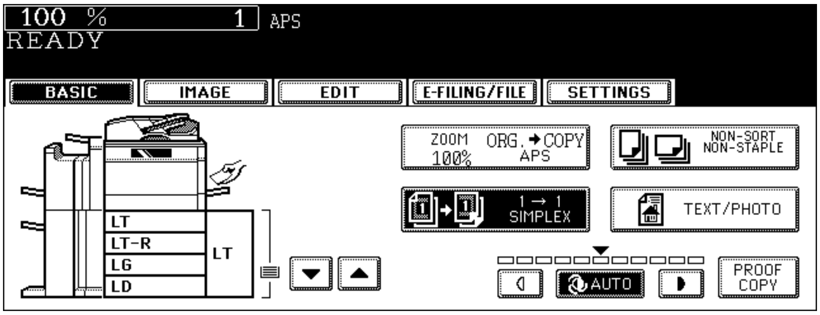
When you copy 1-sided portrait originals to 2-sided copies placing them in a landscape direction, you can make a booklet-type copy in the direction of “open toward the left” opening, using the image direction mode in the edit menu. (🕮 P.167 “14.IMAGE DIRECTION”)

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

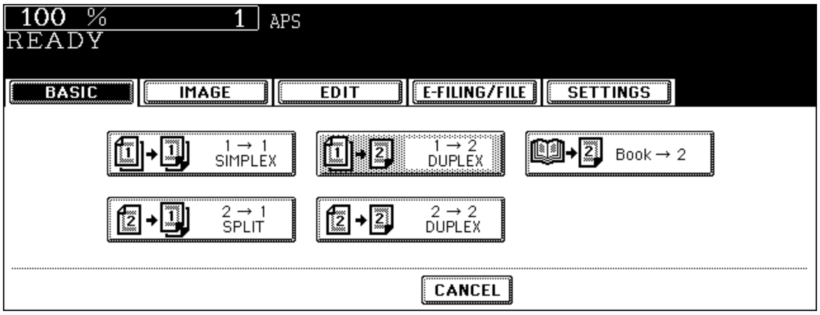
- When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (🕮 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”)

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [1 -> 2 DUPLEX] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
1 → 2 DUPLEX
Book → 2
2 → 1 SPLIT
2 → 2 DUPLEX
CANCEL

- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

- When placing an original on the original glass, follow steps 5 to 6 of 🕮 P.60 “Copying procedure” continuously.

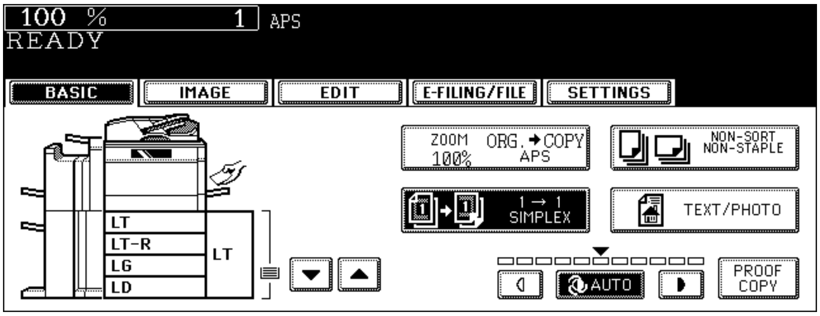
2-sided original -> 2-sided copy

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

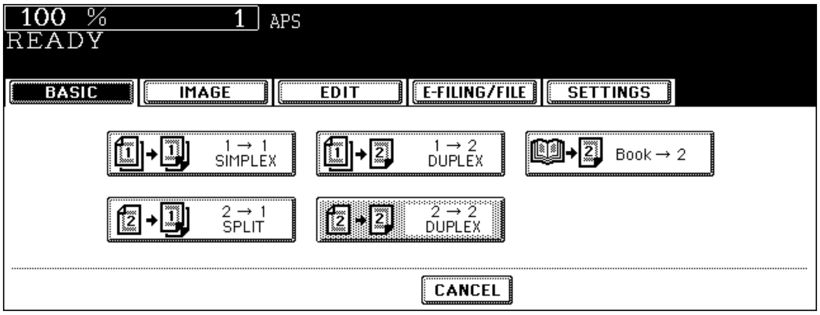
- When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”)

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [2 -> 2 DUPLEX] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
1 → 2 DUPLEX
Book → 2
2 → 1 SPLIT
2 → 2 DUPLEX
CANCEL

- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

- When placing an original on the original glass, follow steps 5 to 6 of 📖 P.60 “Copying procedure” continuously.

2-sided original -> 1-sided copy

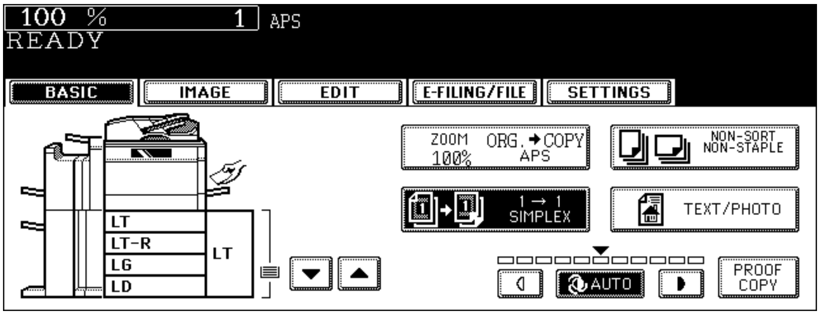
Tip

When a 2-sided 'open to left' (Book) portrait original is copied using the image direction mode in the edit menu with [2-Sided Originals to 1-Sided Copies], copies can be adjusted to the same direction. (📖 P.167 "14.IMAGE DIRECTION")

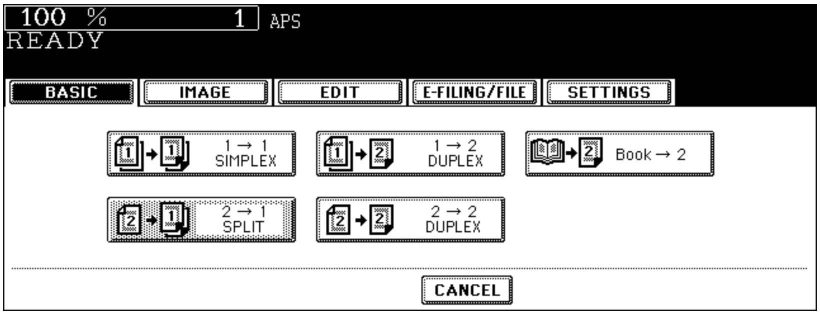
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG. → COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 Press the [2 -> 1 SPLIT] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
1 → 2 DUPLEX
Book → 2
2 → 1 SPLIT
2 → 2 DUPLEX
CANCEL

- Set other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

Book-type original -> 2-sided copy

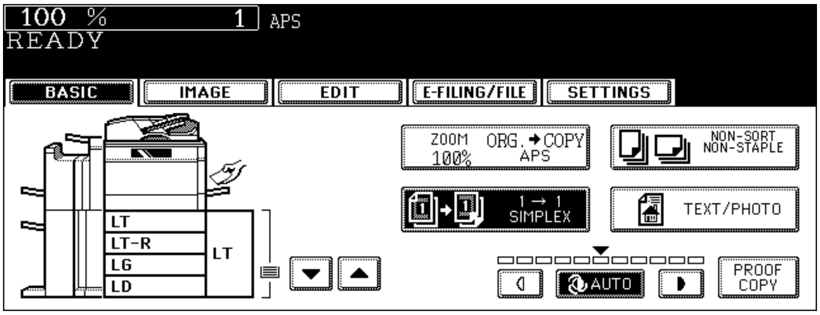
You can make a booklet-type copy in the same page configuration in which the original is.

- The acceptable paper size for this function is LT only.

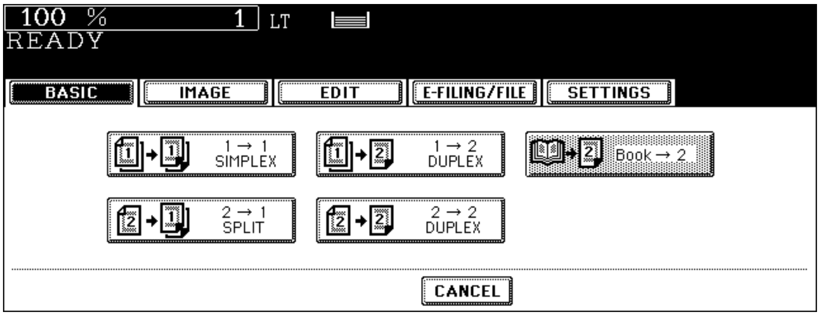
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”)

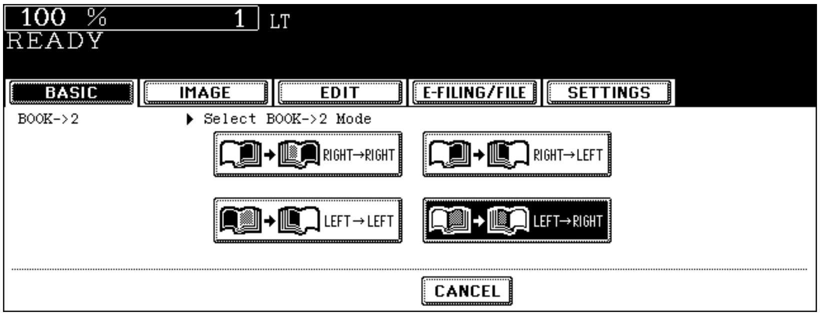
2 Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

3 Press the [BOOK -> 2] button.

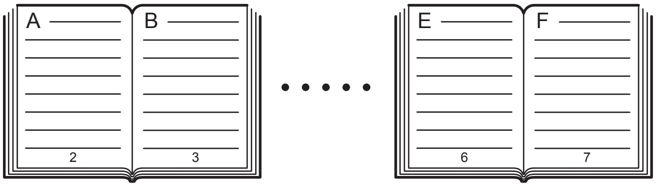

100 % 1 LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
1 → 2 DUPLEX
Book → 2
2 → 1 SPLIT
2 → 2 DUPLEX
CANCEL

4 Select the book copying type.


100 % 1 LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BOOK->2
▶ Select BOOK->2 Mode
RIGHT→RIGHT
RIGHT→LEFT
LEFT→LEFT
LEFT→RIGHT
CANCEL

- Press the [RIGHT -> RIGHT] button (= default setting at the installation) if copying should start at a right-hand page and end at a right-hand page. Other copying types are selectable by pressing any of the [RIGHT -> LEFT], [LEFT -> LEFT] and [LEFT -> RIGHT] buttons.

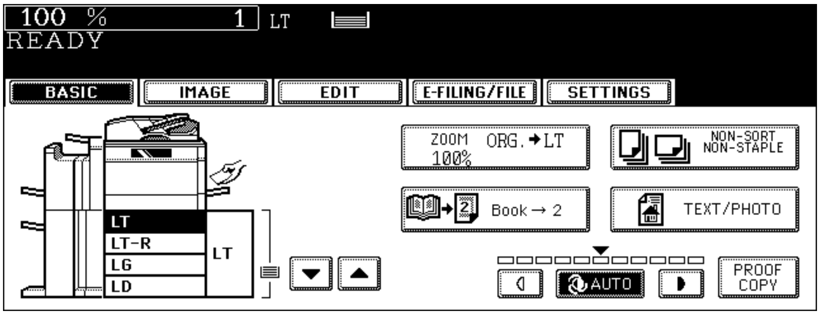
e.g.: If pages 2 to 6 of a book which opens to the left are to be copied, select [LEFT -> RIGHT].



- The yellow indicator line for booklet copying moves to the center of the original glass.

5 Select LT copy size.

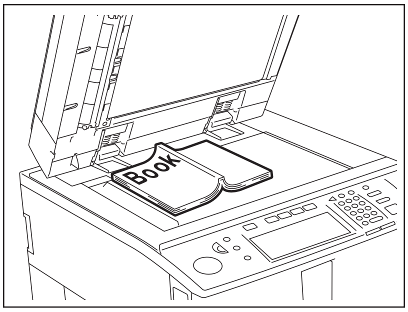
- Only LT size is available. Press the drawer button on the touch panel, or use the paper source selection (▼/▲) buttons to select LT size.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM ORG.→LT
100%
NON-SORT
NON-STAPLE
Book→2
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- If you need a binding space, select the book margin mode. (📖 P.130 “1.IMAGE SHIFT”)
  - Set other copy modes as required.

6 Open and place the first page(s) on the original glass.

- Center the booklet on the yellow indicator line with its bottom toward you.

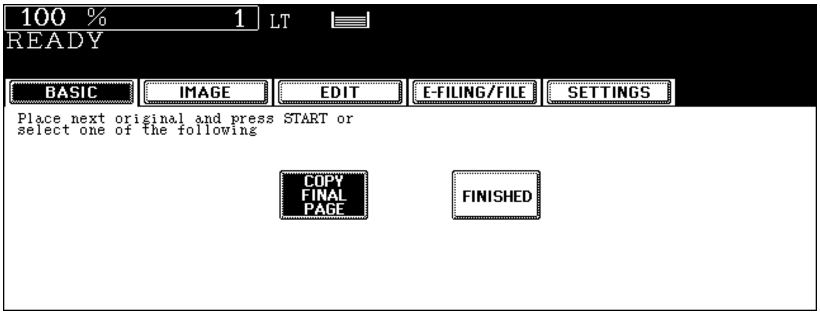


Caution

Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

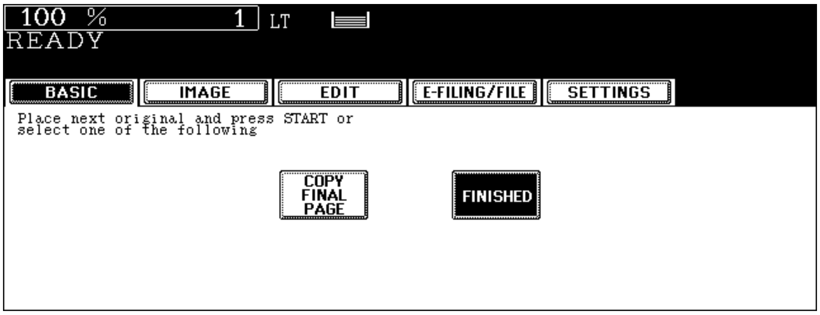
7 Press the [START] button. When the data of the opened pages have been scanned, open the next page and set the booklet on the original glass again.

- Repeat the procedures above until all the desired pages have been scanned. If the last copy is only a single page, press the [COPY FINAL PAGE] button on the touch panel before the scanning of this page is started. The scanned pages will be copied.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY FINAL PAGE
FINISHED

Place next original and press START or select one of the following

8 When all the pages have been scanned, press the [FINISHED] button on the touch panel.


100 % 1 LT

READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS

Place next original and press START or select one of the following

COPY FINAL PAGE
FINISHED

- The scanned pages will be copied.
- For setting image shift, see 🕮 P.134 “Creating a bookbinding margin”.

5. Original Mode

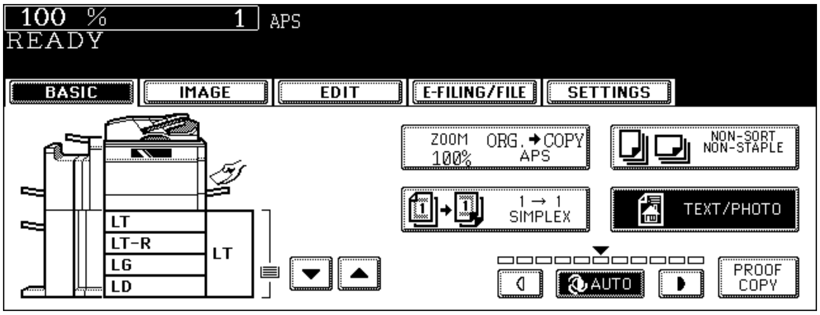
You can select the most appropriate image processing mode (= original mode) for your original from the following 3 modes.
[TEXT/PHOTO]: Original with text and photographs (default setting at installation)
[TEXT]: Original with text only (or text and line art only)
[PHOTO]: Original with photographs only

---

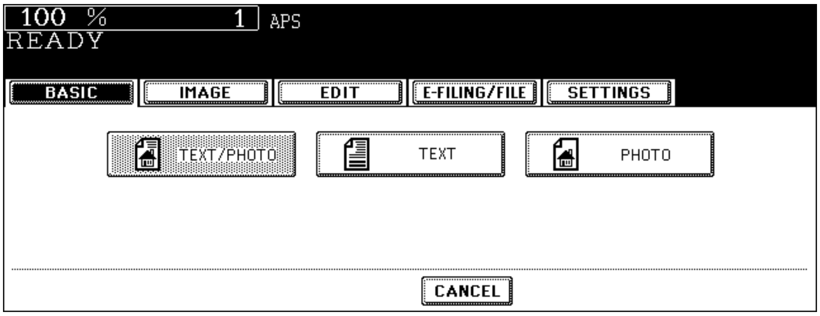
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press the original mode button on the basic menu.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

4 **Select and press the button for the most appropriate original mode for your original.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
TEXT/PHOTO
TEXT
PHOTO
CANCEL

- Set other copy modes as required.

5 **Press the [START] button.**

6. Copy Density Adjustment

There are 2 types of copy density adjustment: the automatic copy density mode and the manual copy density mode. In the automatic copy density mode, the equipment automatically selects the most appropriate copy density by detecting the density of the original. In the manual copy density mode, you can adjust the copy density manually according to the conditions of the original.

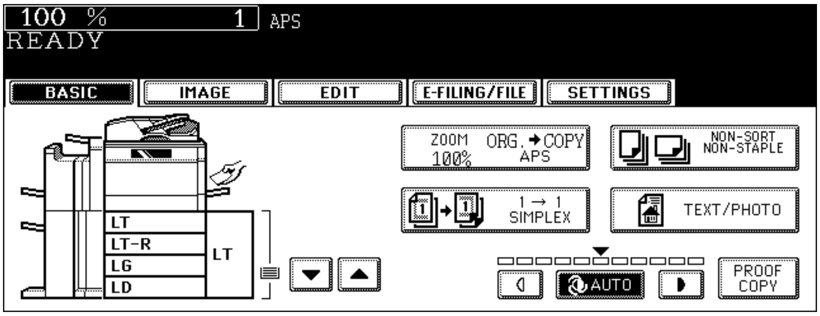
- The automatic copy density mode is selected by default when the equipment is installed.

Automatic copy density mode

1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Confirm that the [AUTO] button on the basic menu is selected. If it is not, press the button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- Set other copy modes as required.

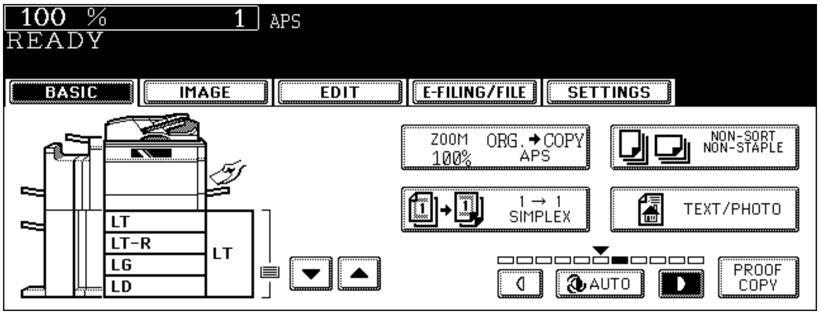
4 **Press the [START] button.**

Manual copy density mode

1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press either the ◐ or ◑ button to adjust the copy density to the desired level.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- The copied image becomes lighter as you press the ◐ button and darker as you press the ◑ button.
- Set other copy modes as required.

4 **Press the [START] button.**

4. IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

1. Background Adjustment 126
2. Sharpness 127

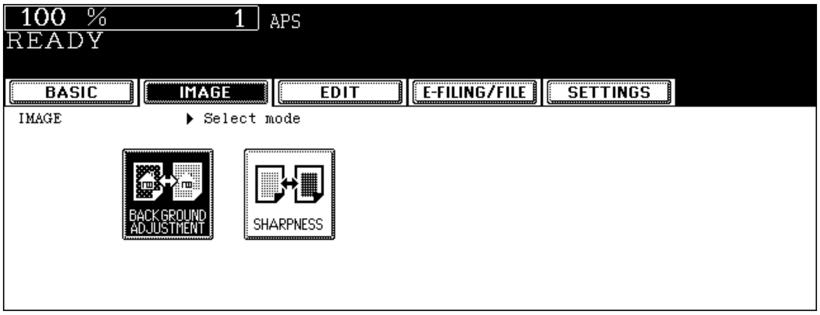
1. Background Adjustment

This function allows you to adjust the density of the original's background. It avoids the back side of 2-sided originals becoming visible on the front side of the original through the copy.

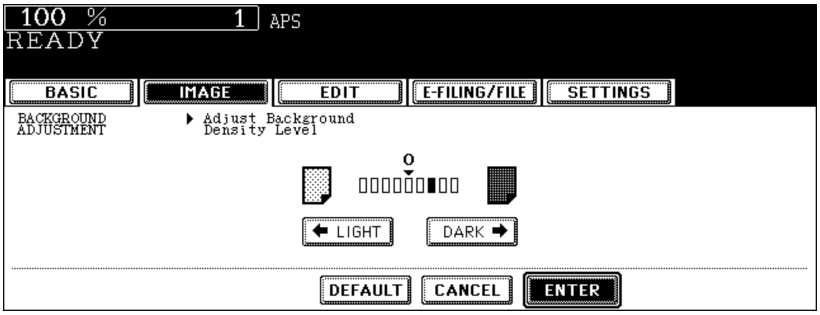
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [BACKGROUND ADJUSTMENT] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE
▶ Select mode
BACKGROUND ADJUSTMENT
SHARPNESS

4 Press the [LIGHT] (or [DARK]) button to adjust the density, and then press the [ENTER] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BACKGROUND ADJUSTMENT
▶ Adjust Background Density Level
0
LIGHT
DARK
DEFAULT
CANCEL
ENTER

- Select other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

Canceling the background adjustment

- Press the [DEFAULT] button and then the [ENTER] button.
- Adjust the background level to "0", and then press the [ENTER] button.

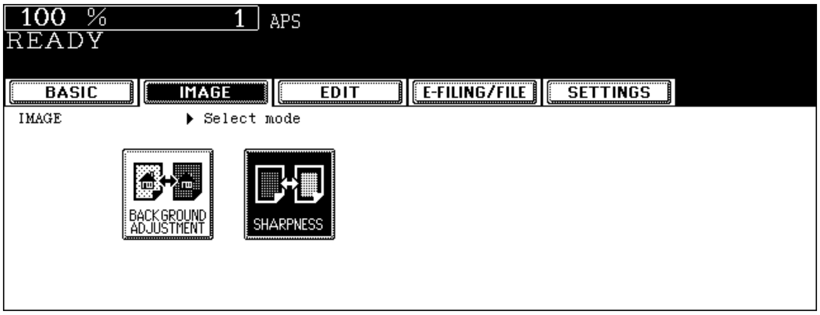
2. Sharpness

This function allows you to emphasize or blur the outline of the image. When the sharpness level is adjusted to the [SOFT] side, the moire fringes are suppressed. If it is adjusted to the [SHARP] side, the letters and fine lines become sharper.

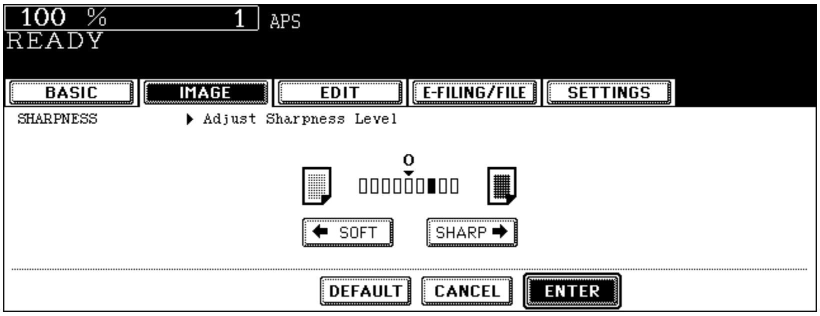
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [SHARPNESS] button.**


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE
▸ Select mode
BACKGROUND ADJUSTMENT
SHARPNESS

4 **Press the [SOFT] (or [SHARP]) button to adjust the sharpness, and then press the [ENTER] button.**


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
SHARPNESS
▸ Adjust Sharpness Level
0
SOFT
SHARP
DEFAULT
CANCEL
ENTER

- When the sharpness level is adjusted to the [SOFT] side, the moire fringes are suppressed. If it is adjusted to the [SHARP] side, the letters and fine lines become sharper.
- Select other copy modes as required.

5 **Press the [START] button.**

Canceling the sharpness adjustment
- Press the [DEFAULT] button and then the [ENTER] button.
- Adjust the sharpness level to “0”, and then press the [ENTER] button.

5. USING THE EDITING FUNCTIONS

1. IMAGE SHIFT 130
2. EDGE ERASE 136
3. BOOK CENTER ERASE 138
4. DUAL PAGE 140
5. 2IN1 / 4IN1 142
6. MAGAZINE SORT 145
7. EDITING 147
    - Trimming / Masking 147
    - Mirror image 150
    - Negative/Positive reversal 151
8. XY ZOOM 152
9. COVER SHEET 154
10. SHEET INSERTION 157
11. TIME STAMP 160
12. PAGE NUMBER 161
13. JOB BUILD 163
14. IMAGE DIRECTION 167
15. BOOK - TABLET 169
16. ADF / SADF 170
17. TAB PAPER 173
18. INSERTER 183
19. OVERLAY 187

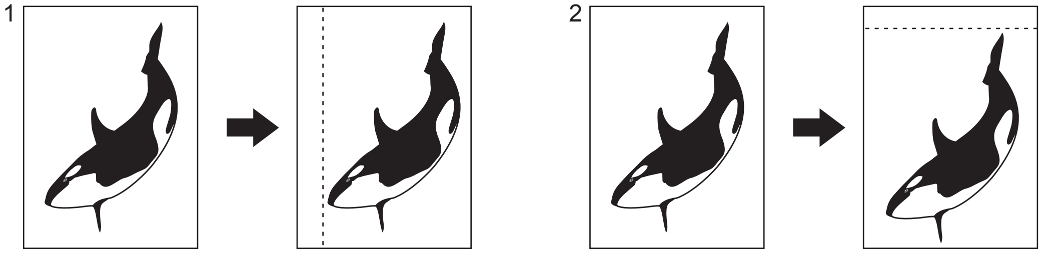
1. IMAGE SHIFT

A margin for binding can be created. The following types are available.

1. Created by shifting the original image to either the right or left side (Right or Left margin)
2. Created by shifting the original image to either the upper or lower side (Top or Bottom margin)
3. Created binding margins in the center (inner margin) (Bookbinding margin)
   Select this setting when using “Book-type original -> 2-sided copy” (📖 P.118).

Tips

- The ‘Top or Bottom margin’ can be used in combination with the ‘Right or Left margin’ or the ‘Bookbinding margin’.
- The margin width can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.



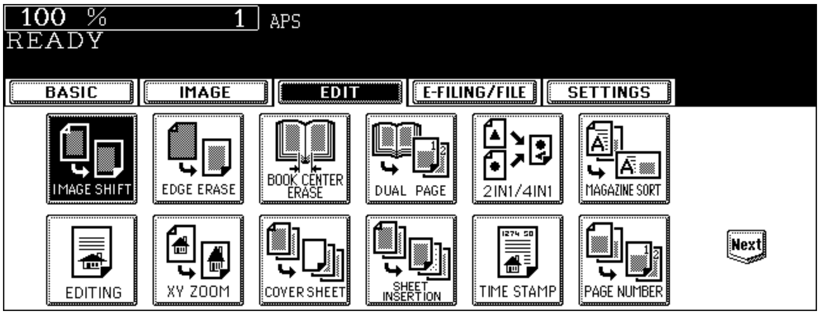
Creating a right or left margin

1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

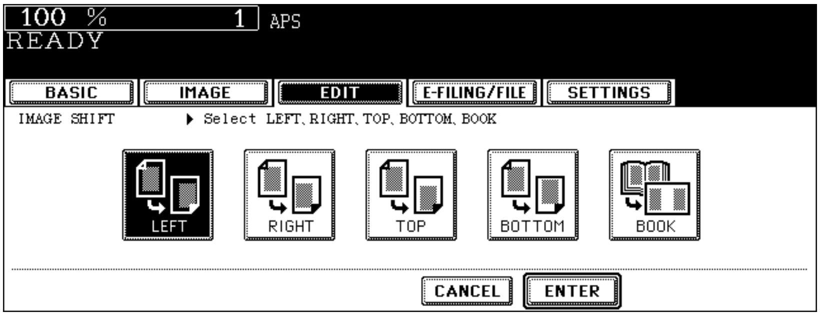
- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.

2 **Place the original(s).**

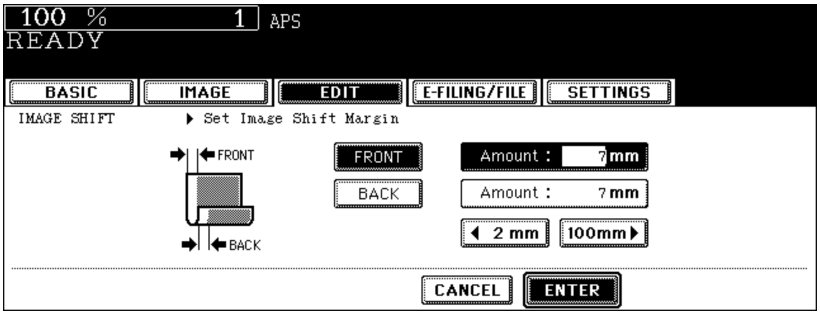
3 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE SHIFT] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Press the [LEFT] (or [RIGHT]) button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
▶ Select LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, BOTTOM, BOOK
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
CANCEL
ENTER

5 Adjust the margin width by pressing the [2 mm] or [100 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

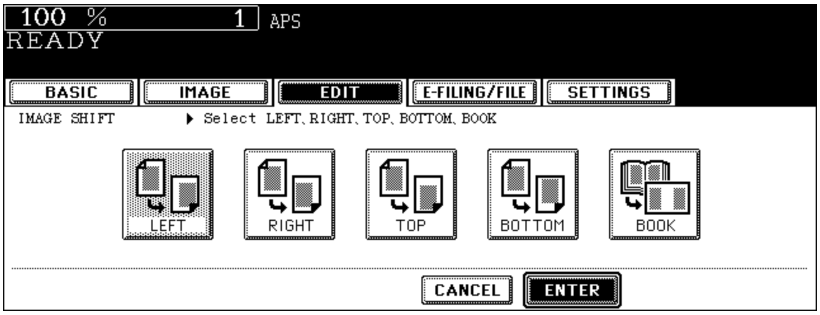

100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
▶ Set Image Shift Margin
FRONT
BACK
FRONT
BACK
◀ 2 mm
100mm ▶
CANCEL
ENTER

Amount : 7 mm

Amount : 7 mm

- The default width of the margin is 7 mm (0.276").
- In duplex copying, margins on the back are created on the other side of those in the front. (📖 P.113 “4.Duplex Copying”)

6 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
▶ Select LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, BOTTOM, BOOK
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
CANCEL
ENTER

- Select other copy modes as required.

7 Press the [START] button.

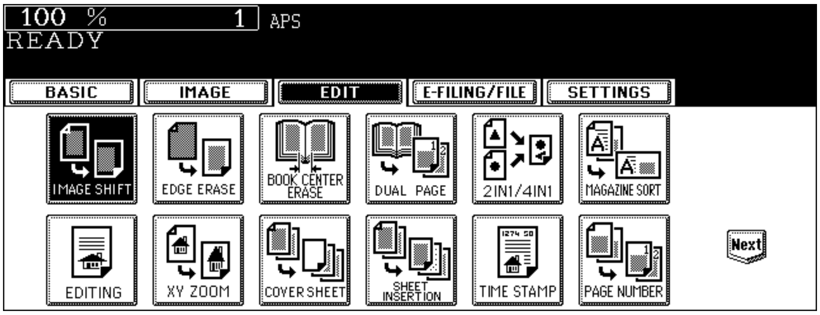
Creating a top or bottom margin

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.

2 Place the original(s).

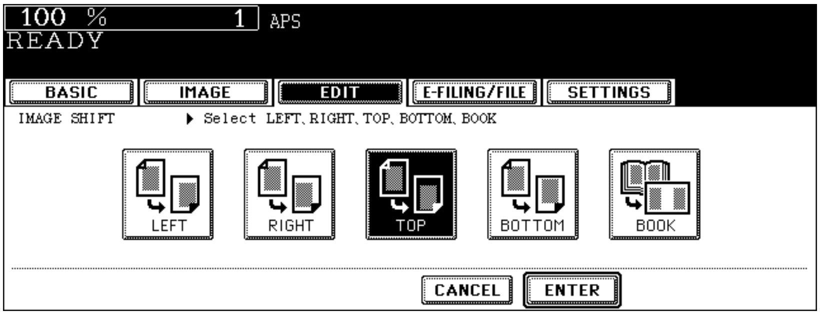
3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE SHIFT] button.



100 % 1 APS
READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
Next
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER

4 Press the [TOP] (or [BOTTOM]) button.

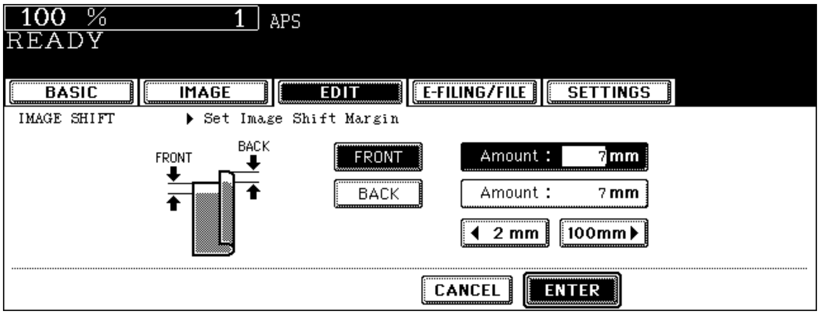


100 % 1 APS
READY

IMAGE SHIFT ▶ Select LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, BOTTOM, BOOK

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
CANCEL
ENTER

5 Adjust the margin width by pressing the [2 mm] or [100 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.



100 % 1 APS
READY

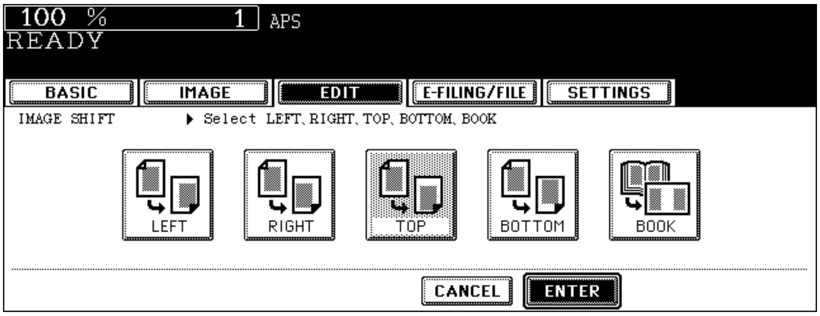
IMAGE SHIFT ▶ Set Image Shift Margin

FRONT Amount : 7 mm
BACK Amount : 7 mm

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
FRONT
BACK
◀ 2 mm
100mm ▶
CANCEL
ENTER

- The default width of the margin is 7 mm (0.276").

6 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
▶ Select LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, BOTTOM, BOOK
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
CANCEL
ENTER

- Select other copy modes as required.

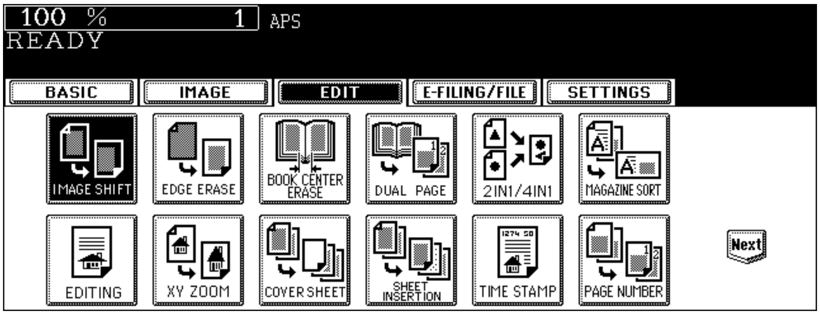
7 Press the [START] button.

Creating a bookbinding margin

This is used when setting “Book-type original -> 2-sided copy” (📖 P.118) in duplex copying. The margin is created in the center (inner margin).

- Acceptable paper sizes for this function is LT only.

1 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE SHIFT] button.**


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

2 **Press the [BOOK] button.**

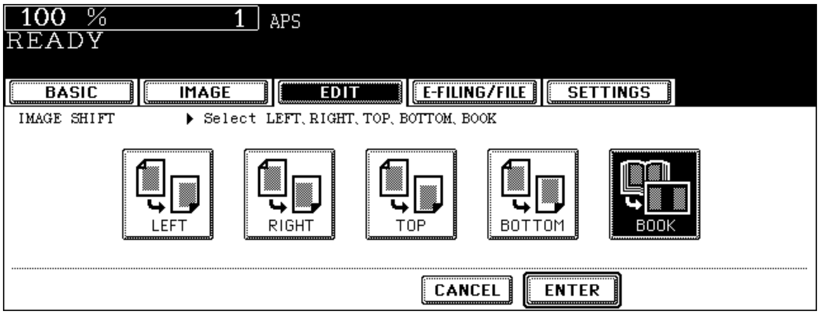


IMAGE SHIFT ▶ Select LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, BOTTOM, BOOK

100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
CANCEL
ENTER

3 **Adjust the margin width by pressing the [2 mm] or [30 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.**

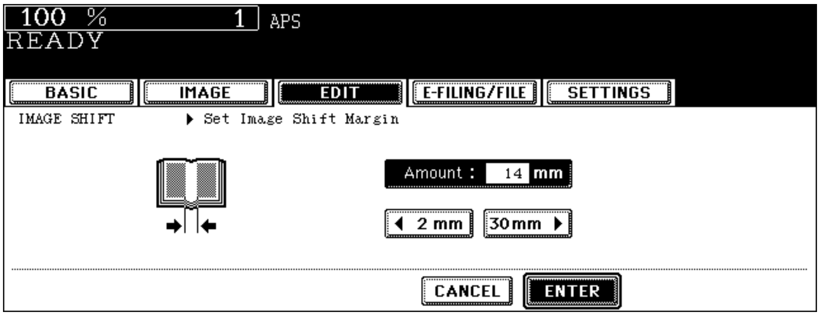


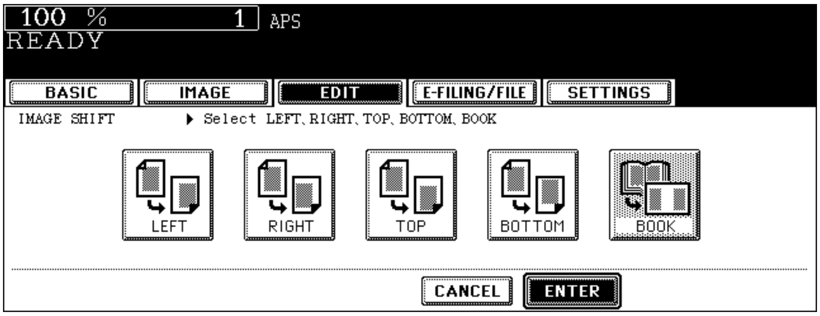
IMAGE SHIFT ▶ Set Image Shift Margin

Amount : 14 mm

100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
◀ 2 mm
30mm ▶
CANCEL
ENTER

- The default width of the margin is 14 mm (0.551").

4 Press the [ENTER] button.



100 % 1 APS
READY

IMAGE SHIFT ▶ Select LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, BOTTOM, BOOK

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LEFT
RIGHT
TOP
BOTTOM
BOOK
CANCEL
ENTER

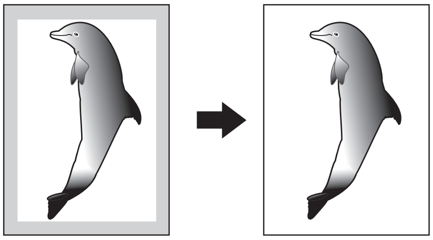
- Set “Book-type original -> 2-sided copy” (📖 P.118) in duplex copying as well.

2. EDGE ERASE

If the original has a dirty or torn edge, it may be reproduced as a black stain on the copy. In that case, set the edge erase. A white border is created along the edges of the copy, eliminating those black stains.

Tips

- This function is available only in the case of standard-size originals.
- The width of the edge erase margin can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.

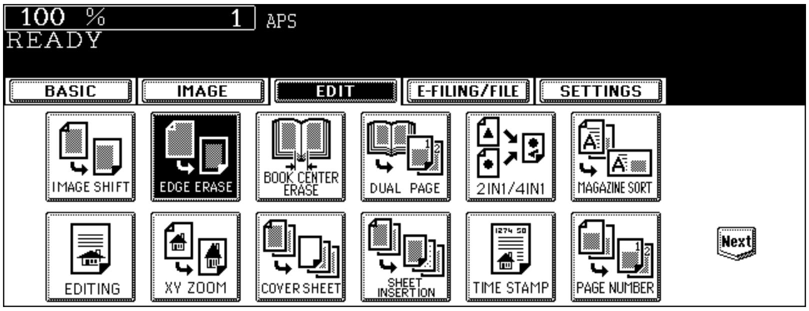


1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

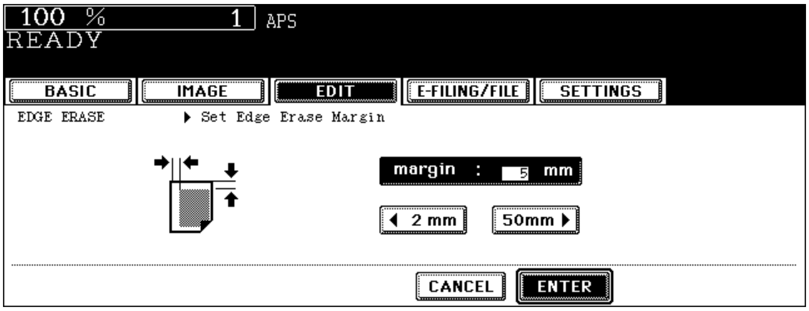
- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDGE ERASE] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Adjust the width by pressing the [2 mm] or [50 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.


BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
◀ 2 mm
50mm ▶
CANCEL
ENTER

100 % 1 APS
READY

EDGE ERASE ▶ Set Edge Erase Margin

margin : 5 mm

- The default width of the white border is 5 mm (0.197").
- Select other copy modes as required.

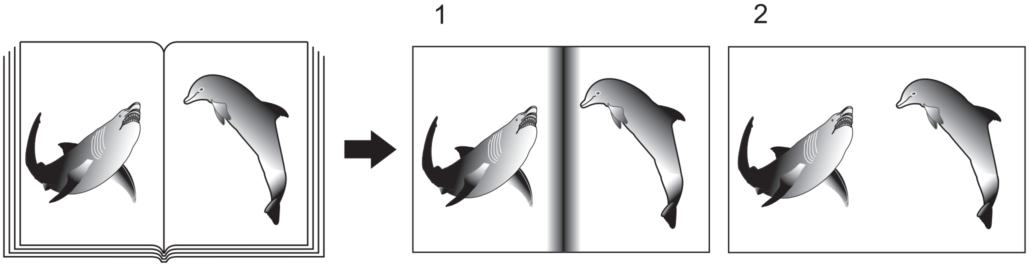
5 Press the [START] button.

3. BOOK CENTER ERASE

This function allows you to erase the shadow in the center of a book original.

1. Before book center erase is set
2. After book center erase is set

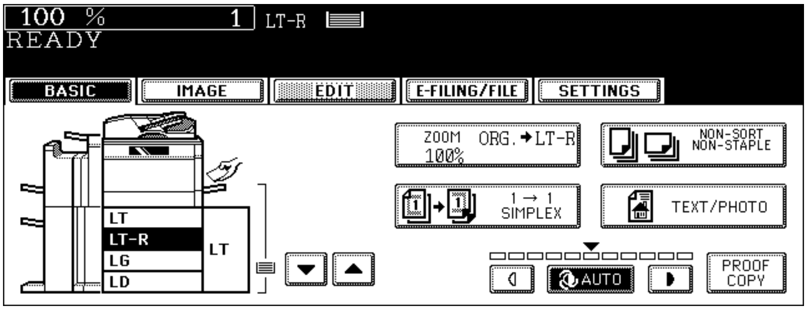
The width of the book center erase margin can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.



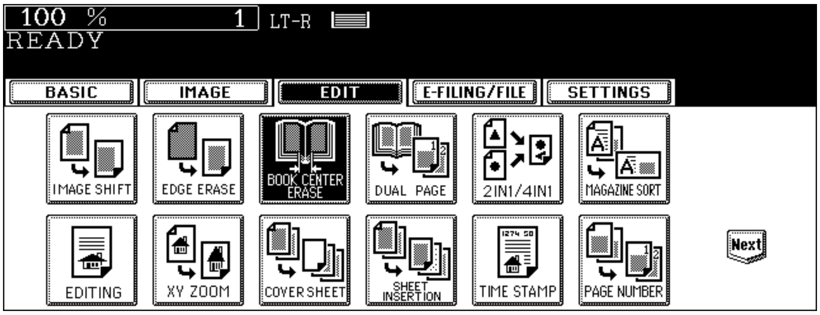
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.

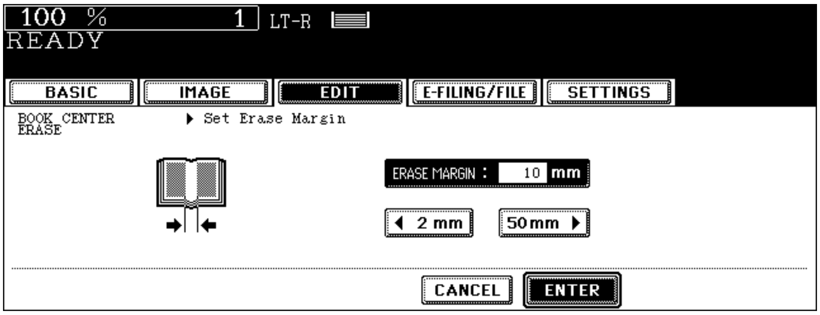
2 Press the drawer button representing the desired paper size on the touch panel.


100 %
1
LT-R
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→LT-R
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [BOOK CENTER ERASE] button.


100 %
1
LT-R
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Adjust the width by pressing the [2 mm] or [50 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.


100 %
1
LT-R
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BOOK CENTER ERASE
2 mm
50mm
CANCEL
ENTER

READY

▶ Set Erase Margin

ERASE MARGIN : 10 mm

- The default width of the erase margin is 10 mm (0.393").
- Select other copy modes as required.

5 Place a book original on the original glass.

- Align its center with the yellow guide line near the center of the original glass.

Caution

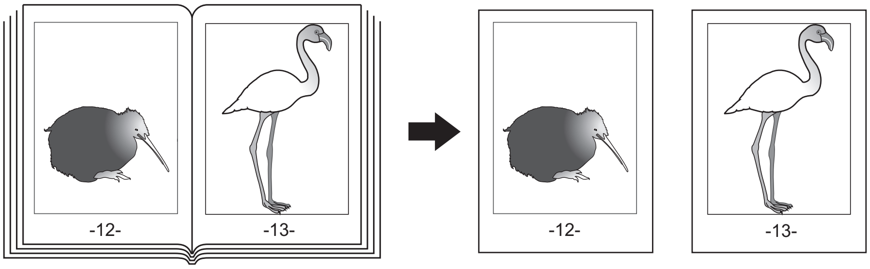
Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

6 Press the [START] button.

4. DUAL PAGE

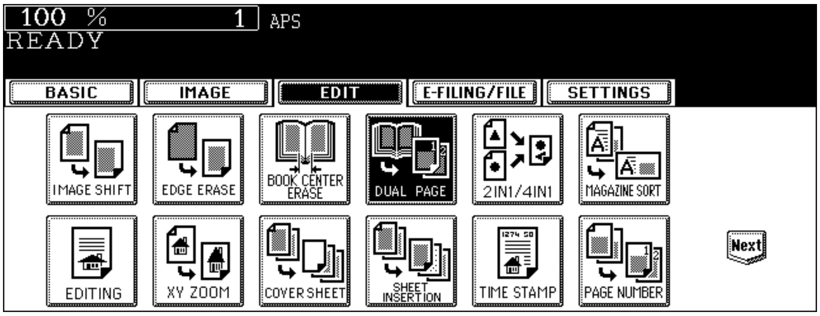
This function allows the facing pages of a book or magazine to be copied page by page onto 2 separate sheets of paper or duplex-copied on one sheet. It is not necessary to move the original on the glass. You can also place a pair of LT sized originals side by side and copy them on separate sheets of paper.

- Acceptable paper sizes for this function is LT only.



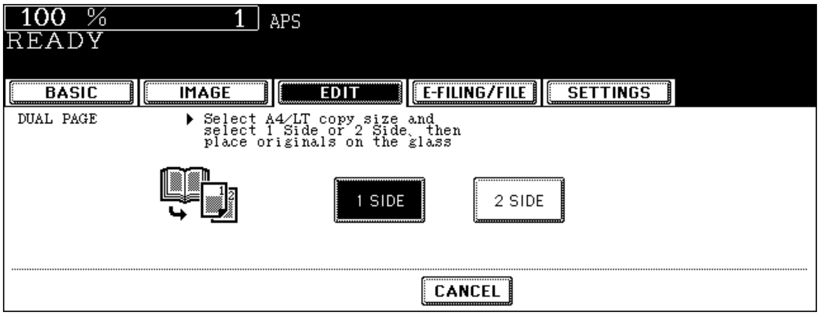
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then the [DUAL PAGE] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

3 Press the [1 SIDE] (or [2 SIDE]) button.

1 SIDE: Making copies of the facing pages on 2 separate sheets of paper page by page
2 SIDE: Making duplex copies of them on one sheet


DUAL PAGE

Select A4/LT copy size and select 1 Side or 2 Side, then place originals on the glass

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1 SIDE
2 SIDE
CANCEL

- The yellow indicator line for placing a book moves near the center of the original glass.
- If you need a binding margin, set the right or left margin. (📖 P.130 “Creating a right or left margin”)

4 Press the [BASIC] button to enter the basic menu, and then select the copy size (LT).

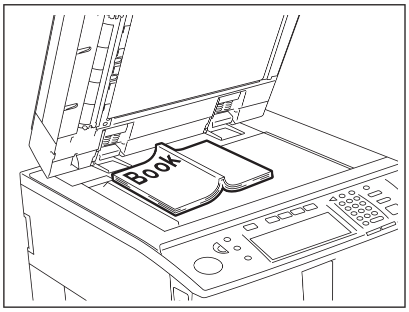
- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.
- Select other copy modes as required.

5 Place the first page(s) to be copied on the glass, and then press the [START] button.

- Center the book on the yellow indicator line with the bottom toward you. (📖 P.67 “Book-type originals”)

Caution

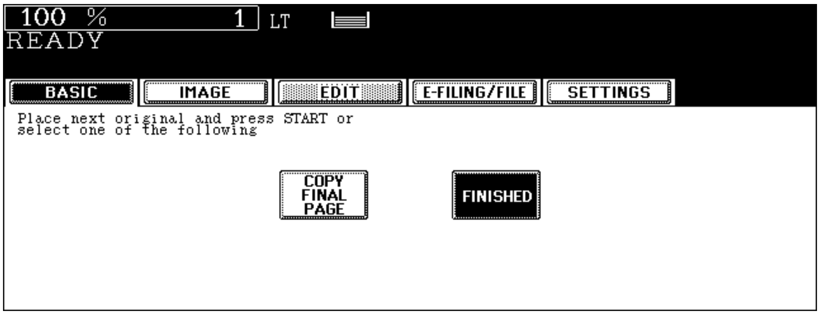
Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.



6 Turn to the next page, set the book again, and then press the [START] button.

- Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

7 After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.



100 % 1 LT
READY

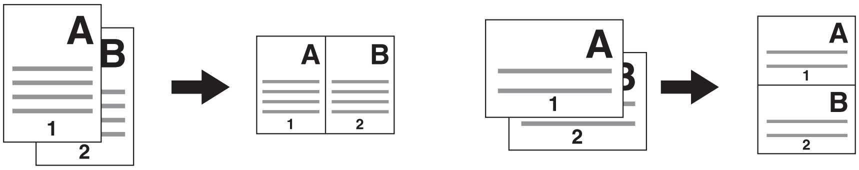
Place next original and press START or select one of the following

- Press the [COPY FINAL PAGE] button if the last original is a 1-sided page.

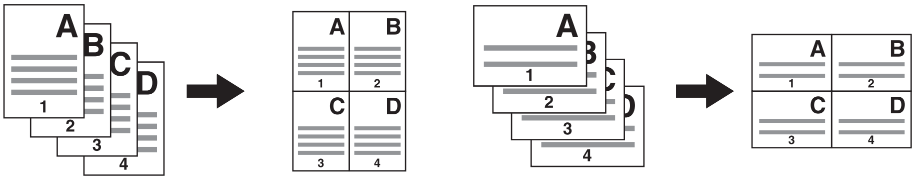
5. 2IN1 / 4IN1

This feature allows multiple originals to be reduced and copied onto a single sheet of paper. There are 2 modes: 2IN1 copying, where 2 originals are copied onto a single sheet, and 4IN1 copying, where 4 originals are copied onto a single sheet. In addition, duplex 2IN1 / 4IN1 modes are available, where four/eight originals can be copied to 2 sides of a single sheet of paper.

2IN1

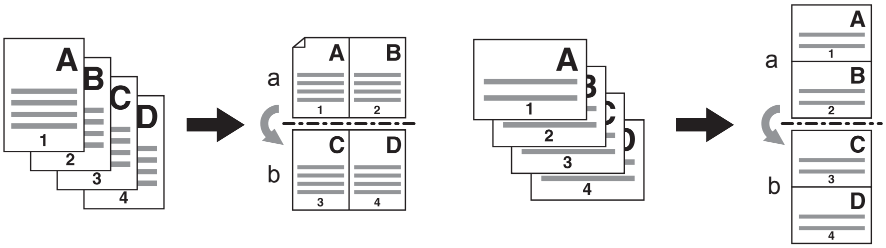


4IN1



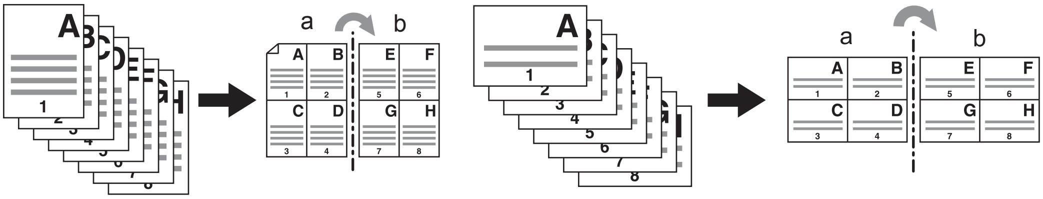
2IN1 DUPLEX (a: Side 1, b: Side 2)

- When a copy is turned with the line as a pivot, originals are printed on Side 2 (back face) as shown.



4IN1 DUPLEX (a: Side 1, b: Side 2)

- When a copy is turned with the line as a pivot, originals are printed on Side 2 (back face) as shown.

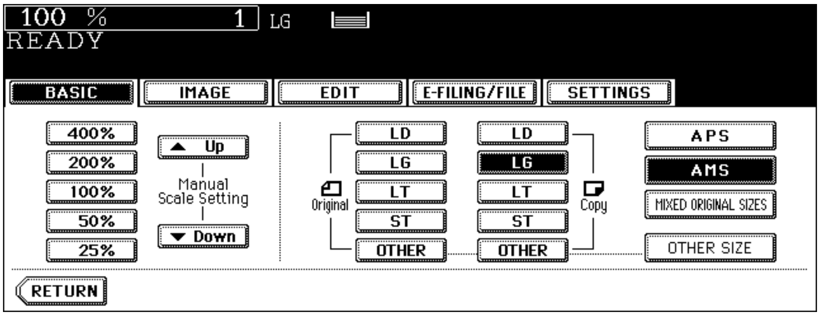


1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.

Tip

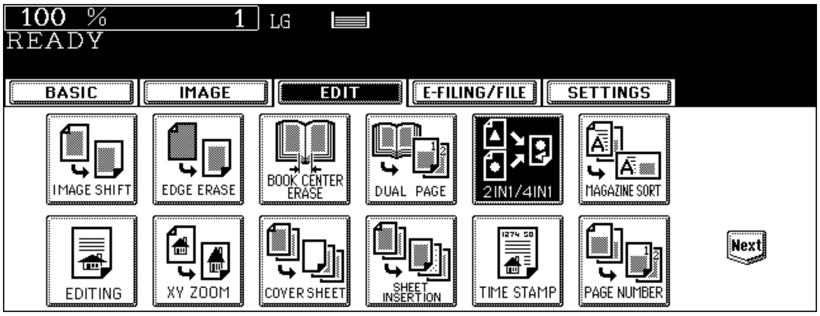
To make copies on paper which is not the same size as the original, press the [ZOOM] button on the basic menu to enter the following menu, select the desired paper size and press the [AMS] button.


100 % 1 LG
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
400%
200%
100%
50%
25%
Up
Manual Scale Setting
Down
Original
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
LD
LG
LT
ST
OTHER
Copy
APS
AMS
MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES
OTHER SIZE
RETURN

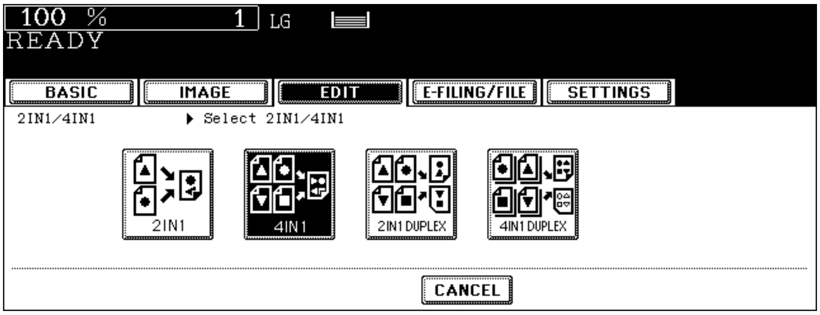
- If the paper size is not changed, paper of the same size as the original is selected.

2 Place the original(s).

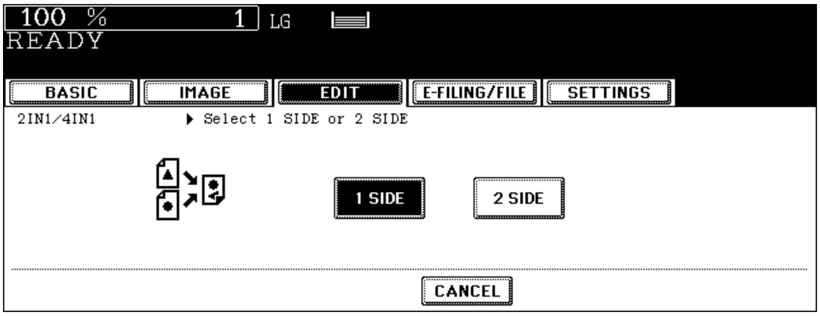
3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [2 IN1 / 4IN1] button.


100 % 1 LG
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Select the type of image combination.


100 % 1 LG
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
2IN1/4IN1
▶ Select 2IN1/4IN1
2IN1
4IN1
2IN1 DUPLEX
4IN1 DUPLEX
CANCEL

5 Press the [1 SIDE] (or [2 SIDE]) button.


100 % 1 LG
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
2IN1/4IN1
▶ Select 1 SIDE or 2 SIDE
1 SIDE
2 SIDE
CANCEL

- Select other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

- When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is used, the original is scanned and copying starts.
- When the original is placed on the original glass, perform steps 7 and 8.

7 Place the next original, and press the [START] button.

- Data scanning of this original starts.
- The next original will also be scanned in the same manner when you press the [YES] button on the touch panel, and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
- Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

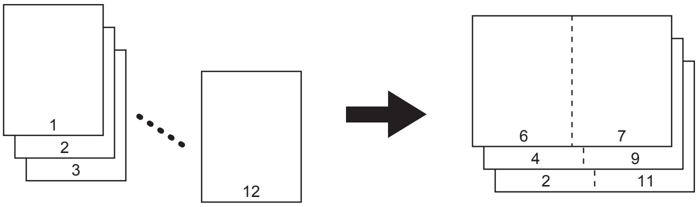
8 After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.

- Copying starts.

6. MAGAZINE SORT

This function allows 1-sided originals to be copied and sorted so that they can be folded and bound along a center line like typical magazines or booklets.

Example of copying a 12-page document


1
2
3
12
6
7
4
9
2
11

Tips

- When placing a portrait originals horizontal to you in the magazine sort mode, be sure to set the correct direction of the originals. (🕮 P.167 “14.IMAGE DIRECTION”)
- The Magazine sort function has 2 procedures; operating from the basic menu and operating from the edit menu. When operating from the edit menu, the margin width can be adjusted.
  To operate from the basic menu, see 🕮 P.106 “Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode)”.

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

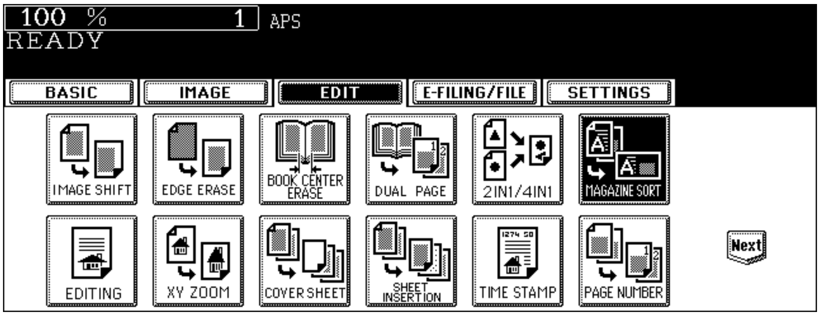
- When using the Saddle Stitch Finisher, LD, LG, LT-R, A3, A4-R and B4 are available.

2 Select the paper type.

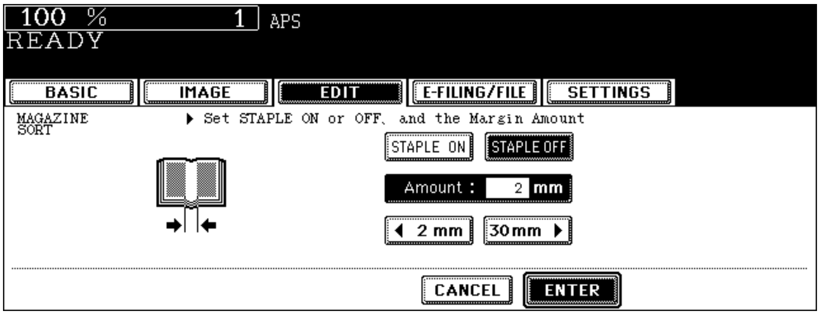
- For drawer feeding, see 🕮 P.90 “Manual paper selection”.
- For bypass feeding, see 🕮 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”.

3 Place the original(s).

4 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [MAGAZINE SORT] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

5 Set the saddle-stitch and the binding margin and press the [ENTER] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
MAGAZINE SORT
STAPLE ON
STAPLE OFF
2 mm
30mm
CANCEL
ENTER

▶ Set STAPLE ON or OFF, and the Margin Amount

Amount : 2 mm

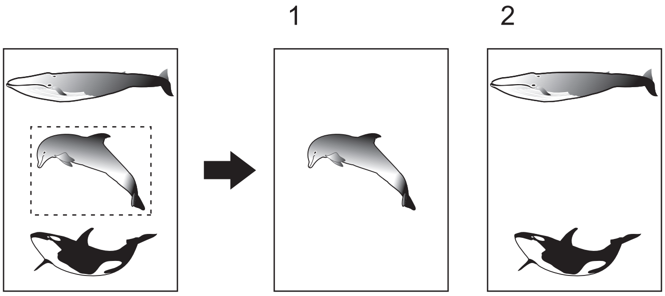
- To staple the center line using the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional), press the [STAPLE ON] button. For the maximum number of sheets that can be stapled, see 📖 P.108 “Available conditions for saddle stitching”.
- To adjust the width, press the [2 mm] or [30 mm] button.
- The default width of the margin is 2 mm (0.08").
- The margin width can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.
- Select other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

Trimming / Masking

This function allows you to copy only the inside of the specified area on an original (trimming) or copy with the specified area masked (masking). Up to 4 rectangular areas can be specified on an original.

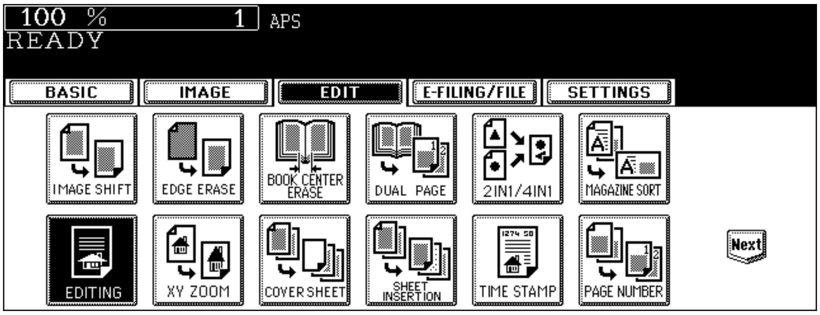
- Image editing is only available with standard-size originals.
- If the original and copy paper sizes are set incorrectly, the image in the specified range may not be copied correctly.
  1. An example of trimming
  2. An example of masking



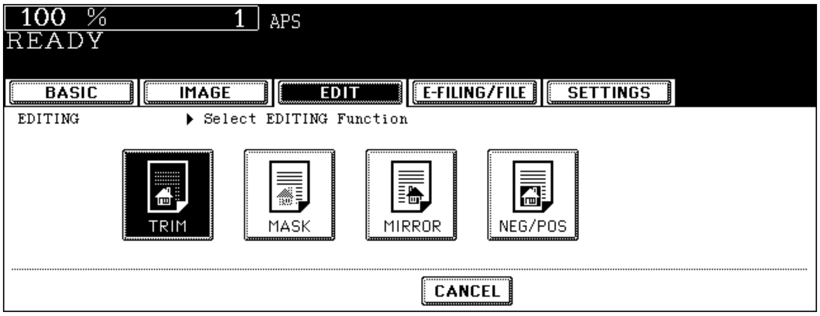
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

- When using this mode in bypass copying, be sure to specify the paper size (📖 P.88 “1.Paper Selection”).

2 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDITING] button.**

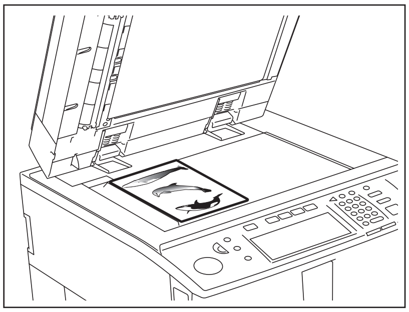

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

3 Press the [TRIM] (or [MASK]) button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
EDITING
▶ Select EDITING Function
TRIM
MASK
MIRROR
NEG/POS
CANCEL

4 Place the original with its face up on the original glass.

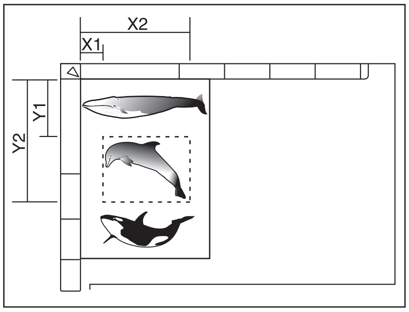
- Set the original with its face up and bottom toward you and fit its top left corner against that of the original glass to align it with the original scales.



Caution

Do not place heavy objects (9 lb. or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

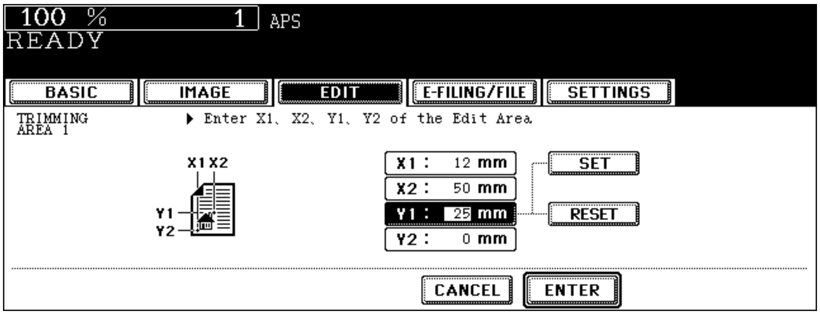
5 Specify the area. Read the following 4 values of the left and top scales.



X1: Distance from the top left to the left edge of the specified area
X2: Distance from the top left to the right edge of the specified area
Y1: Distance from the top left to the upper edge of the specified area
Y2: Distance from the top left to the lower edge of the specified area

- The marks of the original scale have a 2 mm (0.08") pitch.

6 Enter the values read in step 5 for the specified area, and then press the [SET] button. Set 4 values in order.



100 % 1 APS
READY

TRIMMING
AREA 1

▶ Enter X1、X2、Y1、Y2 of the Edit Area

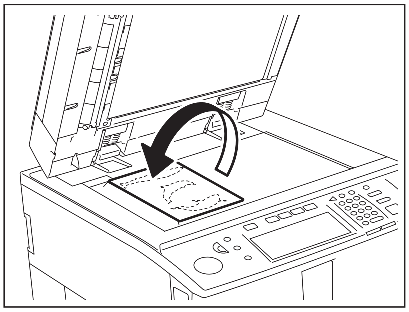
X1 : 12 mm
X2 : 50 mm
Y1 : 25 mm
Y2 : 0 mm

- After the setting of 4 values is finished, the next edit area menu is displayed. Repeat steps 5 and 6 when you specify other areas. Up to 4 areas can be specified on an original.
- To correct the value which has been set, press the [RESET] button. Pressing it once makes the highlighted field move one position upward. Highlight the field in which you want to rectify the value, and then key in the correct one.

7 Press the [ENTER] button after specifying the area.

8 Place the original(s) with its face down.

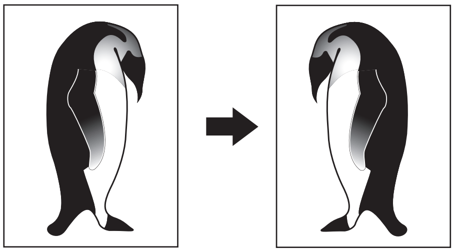
- Set the original with its face down and bottom toward you and fit its top left corner against that of the original glass.
- Select other copy modes as required.



9 Press the [START] button.

Mirror image

This function allows you to make copies with images completely reversed (right and left).

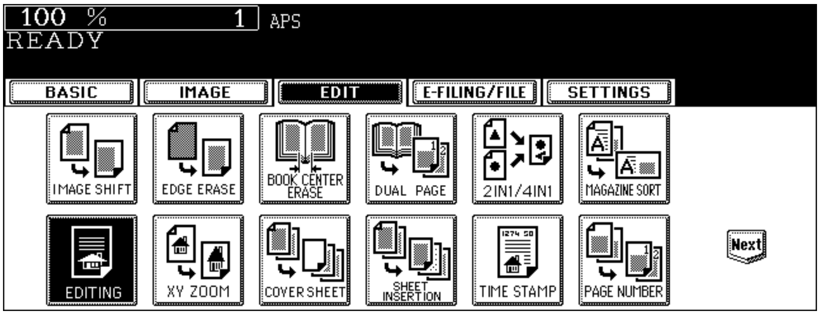


1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

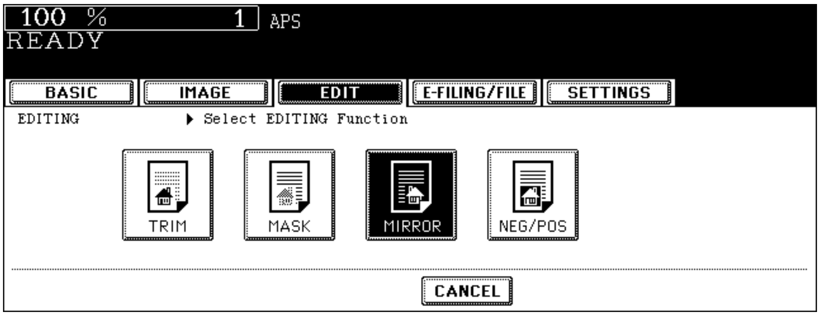
- When using this mode in bypass copying, be sure to specify the paper size (📖 P.88 “1.Paper Selection”).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDITING] button.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Press the [MIRROR] button.

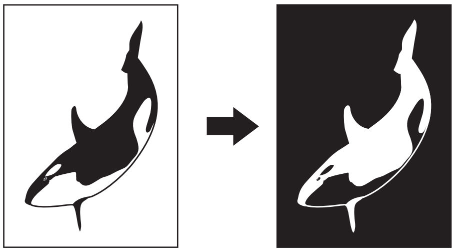

100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
EDITING
▶ Select EDITING Function
TRIM
MASK
MIRROR
NEG/POS
CANCEL

- Select other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

Negative/Positive reversal

This function allows you to make copies reversing the black areas on the original to white ones, or vice versa.

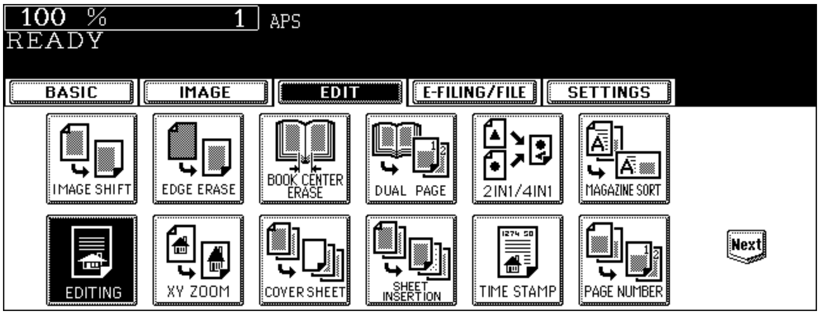


1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

- When using this mode in bypass copying, be sure to specify the paper size (📖 P.88 “1.Paper Selection”).

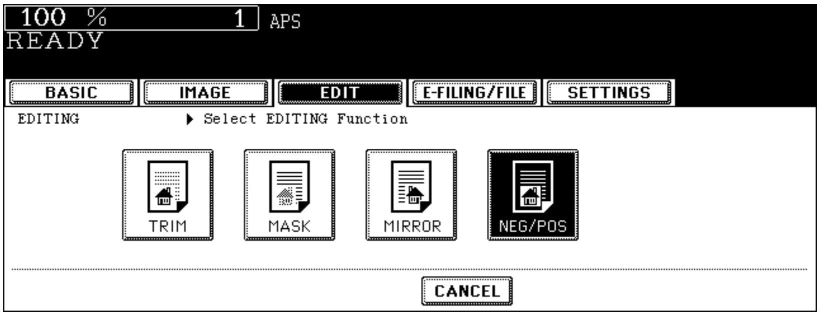
2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDITING] button.**



100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 **Press the [NEG/POS] button.**



100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
EDITING
▶ Select EDITING Function
TRIM
MASK
MIRROR
NEG/POS
CANCEL

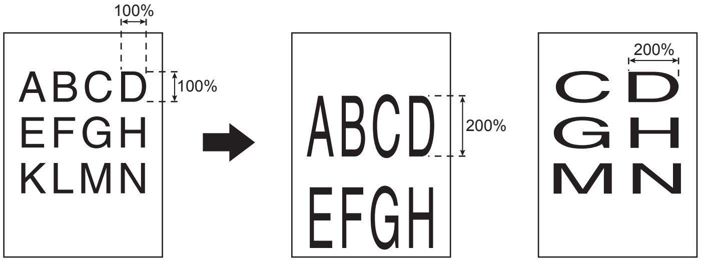
- Select other copy modes as required.

5 **Press the [START] button.**

8. XY ZOOM

This function allows you to make copies with different reproduction ratios set for the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) direction in the range of 25 to 400%.

- When an original is placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, the reproduction ratio is in the range of 25 to 200%.

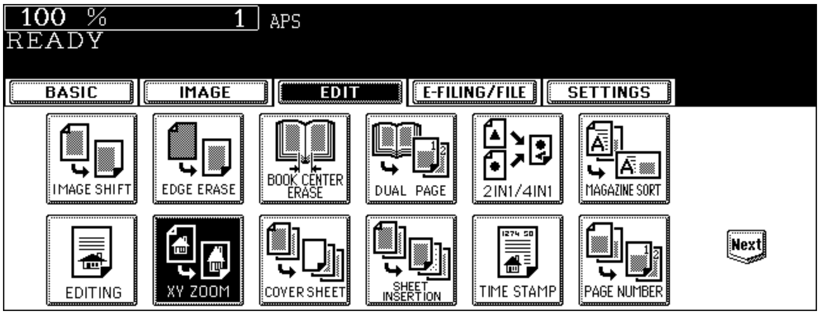

100%
ABCD
EFGH
KLMN
100%
ABCD
EFGH
200%
200%
CD
GH
MN

1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

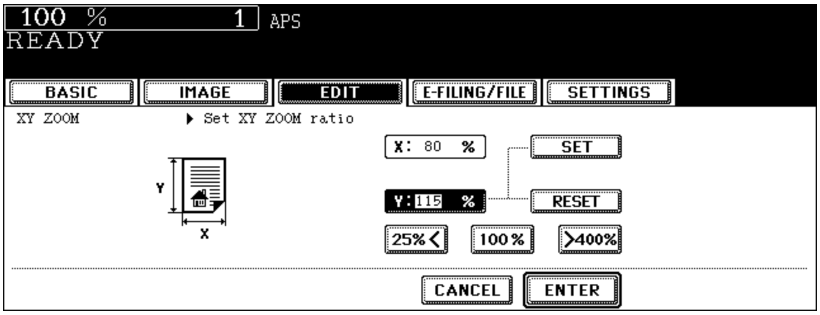
- When using this mode in bypass copying (📖 P.75), be sure to specify the paper size.

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [XY ZOOM] button.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Using the [25%] and [400%] buttons, set the reproduction ratio for X and press the [SET] button. Then set the reproduction ratio for Y.

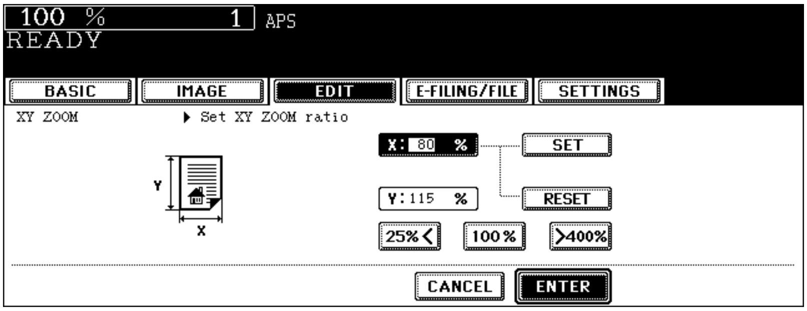

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
XY ZOOM
Y
X
SET
RESET
25%<
100%
>400%
CANCEL
ENTER

100 % 1 APS
READY

▶ Set XY ZOOM ratio

X: 80 %
Y: 115 %

5 Press the [ENTER] button.


BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
XY ZOOM
Y
X
SET
RESET
25%<
100%
>400%
CANCEL
ENTER

100 % 1 APS
READY

▶ Set XY ZOOM ratio

X: 80 %
Y: 115 %

- Select other copy modes as required.

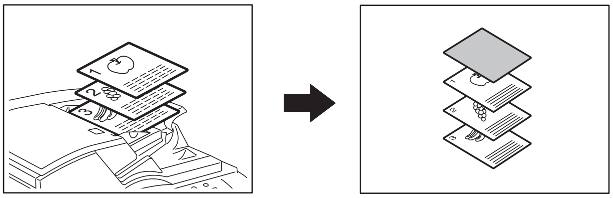
6 Press the [START] button.

9. COVER SHEET

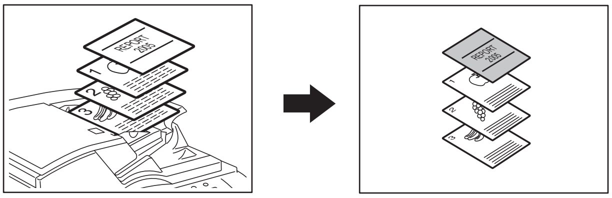
This function allows you to insert special sheets of paper (such as color paper) into a set of copies as cover sheets. A copied front cover sheet can be inserted. The back cover sheet is inserted blank. There are 4 types of cover sheet modes:

1. Adding a blank front cover sheet ([TOP BLANK])
2. Adding a copied front cover sheet ([TOP COPIED])
3. Adding a blank front and blank back cover sheets ([BOTH BLANK])
4. Adding a copied front and blank back cover sheets ([TOP COPIED BACK BLANK])

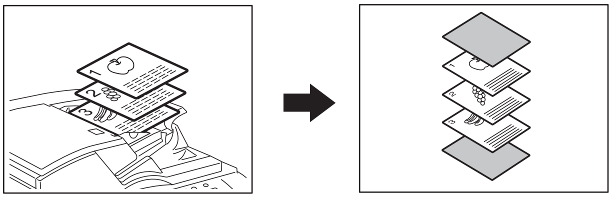
1



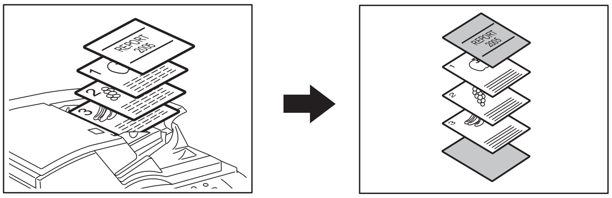
2



3



4



1 Place the cover sheet.

- Place the cover sheet in the drawer selected for cover sheets, on the bypass tray or the Inserter Unit. (However, the Inserter Unit cannot be used with [TOP COPIED] or [TOP COPIED BACK BLANK].)
- When it is placed in the drawer for the cover sheets, you must set the paper type (cover sheet), size and thickness. (📖 P.53 “Drawer for special uses”)
- When it is placed on the bypass tray, you must set the paper size and thickness. (📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”)
- When you use the Inserter Unit with [TOP BLANK] or [BOTH BLANK], see 📖 P.183 “18.INSERTER”.
- Make sure the cover sheet and the sheets other than the cover sheet are placed in the same direction and of the same size.

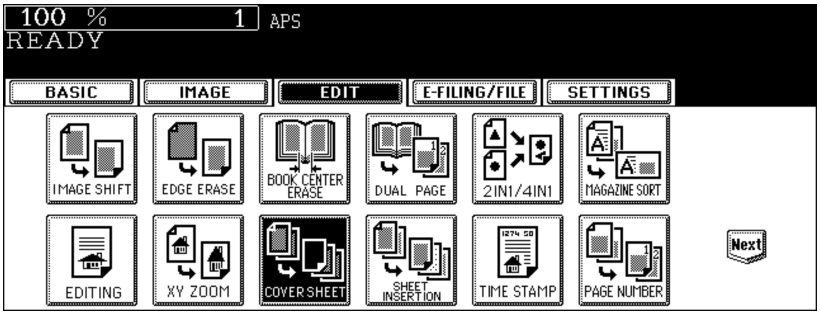
2 Place paper (other than cover paper) in the drawer(s).

- Make sure the cover sheet and the copy paper have the same orientation and size.

3 Place the original(s).

- Originals should be placed from the first page on the original glass.

4 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu and then the [COVER SHEET] button.

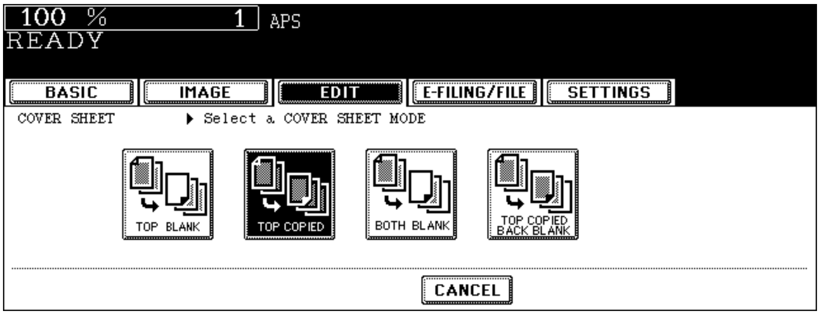


100 % 1 APS
READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

5 Press the desired cover sheet button.

TOP BLANK: To add a blank front cover sheet
TOP COPIED: To add a copied front cover sheet
BOTH BLANK: To add blank front and back cover sheets
TOP COPIED BACK BLANK: To add copied front and blank back cover sheets



100 % 1 APS
READY

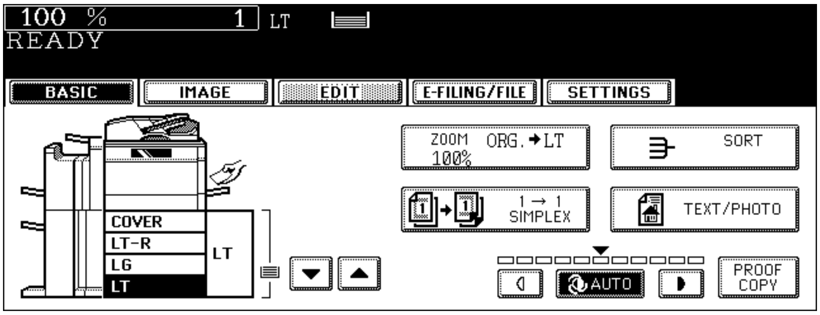
COVER SHEET ▶ Select a COVER SHEET MODE

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
TOP BLANK
TOP COPIED
BOTH BLANK
TOP COPIED BACK BLANK
CANCEL

Tip

When “1-Sided Original to 2-Sided Copy” with the [TOP COPIED] or [TOP COPIED BACK BLANK] button pressed is performed, a 1-sided copy is made for a cover sheet.

6 Press the [BASIC] button to enter the basic menu, and then select a paper source of the same size and direction as the cover sheet.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM ORG.➔LT
100%
SORT
1 → 1
SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
COVER
LT-R
LG
LT
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- Select other copy modes as required.

7 Press the [START] button.

- When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is used, the original is scanned and copying starts.
- When the original is placed on the original glass, perform steps 8 and 9.

8 Place the next original, and press the [START] button.

- Data scanning of this original starts.
- The next original will also be scanned in the same manner when you press the [YES] button on the touch panel, and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
- Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

9 After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.

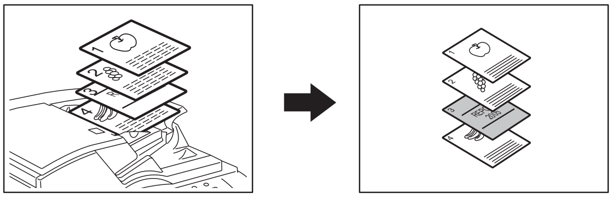
- Copying starts.

10. SHEET INSERTION

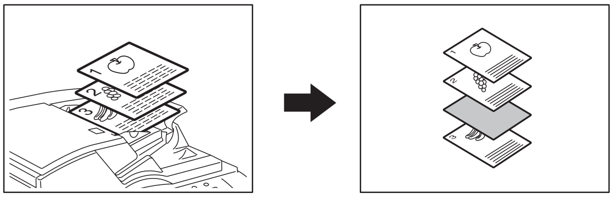
This function allows you to insert special sheets of paper (such as color paper) into the specified pages. 2 kinds of sheets for insertion are available. Up to 50 pages can be specified for [INSERT SOURCE 1] and [INSERT SOURCE 2] combined. There are 2 types of sheet insertion modes:

1. Inserting a copied sheet into the specified page ([COPIED])
2. Inserting a blank sheet into the page previous to the specified one ([BLANK])

1



2



1 Place the special sheets of paper.

🕮 P.53 “Drawer for special uses”

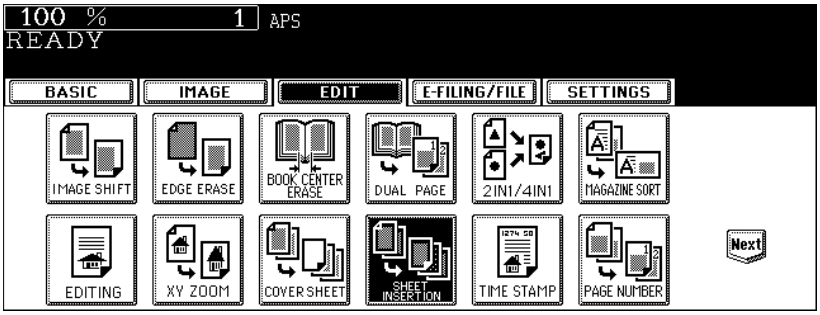
- Place the special sheets of paper in the drawer selected for sheet insertion, on the bypass tray or the Inserter Unit. (However, the Inserter Unit cannot be used with [COPIED].)
- When you use the Inserter Unit with [BLANK], see 🕮 P.183 “18.INSERTER”.
- Both special sheets of paper and plain paper should be placed in the same direction and be of the same size.

2 Place plain paper in the drawer(s).

3 Place the original(s).

- Originals should be placed from the first page on the original glass.

4 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [SHEET INSERTION] button.

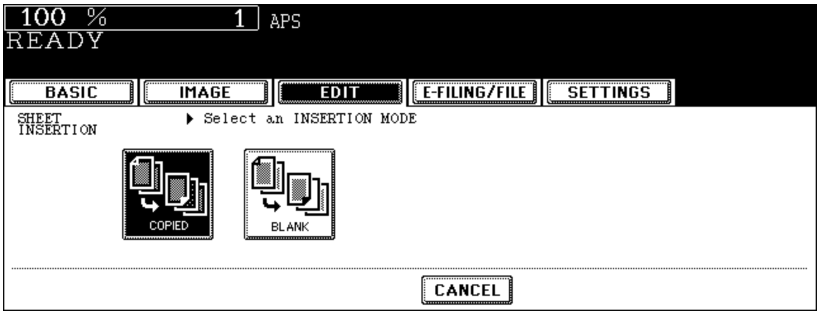


100 % 1 APS
READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

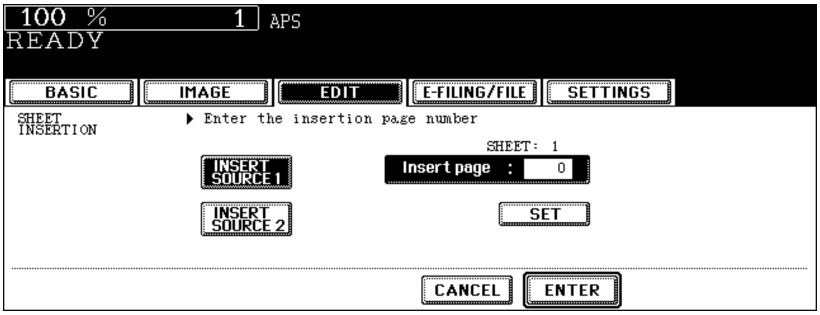
5 Press the [COPIED] (or [BLANK]) button.

COPIED: To insert a copied sheet into the specified page
BLANK: To insert a blank sheet into the page previous to the specified one


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
SHEET INSERTION
COPIED
BLANK
CANCEL

▶ Select an INSERTION MODE

6 Press the [INSERT SOURCE 1] (or [INSERT SOURCE 2]) button.

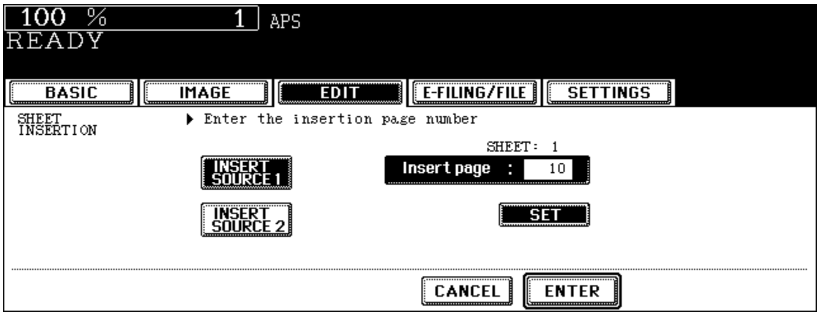

100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
SHEET INSERTION
INSERT SOURCE 1
INSERT SOURCE 2
SET
CANCEL
ENTER

▶ Enter the insertion page number

SHEET: 1

Insert page : 0

7 Key in the desired page number (3 digits or less) for insertion and press the [SET] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
SHEET INSERTION
INSERT SOURCE 1
INSERT SOURCE 2
SET
CANCEL
ENTER

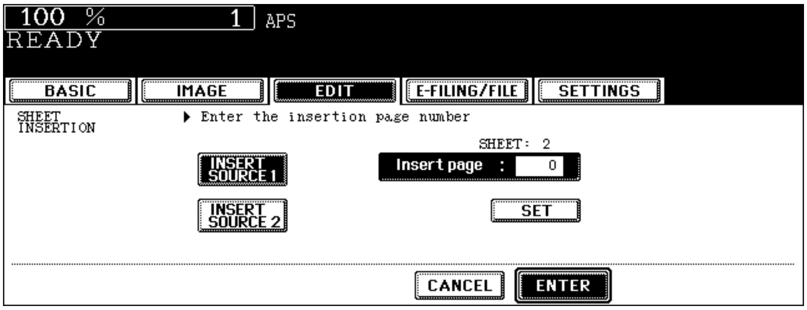
▶ Enter the insertion page number

SHEET: 1

Insert page : 10

- When [COPIED] is selected on step 5, a copied sheet is inserted into the specified page. When [BLANK] is selected, a blank sheet is inserted into the page previous to the specified one.
- Up to 50 pages can be specified for [INSERT SOURCE 1] and [INSERT SOURCE 2] combined. When inserting multiple sheets one by one at specified pages, repeat steps 6 and 7.

8 After the specifying of all insertion pages is finished, press the [ENTER] button.

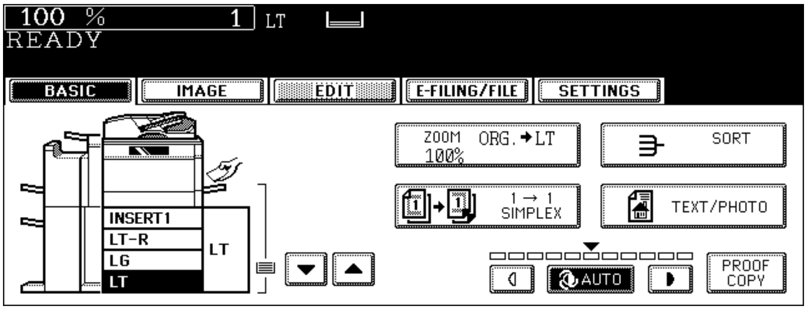

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
SHEET INSERTION
INSERT SOURCE 1
INSERT SOURCE 2
SET
CANCEL
ENTER

▶ Enter the insertion page number

SHEET: 2

Insert page : 0

9 Press the [BASIC] button to enter the basic menu, and then select a paper source of the same size and direction as the sheet insertion.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
INSERT1
LT-R
LG
LT
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→LT
SORT
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- Select other copy modes as required.

10 Press the [START] button.

- When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) is used, the original is scanned and copying starts.
- When the original is placed on the original glass, perform steps 11 and 12.

11 Place the next original, and press the [START] button.

- Data scanning of this original starts.
- The next original will also be scanned in the same manner when you press the [YES] button on the touch panel, and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
- Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

12 After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.

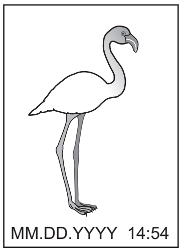
- Copying starts.

11. TIME STAMP

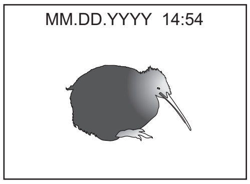
This function allows you to add the time and date of the scanning to the copies.

1. Printed at the bottom of a portrait copy
2. Printed at the top of a landscape copy

1


MM.DD.YYYY 14:54

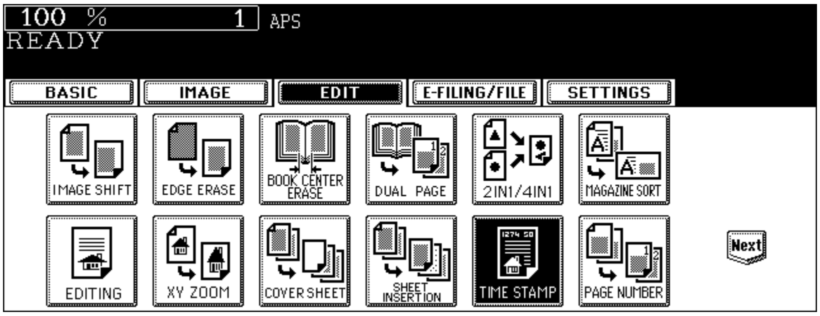
2


MM.DD.YYYY 14:54

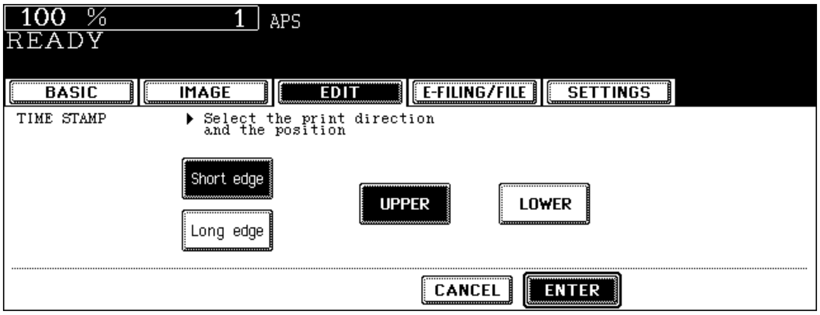
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [TIME STAMP] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

4 Select the orientation ([Short edge] or [Long edge]) and position ([UPPER] or [LOWER]) of the date and time to be printed, and then press the [ENTER] button.


TIME STAMP ▶ Select the print direction and the position
100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
Short edge
Long edge
UPPER
LOWER
CANCEL
ENTER

- Select other copy modes as required.

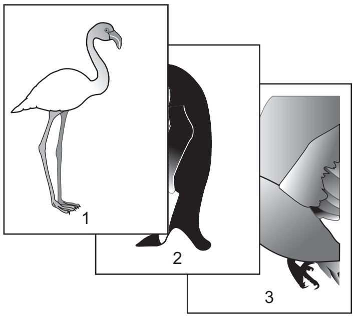
5 Press the [START] button.

12. PAGE NUMBER

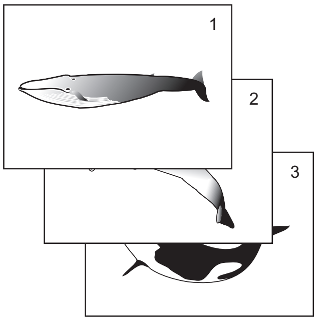
This function allows you to add page numbers to the copies.

1. Printed at the bottom center of a portrait copy
2. Printed at the top right of a landscape copy

1



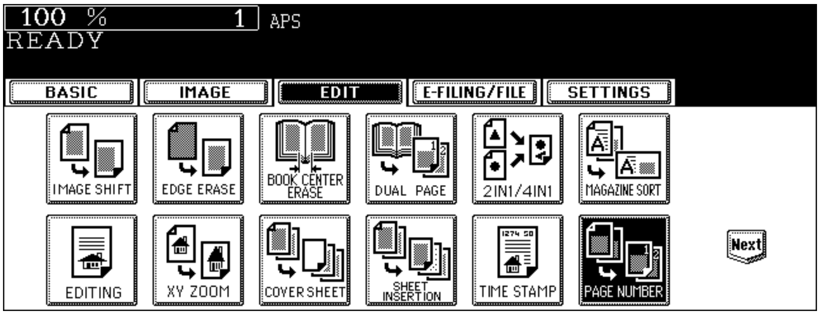
2



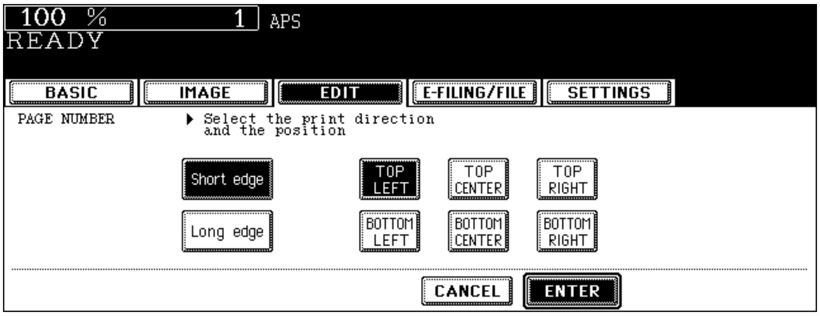
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [PAGE NUMBER] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT
EDGE ERASE
BOOK CENTER ERASE
DUAL PAGE
2IN1/4IN1
MAGAZINE SORT
EDITING
XY ZOOM
COVER SHEET
SHEET INSERTION
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
Next

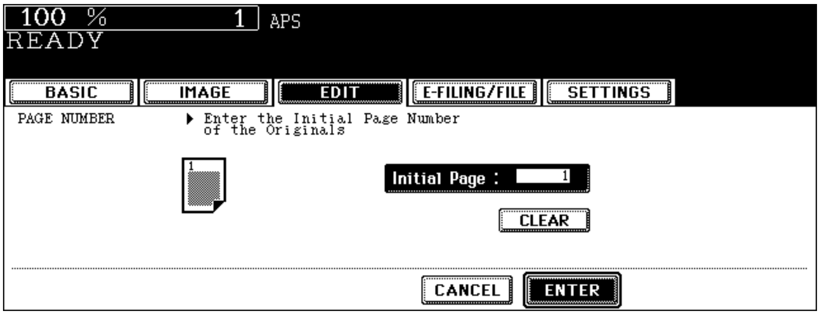
4 **Select the orientation ([Short edge] or [Long edge]) and position ([TOP LEFT], [TOP CENTER], [TOP RIGHT], [BOTTOM LEFT], [BOTTOM CENTER] or [BOTTOM RIGHT]) of the page number to be printed, and then press the [ENTER] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
Short edge
Long edge
TOP LEFT
TOP CENTER
TOP RIGHT
BOTTOM LEFT
BOTTOM CENTER
BOTTOM RIGHT
CANCEL
ENTER

PAGE NUMBER

▶ Select the print direction and the position

5 **Key in the starting page number and then press the [ENTER] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
1
CLEAR
CANCEL
ENTER

PAGE NUMBER

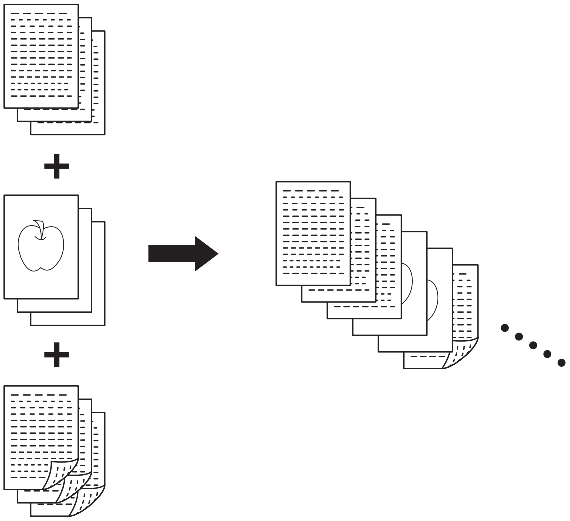
▶ Enter the Initial Page Number of the Originals

Initial Page : 1

- Select other copy modes as required.

6 **Press the [START] button.**

This function allows you to copy different kinds of originals at one time.
Scanning is performed by setting the optimal original mode and image adjustment for each original (it is called a job). After all the originals have finished being scanned, they can be copied at one time.
Also, the original scanning source (Reversing Automatic Document Feeder or original glass) of originals can be switched per job, and so, for example, after originals such as multiple LD texts, news clips, photographs in magazines and multiple LT photographs with the appropriate settings have finished being scanned, they can be copied in the scanned order in one go. And the scanned data can be stored in e-Filing.



- Up to 2000 pages of originals are possible.
- Any number of jobs can be set until the total number of scanned original pages reaches 2000.

There are restrictions on the settings for JOB BUILD: Settings not available for JOB BUILD, common settings which are set before scanning the first job and applied to all jobs, and changeable settings for each job. See the following table to perform the setting.

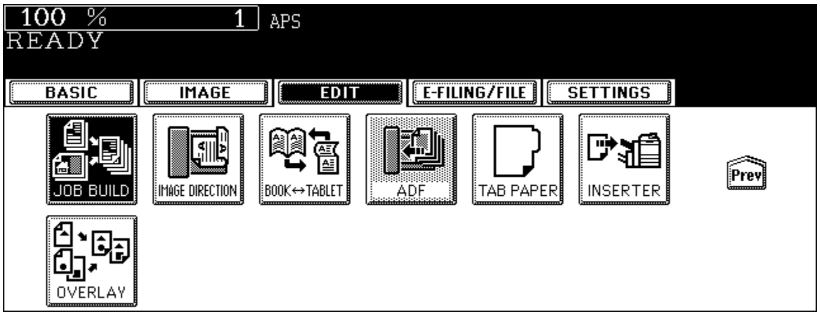
Settings not available for JOB BUILD	Common settings for all jobs	Changeable settings per each job
Automatic Paper Selection (APS) Book to 2 Image editing XY zoom Cover copying Sheet insertion mode Magazine sort Magazine sort & Saddle stitch 2IN1 / 4IN1 Tab paper Inserter Overlay	e-Filing/file Mixed-size original Paper size to be copied Sort mode Image shift Book center erase Time stamp Page number Image direction in 2-sided copying Book <-> tablet	Reproduction ratio Automatic magnification selection (Default setting for JOB BUILD) Original size Original mode 2-sided (or 1-sided) copying Background adjustment Sharpness Edge erase Dual-page ADF / SADF

1 Place the originals of the 1st job.

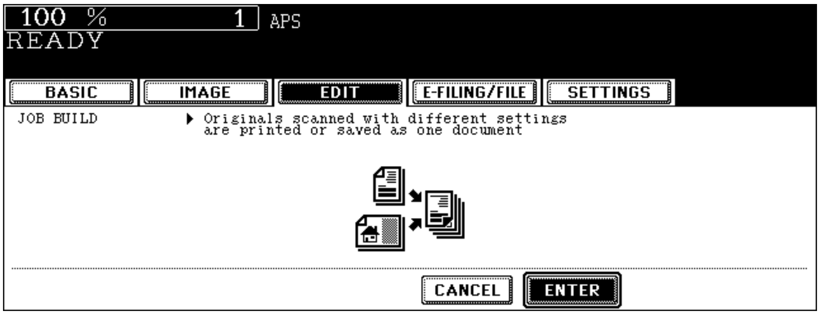
Tips

- When an original is placed on the original glass, one page is regarded as one job.
- To copy mixed-size originals using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, see 📖 P.91 “When copying mixed-size originals in one go”.
- Select the drawer if you want to specify it.

2 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [JOB BUILD] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

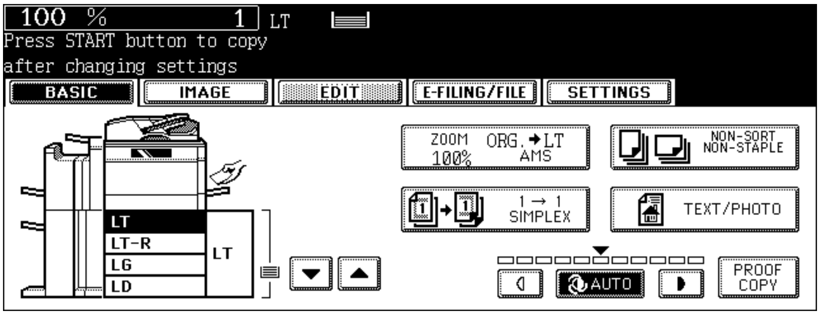
3 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
CANCEL
ENTER

▶ Originals scanned with different settings are printed or saved as one document

- Read the brief description of JOB BUILD on the touch panel.
- JOB BUILD is set and the basic menu is displayed.

4 After “Press START button to copy after changing settings.” appears, perform the settings for the 1st job and the common settings for all jobs.


100 % 1 LT
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔LT AMS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

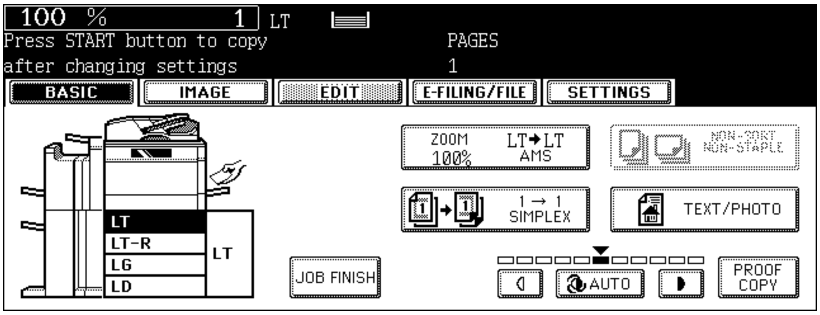
Press START button to copy
after changing settings

- Press the [SETTINGS] button to confirm the settings.
- To change the settings, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button, and then start the procedure again from step 1.

5 Press the [START] button.

- The scanning of the originals for the 1st job starts.

6 After “Press START button to copy after changing settings.” appears, place the originals of the 2nd job. Perform the settings for the 2nd job.


100 % 1 LT
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
LT➔LT AMS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
JOB FINISH
AUTO
PROOF COPY

Press START button to copy
after changing settings
PAGES
1

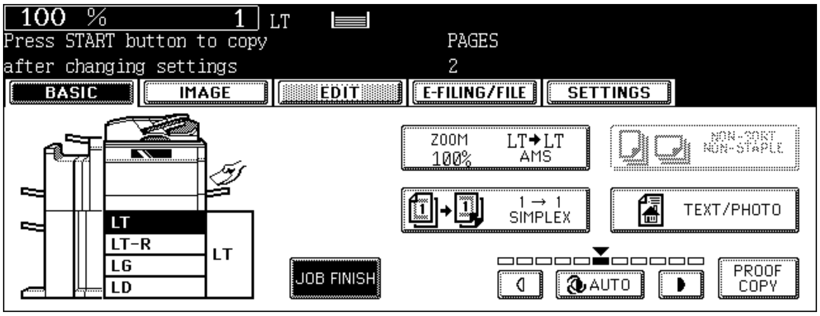
- Note that copying will be performed in the same modes as those of the 1st job if the settings are not changed.
- Press the [SETTINGS] button to confirm the settings.

7 Press the [START] button.

- The scanning of the originals for the 2nd job starts.
- Repeat steps 6 to 7 until all the originals have finished being scanned.

8 After all the originals have finished being scanned, confirm the number of copies on the menu and change if needed.

9 Press the [JOB FINISH] button on the basic menu.



100 % 1 LT

Press START button to copy
after changing settings

PAGES
2

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
LT→LT AMS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
JOB FINISH
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- The copying of the originals starts.
- When copy and e-Filing/file functions are set, storing starts.

14. IMAGE DIRECTION

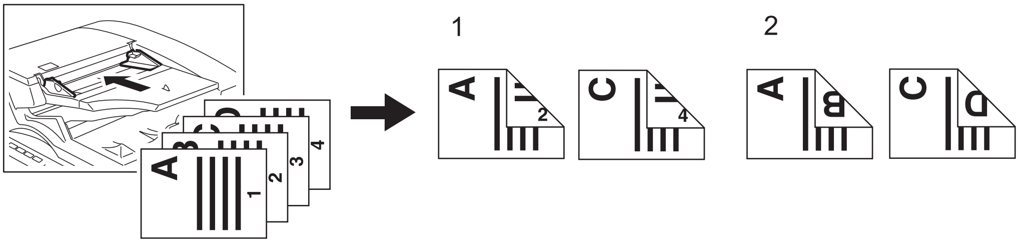
This function allows you to adjust the direction to ‘open toward the left’ when a portrait original such as LD, LT, LG, ST-R, etc., which is placed in a landscape direction, is copied under the mode of “1-Sided Originals to 2-Sided Copies”.

- This function is not necessary for copying in the direction of ‘open to top’.

When a 2-sided ‘open toward the left’ (Book) portrait LD, LT, LG, ST-R original, etc. is copied using this function with [2-Sided Originals to 1-Sided Copies], copies can be adjusted to the same direction.

[IMAGE DIRECTION]:

1. Set
2. No setting


1
2
A
B
C
D
1
2
3
4

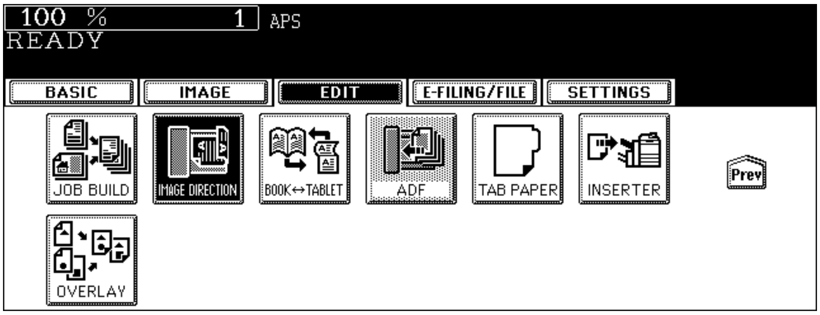
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Perform the setting of [1 -> 2 DUPLEX] (or [2 -> 1 SPLIT]).

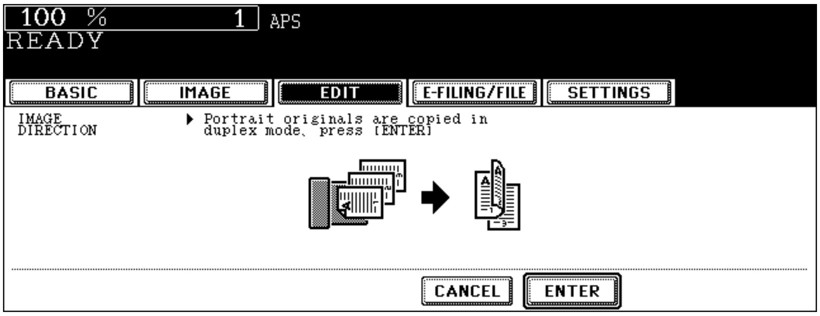
📖 P.113 “4.Duplex Copying”

4 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [IMAGE DIRECTION] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

- The direction of the copy is adjusted by this operation.

5 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1
APS
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
CANCEL
ENTER

READY

IMAGE DIRECTION

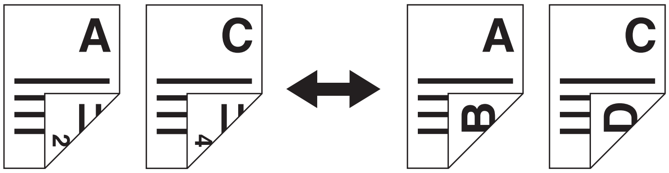
Portrait originals are copied in duplex mode, press [ENTER]

- Select other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

15. BOOK - TABLET

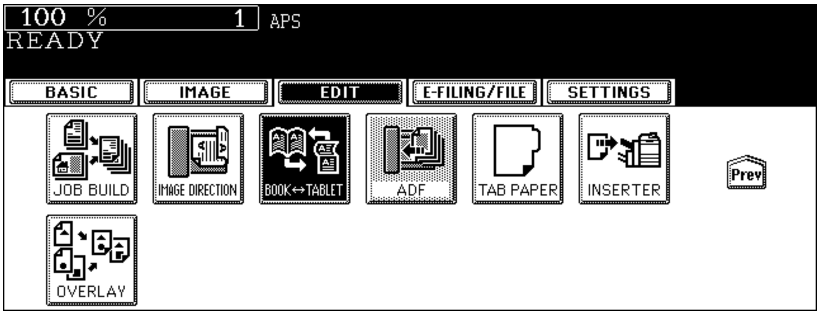
When copying under the mode of 2-Sided Originals to 2-Sided-Copies, this function allows you to rotate the back side of the original to be copied by 180º. It is useful when ‘open to left’ (Book) originals need to be copied in ‘open to top’ (Tablet), and the opposite condition is available.



1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

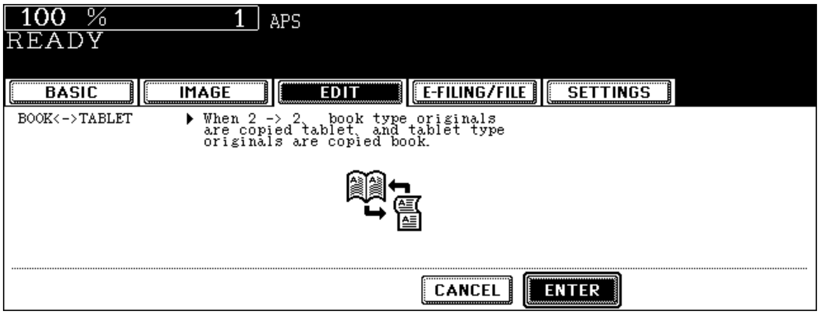
2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [BOOK <-> TABLET] button.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

- ‘Open to left’ originals are copied in ‘open to top’ and ‘open to top’ originals are copied in ‘open to left’ by this operation.

4 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
CANCEL
ENTER

BOOK<->TABLET

▶ When 2 -> 2, book type originals are copied tablet, and tablet type originals are copied book.

- Select other copy modes as required.

5 Press the [START] button.

16. ADF / SADF

You can select the paper feeding mode when using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.
There are two ways to feed originals.

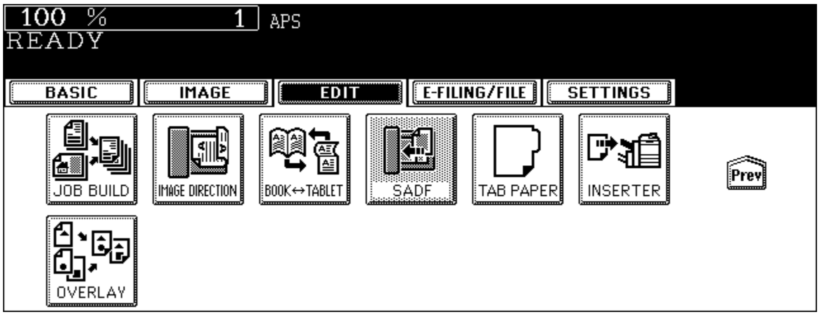
Continuous feed mode:	Originals placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder are continuously fed in after the [START] button is pressed. It is useful to select this mode for copying multiple originals at one time. (This is the initial setting at the time of the installation of the equipment.)
Single feed mode:	An original is automatically pulled in as soon as it is placed. It is recommended to select this mode for copying originals one by one.

- In the single feed mode, set the originals one after another. Setting more than one original could cause a tilted image or a paper jam.
- To set different size originals, see 🕮 P.91 “When copying mixed-size originals in one go”.

Continuous feed mode

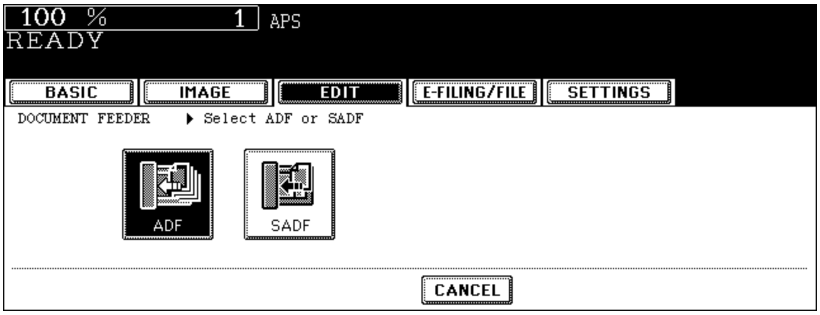
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [SADF] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
SADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

- If the [ADF] button is already displayed, the continuous feed mode is set. In this case, skip to step 5.

3 **Press the [ADF] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
DOCUMENT FEEDER
▶ Select ADF or SADF
ADF
SADF
CANCEL

- Select other copy modes as required.

4 Place the original(s) on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.

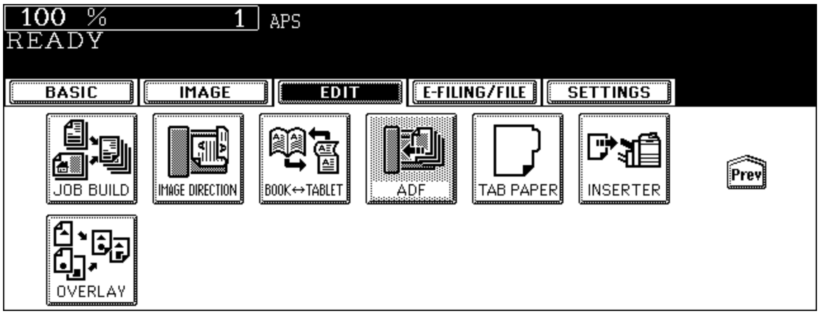
📖 P.68 “Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder”

5 Press the [START] button.

Single feed mode

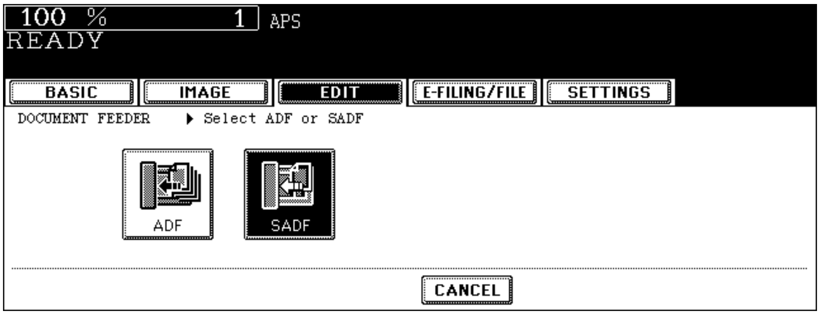
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [ADF] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

- If the [SADF] button is already displayed, the single feed mode is set. In this case, skip to step 4.

3 Press the [SADF] button.

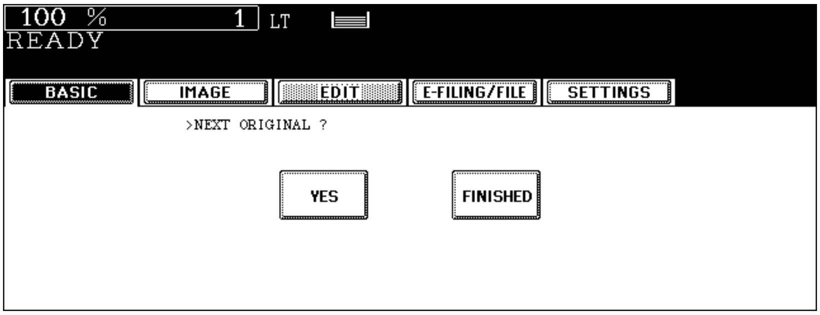

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ADF
SADF
CANCEL

DOCUMENT FEEDER ▶ Select ADF or SADF

- Select other copy modes as required.

4 Place the original one by one.

- The original is automatically pulled in and the following menu is displayed.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
YES
FINISHED

>NEXT ORIGINAL ?

- If there are more originals, set them in the same way. (The same operation is performed whether or not you press the [YES] button.)

5 After all originals have finished being fed, press the [FINISHED] button.

Tip

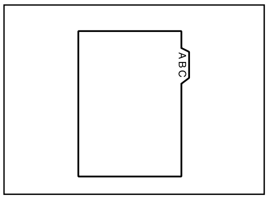
If the [FINISHED] button is not pressed, copying is started when the automatic function clear is operated.
📖 P.32 “Clearing functions selected”

17. TAB PAPER

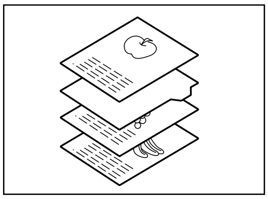
Tab paper copying and insertion are available. There are the following 3 modes.

1. Copying on the tab of tab paper ([COPY ON TAB])
2. Inserting blank tab paper prior to a selected page ([BLANK TAB INSERT])
3. Combination of copying on tab paper and inserting tab paper ([COPIED TAB INSERT])

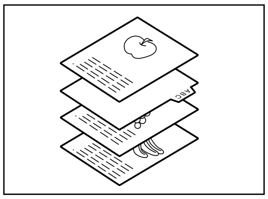
1



2



3

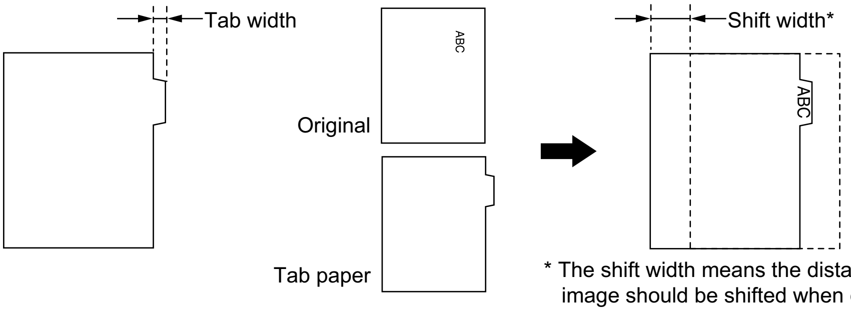


- Before copying on tab paper, adjust the tab width. (📖 P.176)
- The tab paper can be set in any one drawer and the bypass tray except Large Capacity Feeder. (The recommendation is to set in the 2nd drawer.)
- Be sure to set “TAB PAPER” for the drawer for special uses. (📖 P.53 “Drawer for special uses”)
- Only LT/A4 can be used in this mode.
- When the optional finisher is attached to the equipment, only 5 or 8-bank tab paper is available.

Preparing an original to copy on the tab of the tab paper

LT/A4 originals are used. In copying on tab or copied tab insert, the image is shifted to copy the index of the original on the tab position.

● By setting the tab width and shift width, the image is shifted to copy the index of the original on the tab position.



* The shift width means the distance that image should be shifted when copied on the tab paper.

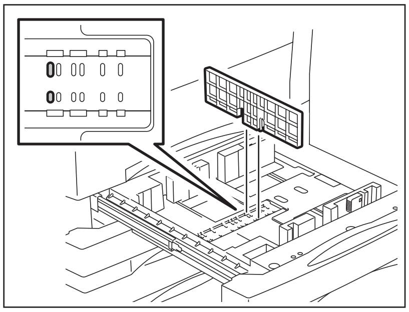
Setting tab paper in the drawer

The setting order is different between when the tab paper is set in the drawer and when it is set on the bypass tray.

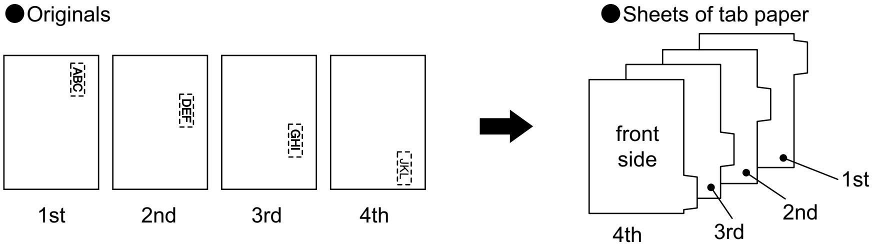
1 Pull out the drawer.

- Placing paper in the second drawer is recommended.

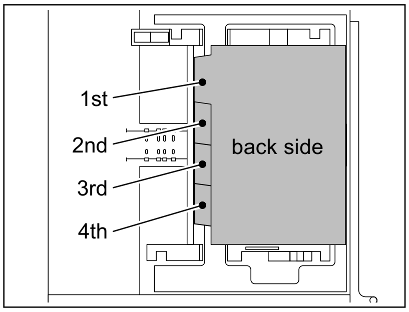
2 Insert the tab paper back guide into the slit of LT-TAB (or A4-TAB).



3 Align the tab paper with the original.


●Originals
ABC
DEF
GHI
JKL
1st
2nd
3rd
4th
●Sheets of tab paper
front side
1st
2nd
3rd
4th

4 Place the tab paper with its face down in the drawer.


1st
2nd
3rd
4th
back side

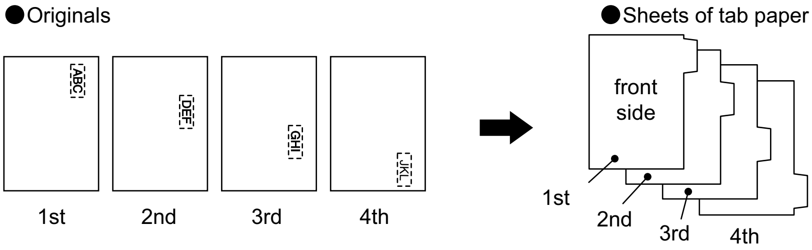
5 Close the drawer.

- Check if the drawer for special uses is “TAB PAPER”.

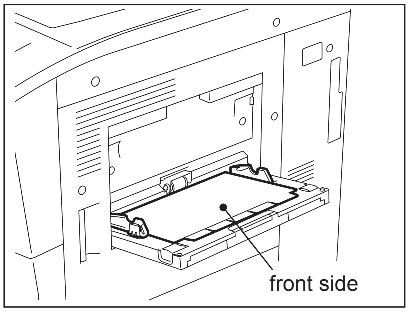
Setting tab paper on the bypass tray

The setting order is different between when the tab paper is set in the drawer and when it is set on the bypass tray.

1 Align the tab paper with the original.


●Originals
ABC
DEF
GHI
JKL
1st
2nd
3rd
4th
●Sheets of tab paper
front side
1st
2nd
3rd
4th

2 Place the tab paper with its face up on the bypass tray.



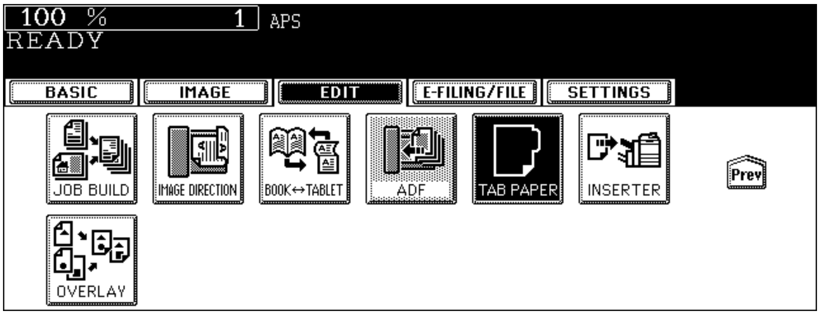
3 Set the size and thickness.

- Be sure to select “TAB PAPER” for the paper type. (📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”)

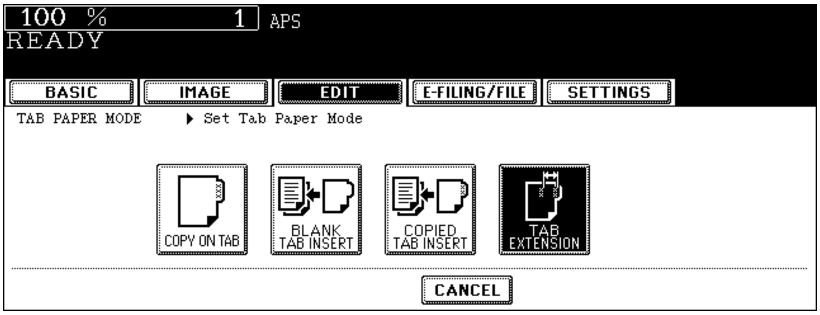
Setting the tab width

To copy on tab paper, adjust both the tab width and the shift width for the drawer and the bypass tray respectively. This setting is different between when the tab paper is set in the drawer and when it is set on the bypass tray.

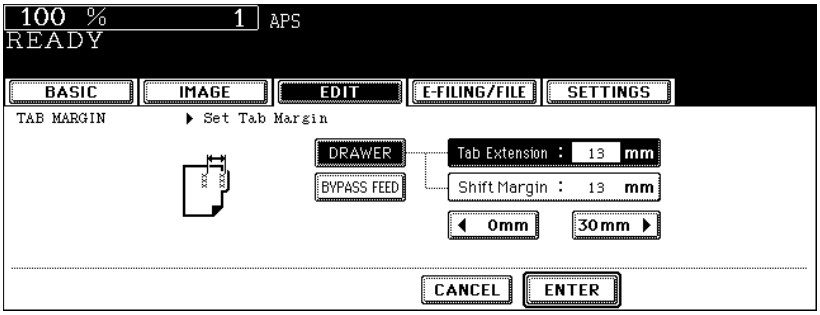
1 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [TAB PAPER] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

2 **Press the [TAB EXTENSION] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
TAB PAPER MODE
▶ Set Tab Paper Mode
COPY ON TAB
BLANK TAB INSERT
COPIED TAB INSERT
TAB EXTENSION
CANCEL

3 **Press the [DRAWER] button for setting tab paper in the drawer or the [BYPASS FEED] button for setting it on the bypass tray.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
TAB MARGIN
▶ Set Tab Margin
DRAWER
BYPASS FEED
◀ 0mm
30mm ▶
CANCEL
ENTER

Tab Extension : 13 mm

Shift Margin : 13 mm

4 Adjust the tab width and the shift width using the [0 mm] or [30 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

- Press [TAB EXTENSION] or [SHIFT MARGIN] to switch the item to be set.
- The initial value is set to 13 mm (0.5") for both the tab width and the shift width.
- The default setting value can be changed for both the tab width and the shift width. For details, refer to the User Functions Guide.

Range of the tab width and shift width

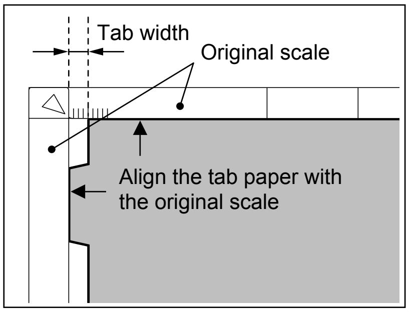
The range of the tab width and the shift width is different between when the tab paper is set in the drawer and when it is set on the bypass tray.

	Tab width	Shift width
Drawer	12 to 17 mm (0.4" to 0.6")	0 to 30 mm (0 to 1.1")
Bypass tray	10 to 20 mm (0.4" to 0.7")	0 to 30mm (0 to 1.1")

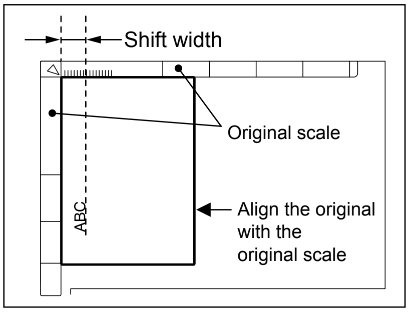
Measuring the tab width and shift width

The tab width and the shift width can be measured by the scale on the left side and rear side of the original glass. The marks of the original scale have a 2 mm (0.08") pitch.

- **Measuring the tab width**
  Place tab paper on the original glass to measure the tab width.


Tab width
Original scale
Align the tab paper with the original scale

- **Measuring the shift width**
  Place the original on the original glass to measure the shift width.


Shift width
Original scale
ABC
Align the original with the original scale

Tab paper copying

The original is copied on the tab of the tab paper.

1 **Prepare the original to copy on the tab of the tab paper.**

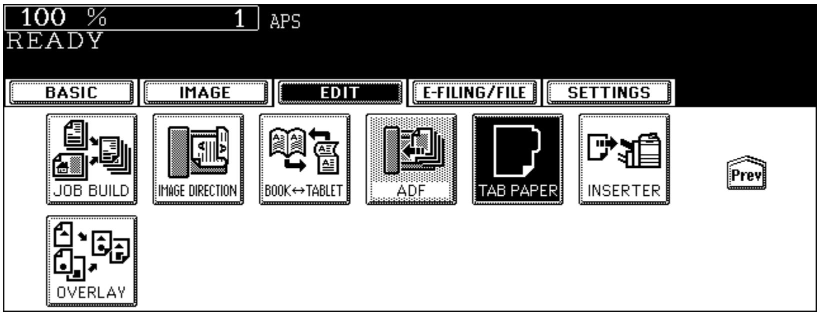
📖 P.173 "Preparing an original to copy on the tab of the tab paper"

2 **Place tab paper in the drawer or on the bypass tray.**

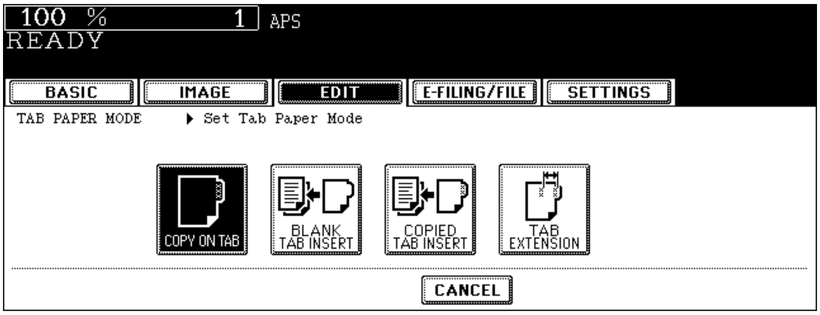
- For placing tab paper in the drawer, see 📖 P.174 "Setting tab paper in the drawer".
- For placing tab paper on the bypass tray, see 📖 P.175 "Setting tab paper on the bypass tray".

3 **Place the original(s).**

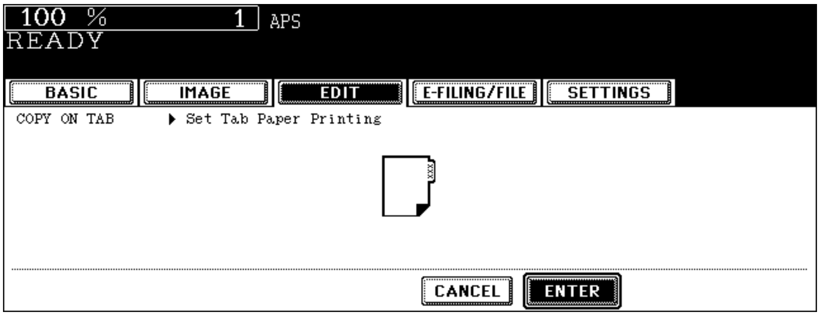
4 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [TAB PAPER] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

5 **Press the [COPY ON TAB] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
TAB PAPER MODE
▶ Set Tab Paper Mode
COPY ON TAB
BLANK TAB INSERT
COPIED TAB INSERT
TAB EXTENSION
CANCEL

6 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
CANCEL
ENTER

COPY ON TAB ▶ Set Tab Paper Printing

- Select other copy modes as required.

7 Press the [START] button.

- Copying on the tab of tab paper is started.

Tab paper insertion

The blank tab paper is inserted prior to a selected page. Up to 50 sheets of tab paper can be inserted.

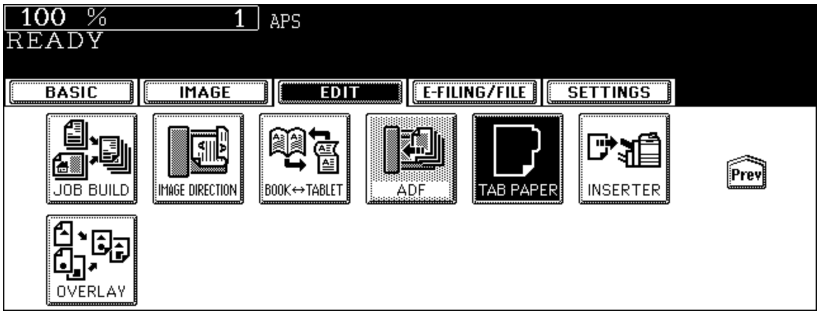
- Copying on the tab of the tab paper is not performed.
- Up to 15 pages are registered in the template. (📖 P.221)

1 Place tab paper in the drawer or on the bypass tray.

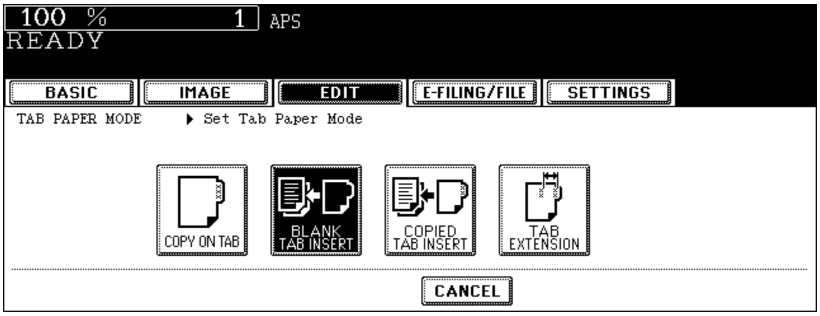
- For placing tab paper in the drawer, see 📖 P.174 “Setting tab paper in the drawer”.
- For placing tab paper on the bypass tray, see 📖 P.175 “Setting tab paper on the bypass tray”.

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [TAB PAPER] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

4 Press the [BLANK TAB INSERT] button.



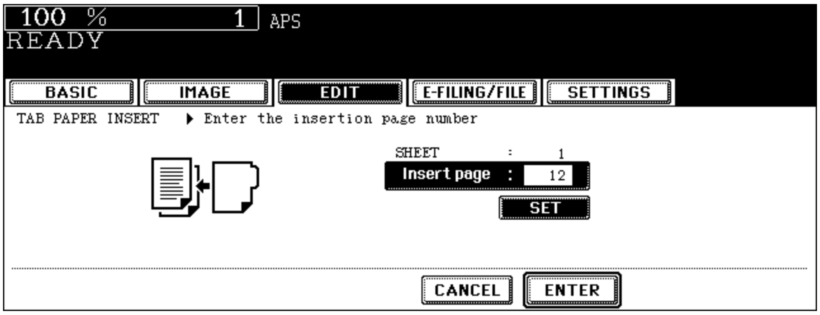
100 % 1 APS

READY

TAB PAPER MODE ▶ Set Tab Paper Mode

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY ON TAB
BLANK TAB INSERT
COPIED TAB INSERT
TAB EXTENSION
CANCEL

5 Key in the page number (3 digits or less) for inserting the tab paper, and then press the [SET] button.



100 % 1 APS

READY

TAB PAPER INSERT ▶ Enter the insertion page number

SHEET : 1

Insert page : 12

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
SET
CANCEL
ENTER

- When 2 sheets of tab paper or more are inserted, repeat step 5. The tab paper is inserted prior to a selected page. Up to 50 sheets of tab paper can be inserted. (Up to 15 pages are registered in the template. (📖 P.221))

6 Press the [ENTER] button.

- Select other copy modes as required.

7 Press the [START] button.

Tab paper insertion and copying

Copied tab paper is inserted prior to the selected pages. Up to 50 sheets of tab paper can be inserted.

- Up to 15 pages are registered in the template. (📖 P.221)

1 Prepare an original to copy on the tab of the tab paper.

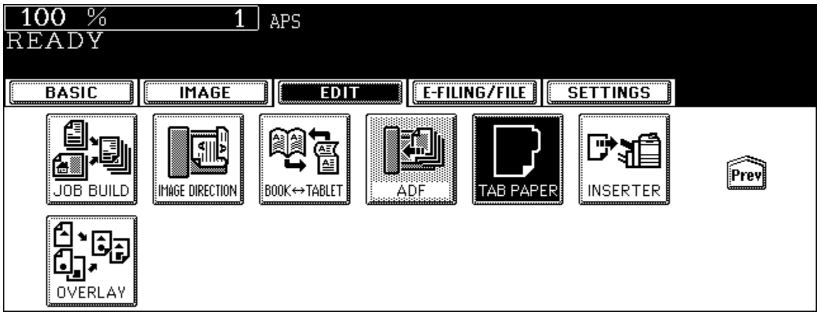
2 Place tab paper.

- For placing tab paper in the drawer, see 📖 P.174 “Setting tab paper in the drawer”.
- For placing tab paper on the bypass tray, see 📖 P.175 “Setting tab paper on the bypass tray”.

3 Place the originals.

- Before placing them, insert an original for tab paper prepared in step 1 prior to the desired page.

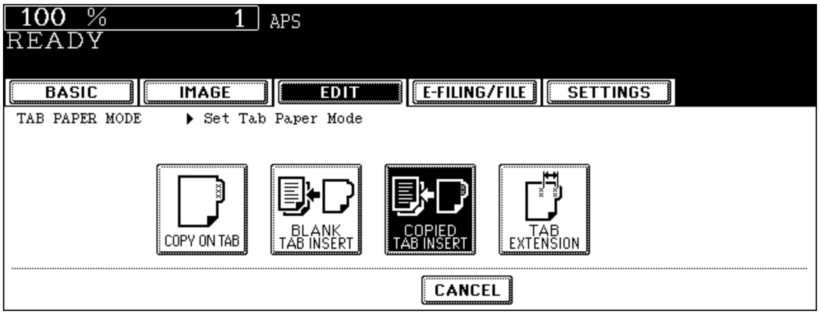
4 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [TAB PAPER] button.



100 % 1 APS
READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

5 Press the [COPIED TAB INSERT] button.

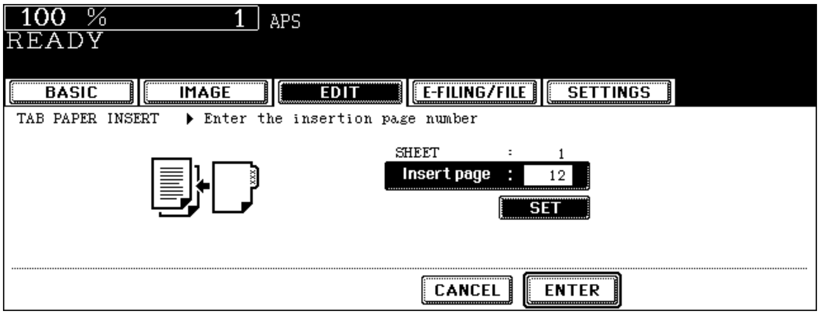


100 % 1 APS
READY

TAB PAPER MODE ▶ Set Tab Paper Mode

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY ON TAB
BLANK TAB INSERT
COPIED TAB INSERT
TAB EXTENSION
CANCEL

6 Key in the page number (3 digits or less) for inserting the tab paper, and then press the [SET] button.



100 % 1 APS
READY

TAB PAPER INSERT ▶ Enter the insertion page number

SHEET : 1
Insert page : 12

- When 2 sheets of tab paper or more are inserted, repeat step 6. Up to 50 sheets of tab paper can be inserted. (Up to 15 pages are registered in the template. (📖 P.221))
- Check that the page number corresponds to the inserted page for tab paper in step 3.

7 Press the [ENTER] button.

- Select other copy modes as required.

8 Press the [START] button.

18. INSERTER

You can insert a blank sheet set in the Inserter Unit (optional) at the specified page (including a top cover and a back cover) of the document.

1. Adding a blank front cover sheet ([FRONT COVER])
2. Adding a blank front and blank back cover sheets ([FRONT & BACK COVER])
3. Inserting a blank sheet into the page previous to the specified one ([SHEET INSERT])

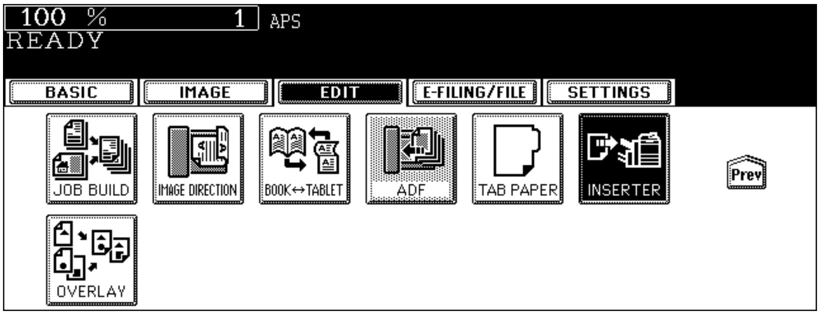
- [SHEET INSERT] can be used in combination with [FRONT COVER] or [FRONT & BACK COVER].
- A back cover sheet can be inserted with its backside up. See the User Functions Guide for details.
- When you want to insert a sheet and make a copy on it, use the drawer or the bypass tray of the equipment, not the Inserter Unit. Use the cover copying mode or the sheet insertion mode from the edit menu. (📖 P.154 “9.COVER SHEET”, 📖 P.157 “10.SHEET INSERTION”)

1 **Place paper on the Inserter Unit.**

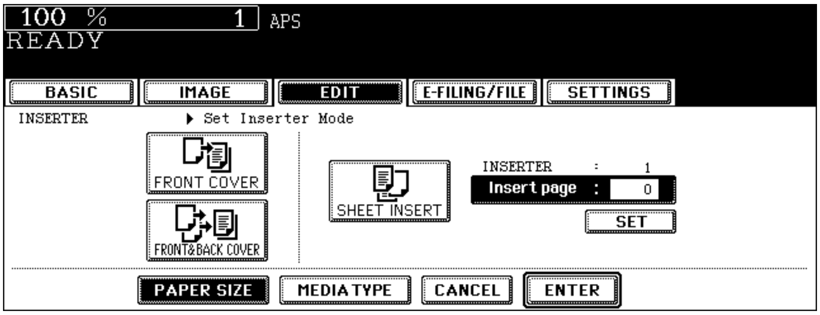
📖 P.111 “Setting paper on the Inserter Unit”

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [INSERTER] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

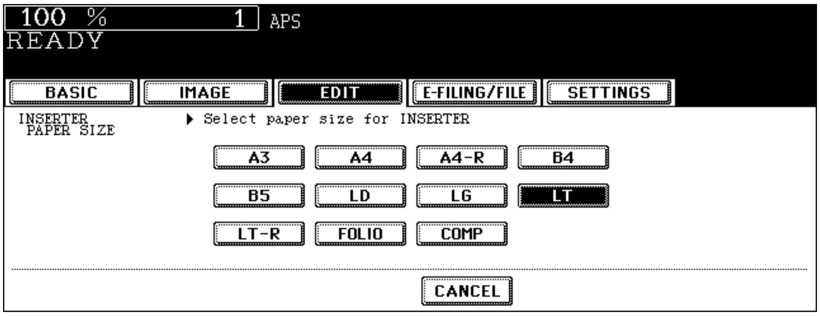
4 **Press the [PAPER SIZE] button.**


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
INSERTER
▶ Set Inserter Mode
FRONT COVER
FRONT&BACK COVER
SHEET INSERT
INSERTER : 1
Insert page : 0
SET
PAPER SIZE
MEDIA TYPE
CANCEL
ENTER

Tip

If no paper is set on the Inserter Unit, the [PAPER SIZE] button and the [MEDIA TYPE] button are not selectable.

5 Press the button representing the paper size set on the Inserter Unit.



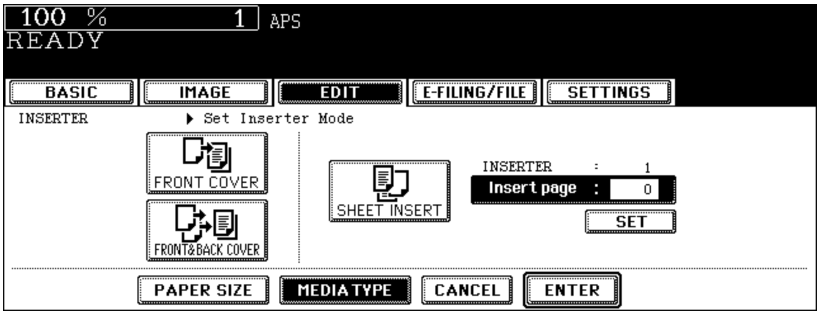
100 % 1 APS
READY

INSERTER PAPER SIZE

▶ Select paper size for INSERTER

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
A3
A4
A4-R
B4
B5
LD
LG
LT
LT-R
FOLIO
COMP
CANCEL

6 Press the [MEDIA TYPE] button.



100 % 1 APS
READY

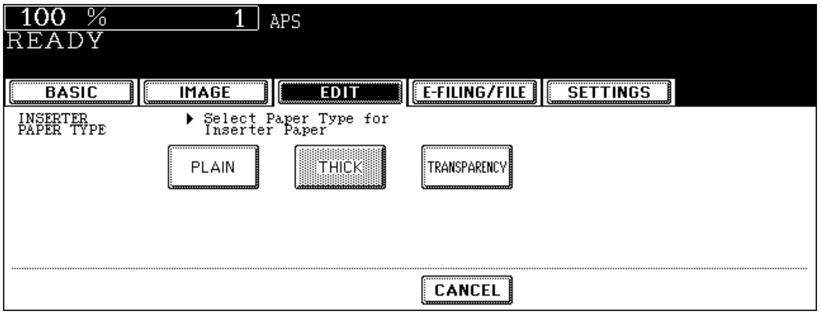
INSERTER

▶ Set Inserter Mode

INSERTER : 1
Insert page : 0

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
FRONT COVER
FRONT&BACK COVER
SHEET INSERT
SET
PAPER SIZE
MEDIA TYPE
CANCEL
ENTER

7 Press the button representing the media type set on the Inserter Unit.



100 % 1 APS
READY

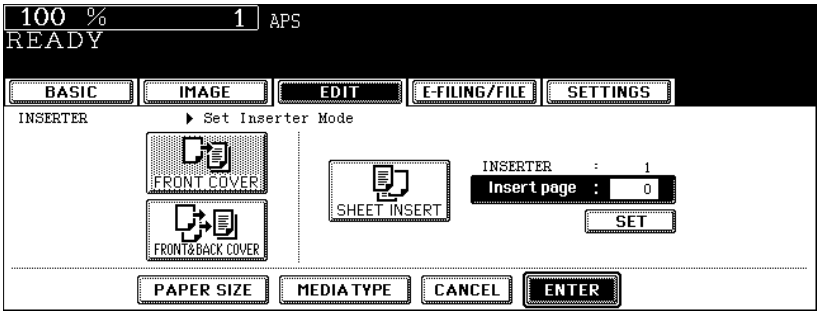
INSERTER PAPER TYPE

▶ Select Paper Type for Inserter Paper

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
PLAIN
THICK
TRANSPARENCY
CANCEL

Selecting [FRONT COVER] / [FRONT & BACK COVER]

8 Press the [FRONT COVER] (or [FRONT & BACK COVER]) button, then press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1 APS

READY

INSERTER ▶ Set Inserter Mode

INSERTER : 1

Insert page : 0

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
FRONT COVER
FRONT&BACK COVER
SHEET INSERT
SET
PAPER SIZE
MEDIA TYPE
CANCEL
ENTER

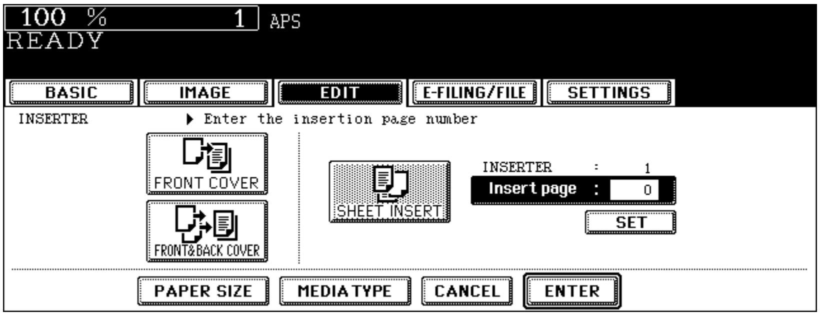
- When using these modes with the sheet insertion mode, press the [SHEET INSERT] button before pressing the [ENTER] button.
- Set other copy modes as required.

9 Press the [START] button.

Selecting [SHEET INSERT]

A blank sheet is inserted before the page specified.

8 Press the [SHEET INSERT] button.


100 % 1 APS

READY

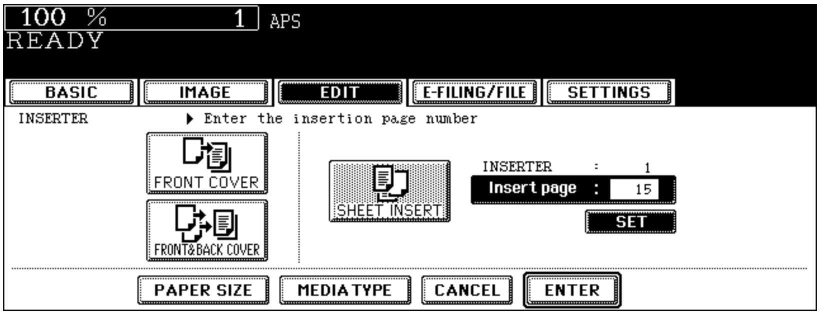
INSERTER ▶ Enter the insertion page number

INSERTER : 1

Insert page : 0

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
FRONT COVER
FRONT&BACK COVER
SHEET INSERT
SET
PAPER SIZE
MEDIA TYPE
CANCEL
ENTER

9 Key in the desired page number (no more than 3 digits) for insertion and press the [SET] button.



100 % 1 APS

READY

INSERTER ▶ Enter the insertion page number

INSERTER : 1

Insert page : 15

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
FRONT COVER
FRONT&BACK COVER
SHEET INSERT
SET
PAPER SIZE
MEDIA TYPE
CANCEL
ENTER

- A blank sheet is inserted before the page specified.
- Up to 50 pages can be specified. To specify more than one page, repeat this procedure. (Up to 15 pages are registered in the template. (📖 P.221))

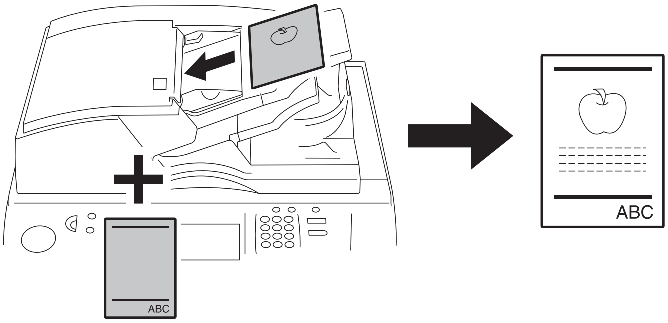
10 After you have finished specifying the pages, press the [ENTER] button.

- When using the sheet insertion mode with [FRONT COVER] or [FRONT & BACK COVER], press the [FRONT COVER] or [FRONT & BACK COVER] button before pressing the [ENTER] button.
- Set other copy modes as required.

11 Press the [START] button.

19. OVERLAY

This function allows you to overlay the scanned original image with a stored one when making copies.



Tips

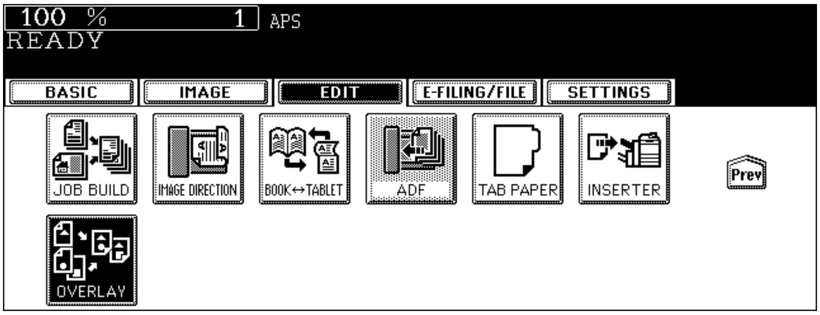
- Up to 24 overlay images, (one of each page), can be stored.
- Only an original whose size can be automatically detected is used. (📖 P.63 "Originals sizes and types")
- The image size cannot be enlarged or reduced when an overlay copy is performed. However, the original size can be enlarged or reduced according to the stored image.

Storing the image

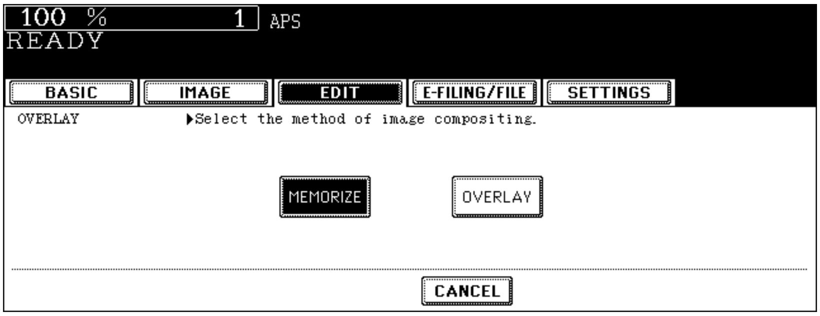
The image for using as an overlay is scanned and stored as an overlay image file.

1 Place the original.

2 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [OVERLAY] button.

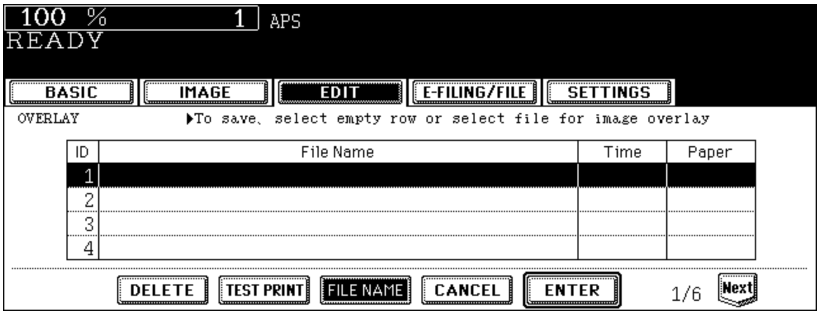

100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

3 Press the [MEMORIZE] button.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
OVERLAY
MEMORIZE
OVERLAY
CANCEL

▶Select the method of image compositing.

4 Select an unregistered file, press the [FILE NAME] button and then enter the file name.


100 % 1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
OVERLAY
DELETE
TEST PRINT
FILE NAME
CANCEL
ENTER
1/6
Next

▶To save, select empty row or select file for image overlay

ID	File Name	Time	Paper
1			
2			
3			
4			

- Up to 24 files can be stored. Pressing the [Prev] or [Next] button switches the menu.
- The file name can be skipped. In this case, proceed to step 5.
- When the [FILE NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Enter the file name (maximum 36 letters).

5 Press the [ENTER] button.

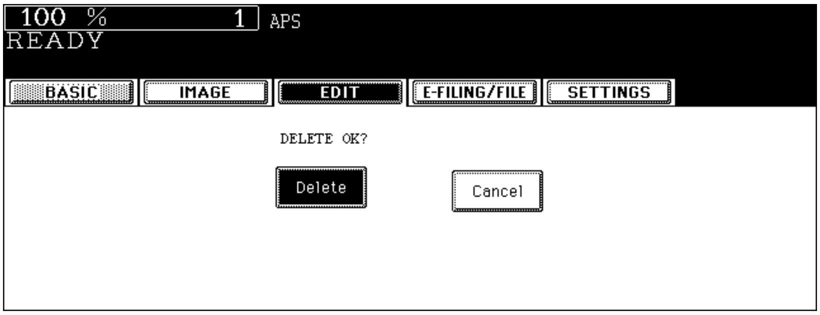
6 Press the [START] button.

- The original is scanned and stored as an overlay image file.

Checking the overlay image

Select the image file in step 4 and press the [TEST PRINT] button. The selected image file is printed.

Deleting an overlay image
Select the image file in step 4 and press the [DELETE] button. The following menu is displayed.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
DELETE OK?
Delete
Cancel

When the [Delete] button is pressed, the selected image file is deleted.

Overlaying images

You can overlay the scanned original images with a stored image when making copies.

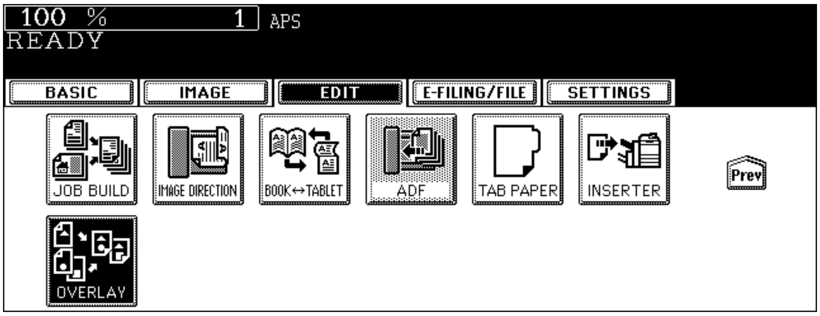
Note

Only an image file whose size is the same as that of the copy paper can be overlaid with the original.

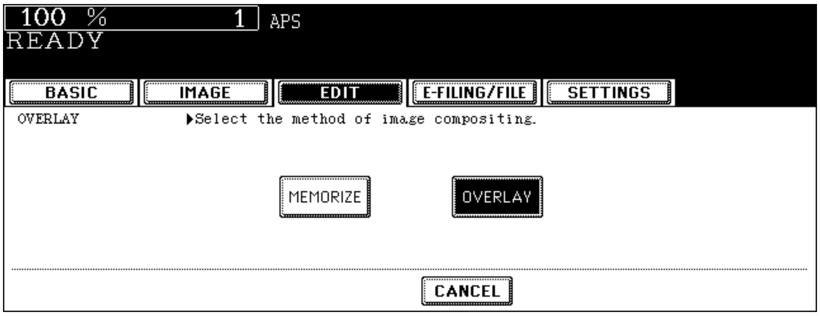
1 Place paper in the drawer(s).

2 Place the original(s).

3 Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu. Then press the [Next] button to switch the menu, and press the [OVERLAY] button.

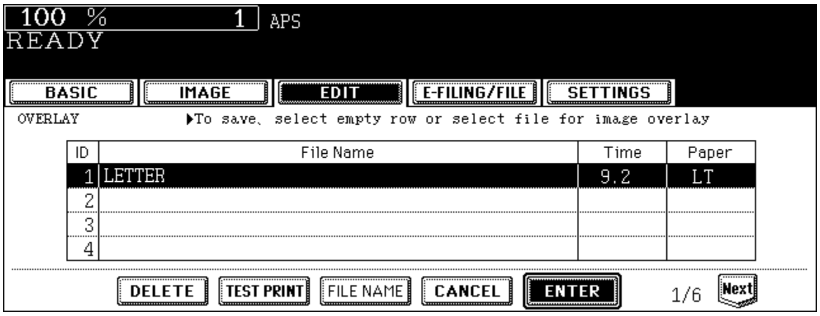

100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
JOB BUILD
IMAGE DIRECTION
BOOK↔TABLET
ADF
TAB PAPER
INSERTER
Prev
OVERLAY

4 Press the [OVERLAY] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
OVERLAY
MEMORIZE
OVERLAY
CANCEL

▶Select the method of image compositing.

5 Select the desired image file and press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
OVERLAY
DELETE
TEST PRINT
FILE NAME
CANCEL
ENTER
1/6
Next

▶To save, select empty row or select file for image overlay

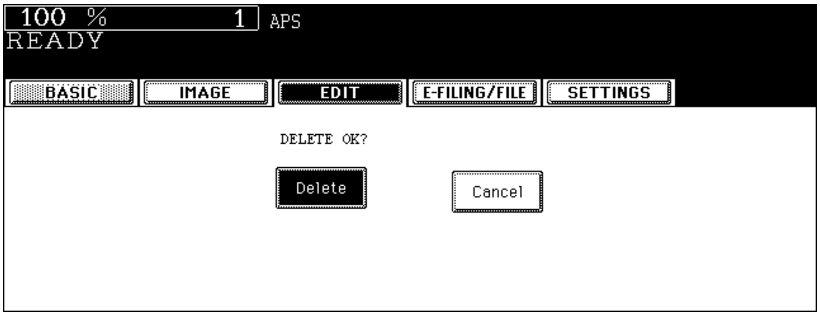
ID	File Name	Time	Paper
1	LETTER	9.2	LT
2			
3			
4			

- If the desired file is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- Select other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

Making a test copy
Select the image file in step 5 and press the [TEST PRINT] button. The original is scanned and one page only is copied as a test.

Deleting an overlay image
Select the image file in step 5 and press the [DELETE] button. The following menu is displayed.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
Delete
Cancel

DELETE OK?

When the [Delete] button is pressed, the selected image file is deleted.

6. e-FILING

1. e-Filing 192
2. Creating User Boxes 194
3. Changing Data of User Boxes 196
4. Deleting User Boxes 199
5. Storing Documents in e-Filing 201
6. Printing Stored Documents 205
7. Deleting Folders or Documents 210
8. Appendix 212

1. e-Filing

This feature allows you to store, print and manage documents obtained by copying, printing from a PC, scanning, receiving Fax and receiving Internet Fax. The document is stored into the hard disk embedded in this equipment.

- To use documents printed from a PC in e-Filing, a Printer Kit or Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is required.
- To use scanned documents or documents received by Internet Fax in e-Filing, a Scanner Kit or Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is required.
- To use documents received by Fax in e-Filing, a Fax Unit is required.
- When the Data Overwrite Kit (optional) is installed, it may take time before e-Filing can be used after the power is turned ON. This depends on the number of files in e-Filing.
- Delete the documents in e-Filing when they are no longer needed.
- The e-Filing box in which highly confidential documents are stored must be password protected.

There are two kinds of e-Filing as follows.

Public box:

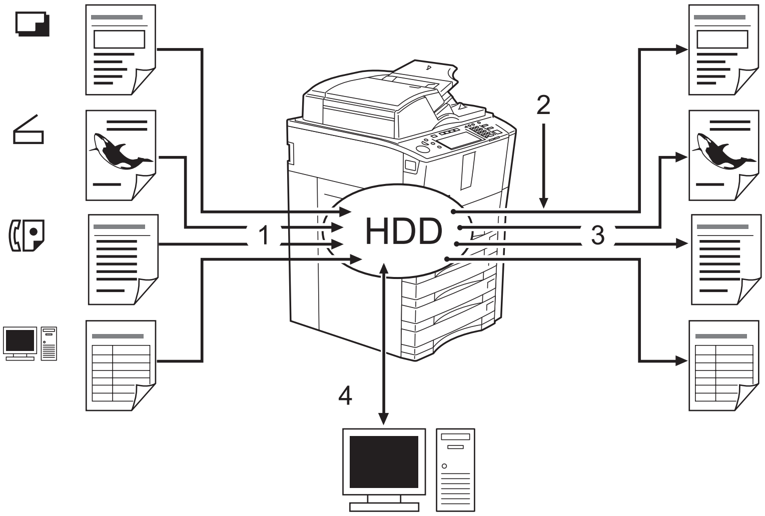
This is prepared as a default setting. This is used to store a shared document that can be accessed by any users without restrictions.

User box:

Up to 200 boxes can be created. Passwords can be set for each user box.

- Up to 100 folders per one box can be created. A maximum of 400 documents can be stored in one folder. The maximum number of original pages is 1000. (However, it may be restricted depending on the amount of free space on the hard disk embedded in this equipment.)

An outline of e-Filing is as follows.



1. Store a document into e-Filing.
2. Add a printing setting to the stored document as required.
3. Print the document.
4. Use the document on the PC. (See the e-Filing Guide for details.)
    - The stored document in e-Filing can be downloaded to a client PC by using the “File Downloader”.
    - The stored document in e-Filing can be imported as an image into the TWAIN-compatible application by the TWAIN driver.
    - You can edit and back up the document, create a folder, etc. in the e-Filing using “TopAccess”.

Tips

- The available settings differ between when the operation is performed from the touch panel of this equipment or using “TopAccess” from a client PC. See the e-Filing Guide for details.
- When the preservation period for documents in e-Filing is specified, the stored documents will be deleted after this period has passed. You need to print the documents or download them into a client PC using the “File Downloader”. See the e-Filing Guide for details. (For setting the storing period of the documents in e-Filing, ask the network administrator.)
- Be sure to back up the data stored in e-Filing regularly in case of a hard disk failure. See the e-Filing Guide for details.

This chapter explains about when copied original data are stored to e-Filing. See the e-Filing Guide for storing, printing and managing the document obtained by printing from a PC, scanning, receiving fax and receiving Internet Fax (except for copying) and operating e-Filing via network.

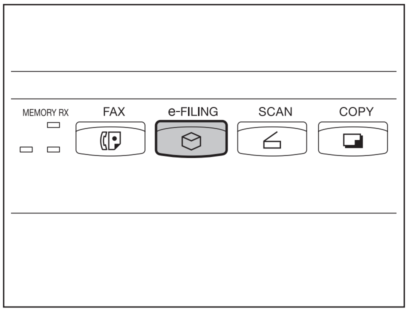
2. Creating User Boxes

Up to 200 user boxes can be created. To prepare user boxes for different purposes enables you to have efficient document management.
Folders can be created in each user box. Also, password can be set to each user box.

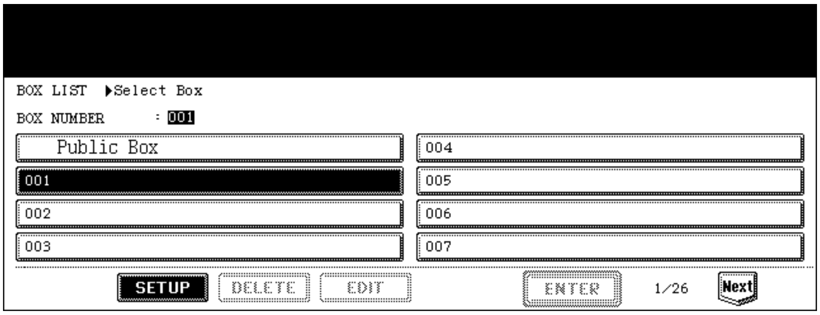
- You can create folders using “TopAccess” from a client PC. See the e-Filing Guide for details.

Set up a user box following the procedure below.

1 **Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.**


MEMORY RX
FAX
e-FILING
SCAN
COPY

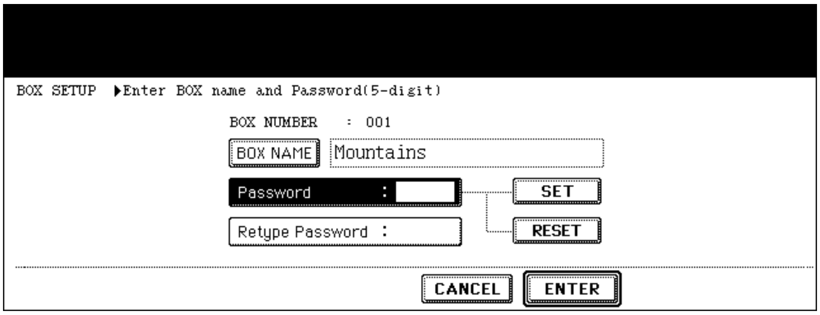
2 **Select a blank box number between “001” and “200”, and then press the [SETUP] button.**


BOX LIST ▶Select Box

BOX NUMBER : 001
Public Box
001
002
003
004
005
006
007
SETUP
DELETE
EDIT
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired box is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

3 **Press the [BOX NAME] button, and then enter the box name.**

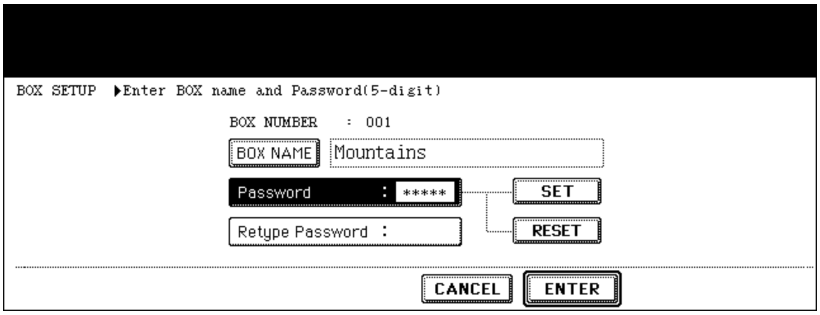

BOX SETUP ▶Enter BOX name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

BOX NAME Mountains
Password :
Retype Password :
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

- When the [BOX NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 32 characters can be added.
- To set the password, proceed to step 4. If not, skip to step 6.

4 Key in the password in “Password” as required, and then press the [SET] button.



BOX SETUP ▶Enter BOX name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

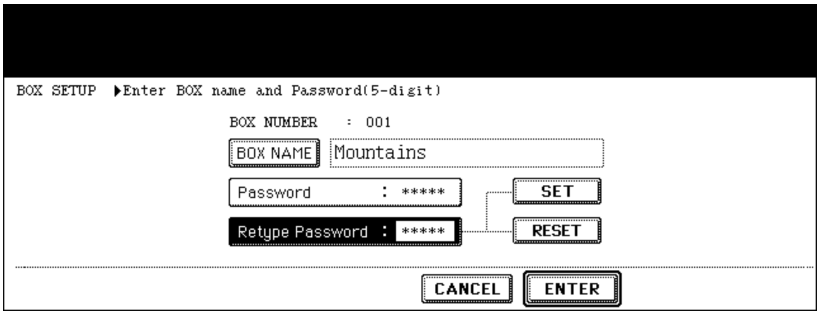
BOX NAME Mountains

Password : *****

Retype Password :

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

5 Key in the password in “Retype Password”.



BOX SETUP ▶Enter BOX name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

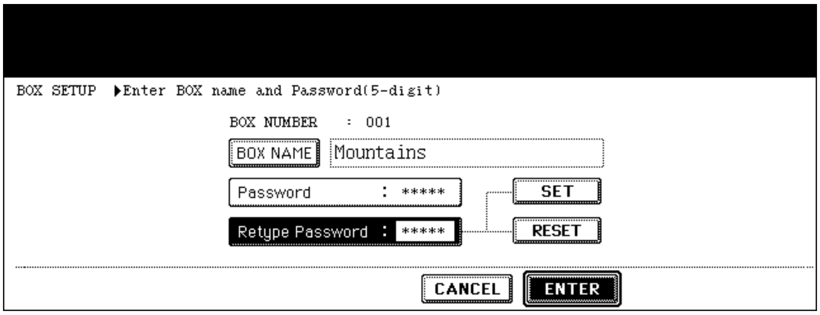
BOX NAME Mountains

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

6 Press the [ENTER] button.



BOX SETUP ▶Enter BOX name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

BOX NAME Mountains

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

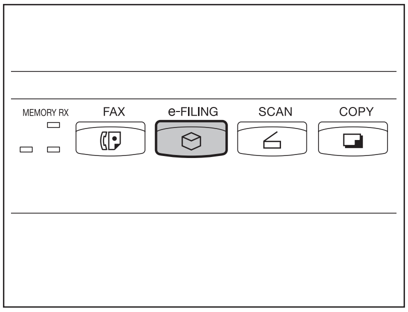
- The user box is created.

3. Changing Data of User Boxes

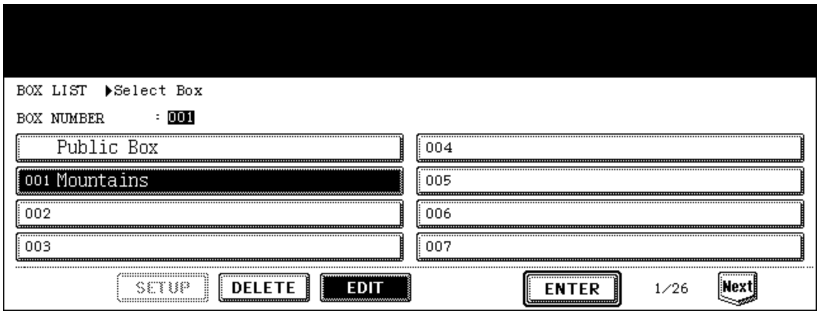
Created user boxes and passwords can be changed.

- You cannot change the folder name using the control panel of this equipment. It can be changed using “TopAccess” from a client PC. See the e-Filing Guide for details.

1 **Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.**


MEMORY RX
FAX
e-FILING
SCAN
COPY

2 **Select the desired box, and then press the [EDIT] button.**

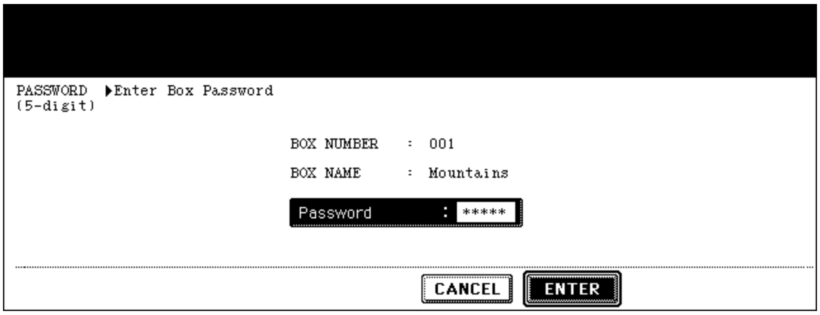

BOX LIST ▶Select Box

BOX NUMBER : 001

Public Box
001 Mountains
002
003
004
005
006
007
SETUP
DELETE
EDIT
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired box is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

3 **Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.**


PASSWORD ▶Enter Box Password
(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

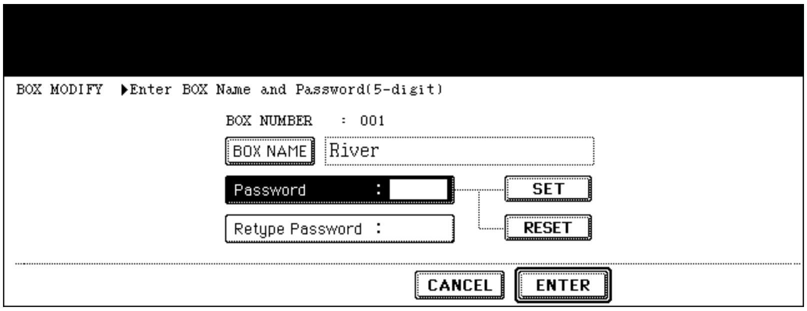
BOX NAME : Mountains

Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the box was created, skip to step 4.

4 Press the [BOX NAME] button, and then enter the new box name.



BOX MODIFY ▶Enter BOX Name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

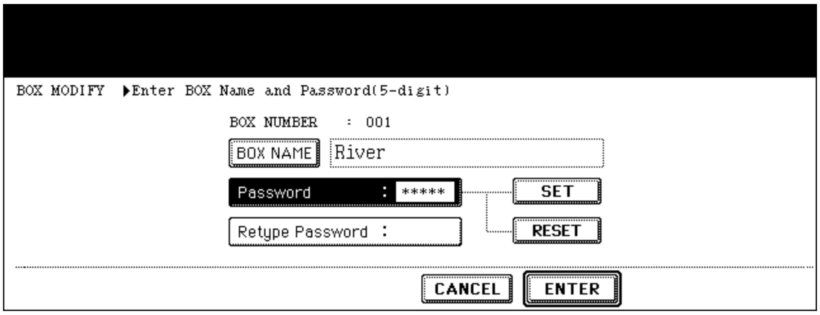
BOX NAME: River

Password :

Retype Password :

- When [BOX NAME] is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 32 characters can be added.

5 Key in the new password in “Password”, and then press the [SET] button.



BOX MODIFY ▶Enter BOX Name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

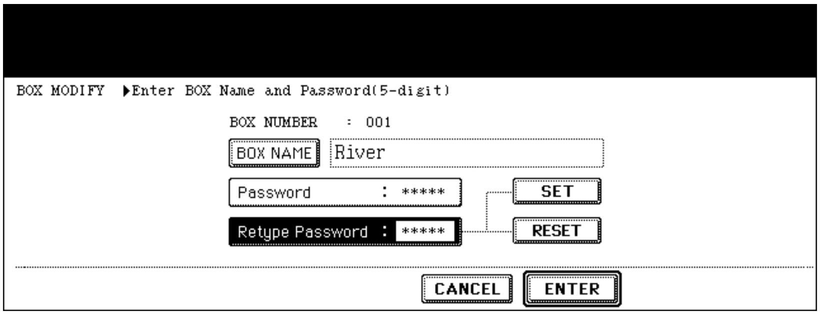
BOX NAME: River

Password : *****

Retype Password :

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

6 Key in the password in “Retype Password”.



BOX MODIFY ▶Enter BOX Name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

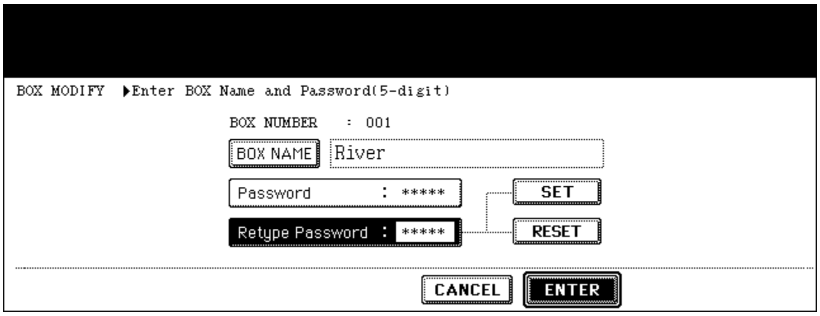
BOX NAME: River

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

7 Press the [ENTER] button.



BOX MODIFY ▶Enter BOX Name and Password(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

BOX NAME: River

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

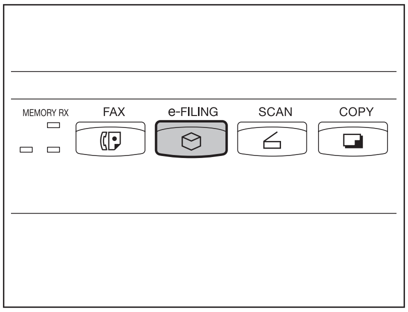
- The box settings are updated.

4. Deleting User Boxes

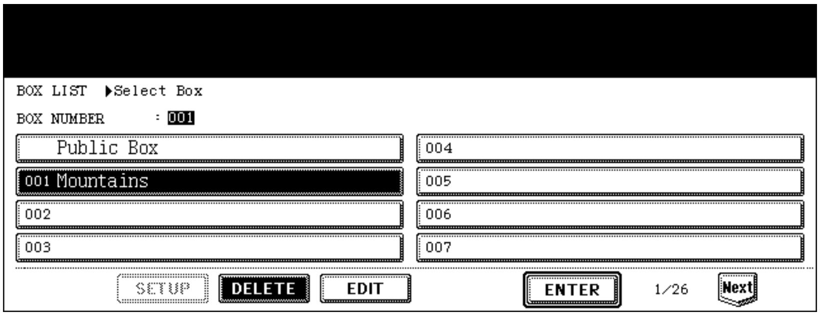
Unnecessary user boxes can be deleted. All folders and documents in the user boxes are also deleted.

- Public box cannot be deleted.

1 Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.


MEMORY RX
FAX
e-FILING
SCAN
COPY

2 Select the box you want to delete, and then press the [DELETE] button.

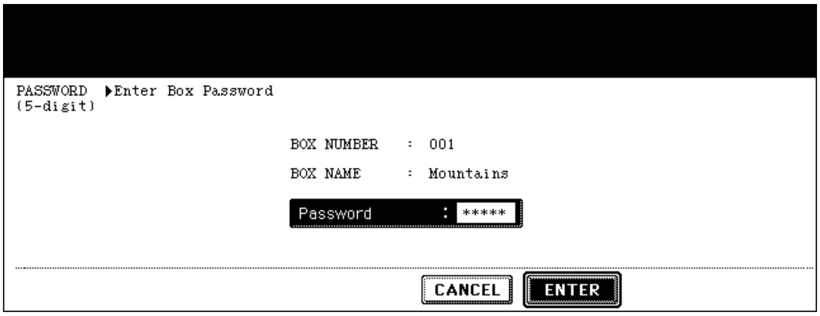

BOX LIST ▶Select Box

BOX NUMBER : 001

Public Box
001 Mountains
002
003
004
005
006
007
SETUP
DELETE
EDIT
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

3 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PASSWORD ▶Enter Box Password
(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001

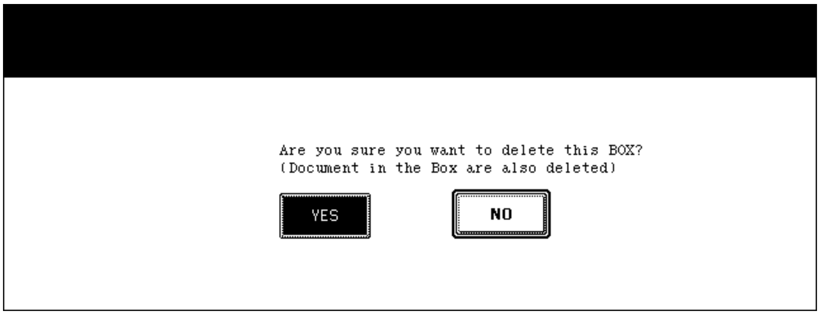
BOX NAME : Mountains

Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the box was created, skip to step 4.

4 “Are you sure you want to delete this box?” appears. Press the [Yes] button to delete the box.



Are you sure you want to delete this BOX?
(Document in the Box are also deleted)

- The box is deleted.

5. Storing Documents in e-Filing

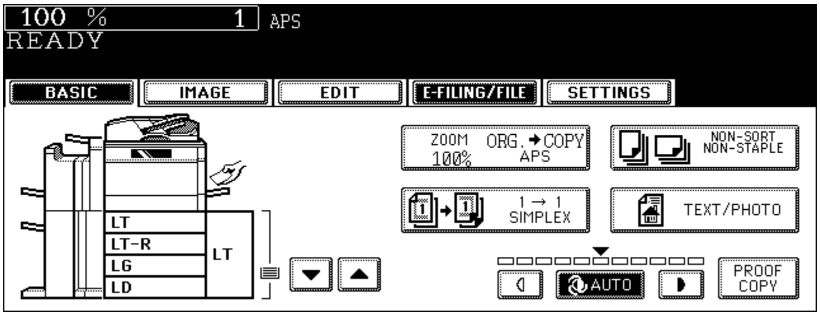
Scanned original data can be stored in e-Filing. The copy mode settings will be saved with the e-Filing document. You can copy originals and store the data at one time. After storing the original data, you can print them out at any time.

- There are two types of e-Filing, public box and user boxes. To store the data in a user box, you need to set it up in advance. (📖 P.194 “2.Creating User Boxes”)
- The data scanned with the scanning function can be also stored in e-Filing by installing the Scanner Kit (optional). The stored data can be downloaded to the client PC as a JPEG, PDF, TIFF or XPS file. For details, refer to the Scanning Guide and the e-Filing Guide.

1 Place the original(s).

- Up to 100 folders can be created in one e-Filing, and a maximum of 400 documents can be stored in one folder. The maximum number of original pages is 1000. (However this may be restricted depending on the amount of free space of the hard disk in this equipment.)
- Set the copy mode as required.

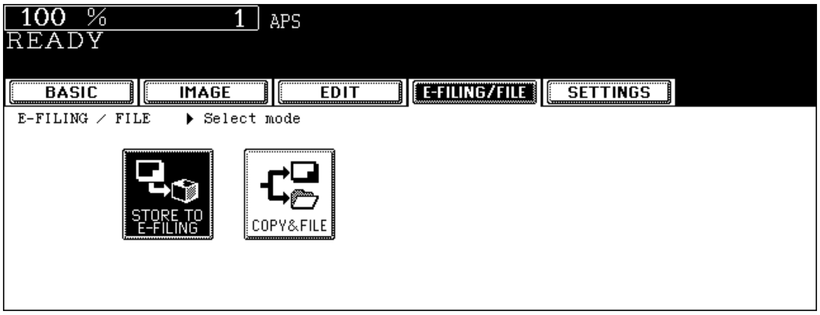
2 Press the [E-FILING/FILE] button to enter the e-Filing/file menu.



100 % 1 APS
READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

3 Press the [STORE TO E-FILING] button.

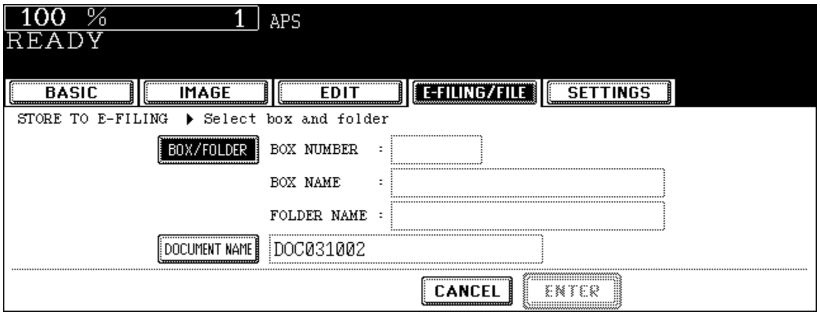


100 % 1 APS
READY

E-FILING / FILE ▶ Select mode

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
STORE TO E-FILING
COPY&FILE

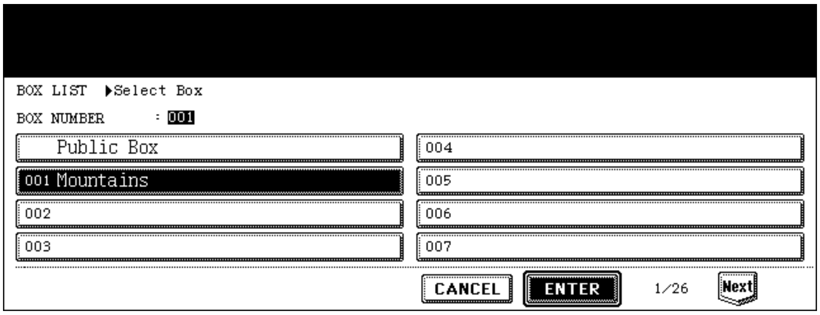
4 Press the [BOX/FOLDER] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BOX/FOLDER
DOCUMENT NAME
CANCEL
ENTER

STORE TO E-FILING ▶ Select box and folder

BOX NUMBER :
BOX NAME :
FOLDER NAME :
DOCUMENT NAME DOC031002

5 Select the box in which you want to store the document, and then press the [ENTER] button.


Public Box
001 Mountains
002
003
004
005
006
007
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

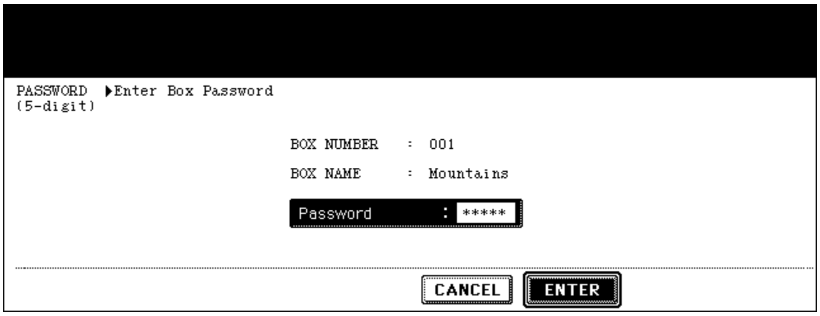
BOX LIST ▶Select Box

BOX NUMBER : 001

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

When the password entry menu is displayed

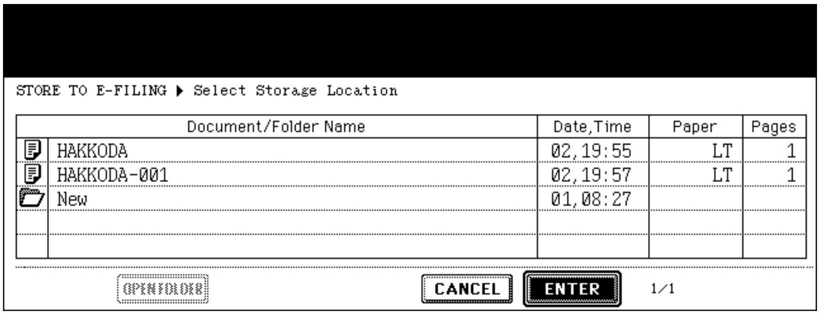
When the password entry menu is displayed, the password is set in the selected user box. Key in the password and press the [ENTER] button.


CANCEL
ENTER

PASSWORD ▶Enter Box Password
(5-digit)

BOX NUMBER : 001
BOX NAME : Mountains
Password : *****

6 The document list in the selected box is displayed. Press the [ENTER] button to store in this box.

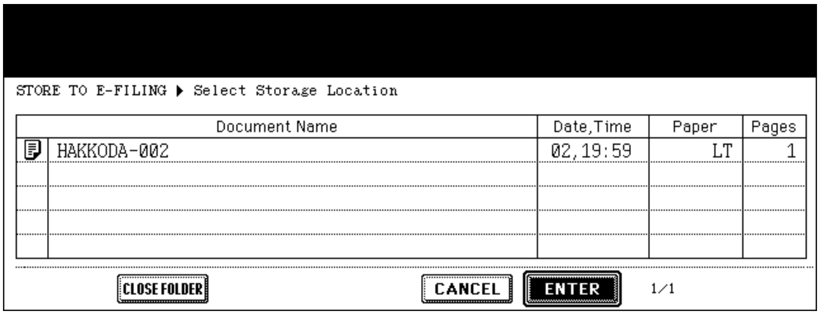


STORE TO E-FILING ▶ Select Storage Location

	Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
🗎	HAKKODA	02,19:55	LT	1
🗎	HAKKODA-001	02,19:57	LT	1
🗀	New	01,08:27		

OPEN FOLDER
CANCEL
ENTER
1/1

To store the document in the folder
To store the document in the folder, select the folder to be stored, press the [OPEN FOLDER] button. The document list in the selected folder is displayed. Press the [ENTER] button to store in this folder.



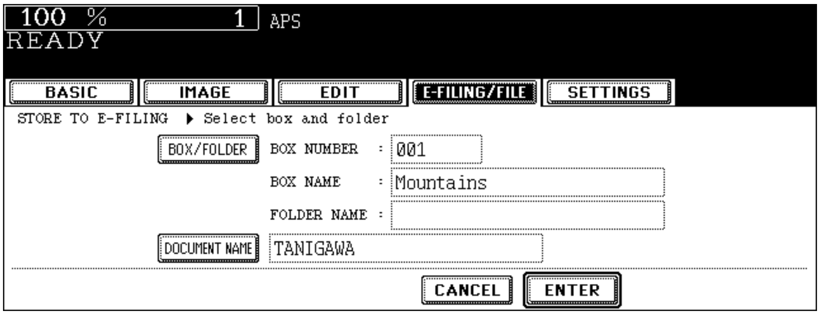
STORE TO E-FILING ▶ Select Storage Location

	Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
🗎	HAKKODA-002	02,19:59	LT	1

CLOSE FOLDER
CANCEL
ENTER
1/1

- If you want to close the folder and go back to the box above, press the [CLOSE FOLDER] button.
- Creating the folder can be performed from the client PC using “TopAccess”. For details, see e-Filing Guide.

7 Press the [DOCUMENT NAME] button, and then enter the document name.



100 % 1 APS
READY

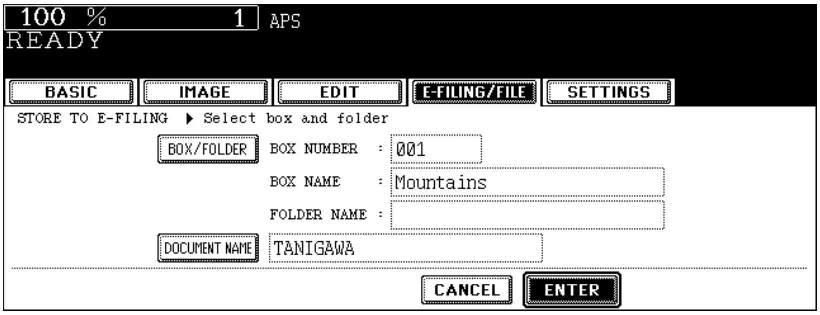
STORE TO E-FILING ▶ Select box and folder

BOX NUMBER : 001
BOX NAME : Mountains
FOLDER NAME :
DOCUMENT NAME TANIGAWA

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BOX/FOLDER
DOCUMENT NAME
CANCEL
ENTER

- When the [DOCUMENT NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (🕮 P.33) is displayed. Up to 64 characters can be entered.

8 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
BOX/FOLDER
DOCUMENT NAME
CANCEL
ENTER

STORE TO E-FILING ▶ Select box and folder

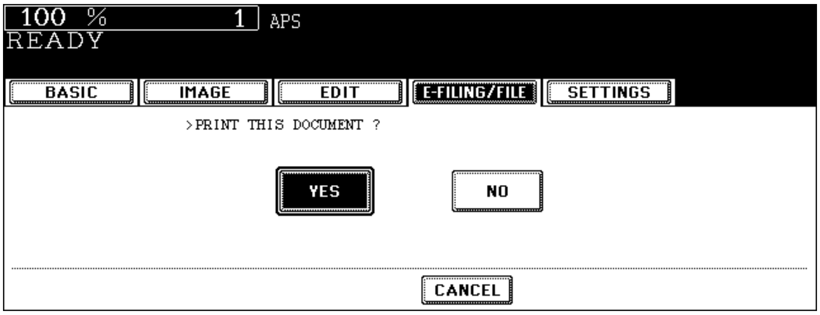
BOX NUMBER : 001

BOX NAME : Mountains

FOLDER NAME :

DOCUMENT NAME TANIGAWA

9 “PRINT THIS DOCUMENT?” appears. Press the [YES] button to store and print it out at one time.


100 % 1 APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
YES
NO
CANCEL

>PRINT THIS DOCUMENT ?

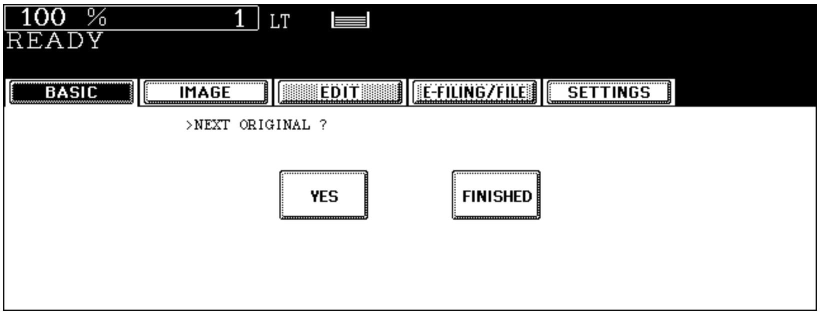
- If you want to store the document without printing it, press the [NO] button.

10 Press the [START] button.

- The reading and storing of the documents starts.

Tip

When the original is placed on the original glass or on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder in the Single original feeding mode, the following menu is displayed. Setting the original on the original glass: When the next original is placed, the [YES] button and then the [START] button are pressed, storing of the document starts. Setting the original on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder in the single original feeding mode: When the next original is placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, storing of the document starts. After the last page has finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.


100 % 1 LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
YES
FINISHED

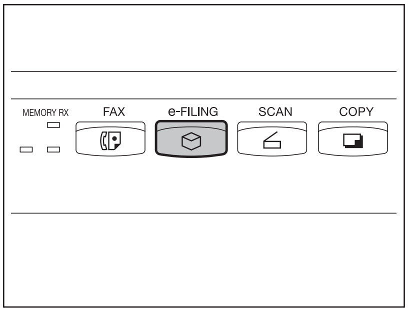
>NEXT ORIGINAL ?

Stored documents can be printed out. You can also print out a part of a document and change the setting in the finishing mode or the like before printing the documents.

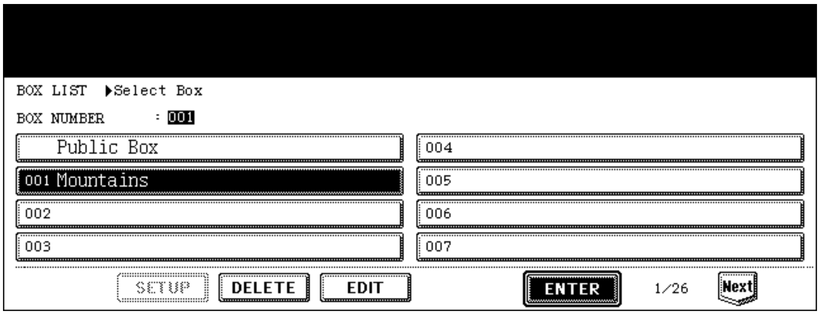
Printing the whole document

All pages of the document are printed. If printing multiple copies is desired, see 📖 P.208 “Printing the stored document after changing the settings”.

1 **Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.**


MEMORY RX
FAX
e-FILING
SCAN
COPY

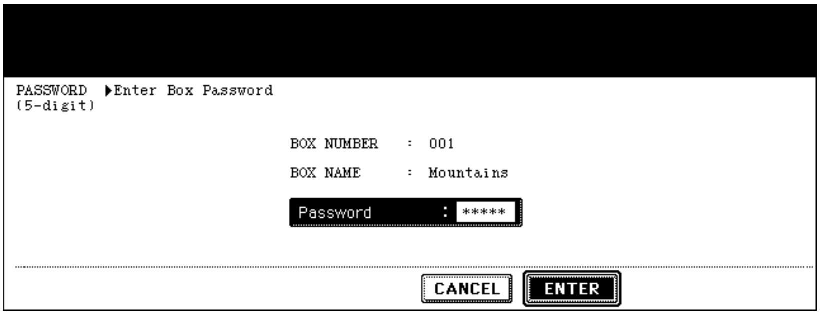
2 **Select the box in which the desired printing document is stored, and then press the [ENTER] button.**


BOX LIST ▶Select Box
BOX NUMBER : 001

Public Box
001 Mountains
002
003
004
005
006
007
SETUP
DELETE
EDIT
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

3 **Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.**

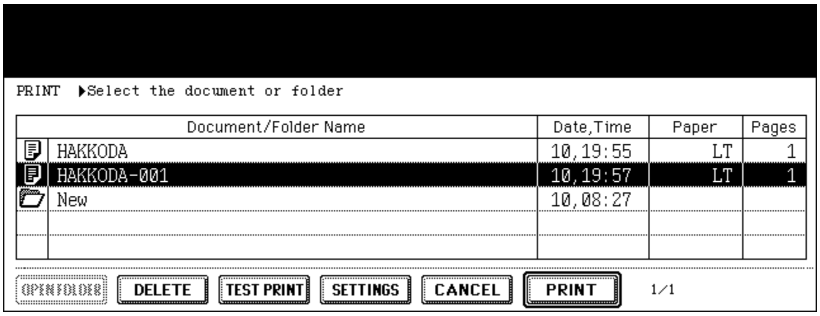

PASSWORD (5-digit) ▶Enter Box Password

BOX NUMBER : 001
BOX NAME : Mountains
Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the box was registered, skip to step 4.

4 Select the document to be printed.



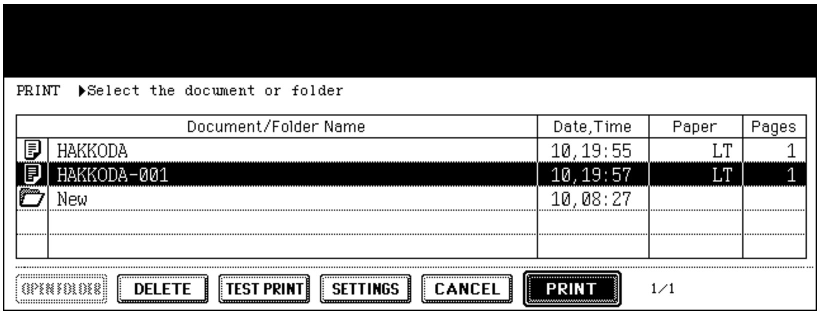
PRINT ▶Select the document or folder

Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
HAKKODA	10,19:55	LT	1
HAKKODA-001	10,19:57	LT	1
New	10,08:27		

OPEN FOLDER
DELETE
TEST PRINT
SETTINGS
CANCEL
PRINT
1/1

- To print a document in the folder, select the folder in which you want to print the document out and press the [OPEN FOLDER] button. Select the desired document on the menu.

5 Press the [PRINT] button.



PRINT ▶Select the document or folder

Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
HAKKODA	10,19:55	LT	1
HAKKODA-001	10,19:57	LT	1
New	10,08:27		

OPEN FOLDER
DELETE
TEST PRINT
SETTINGS
CANCEL
PRINT
1/1

- Printing starts.

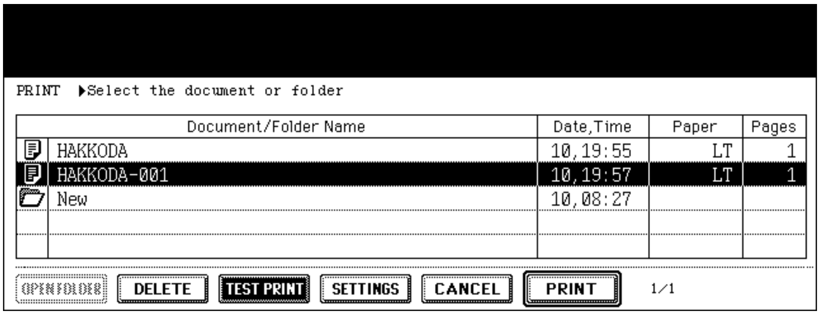
To stop printing a stored document during the operation
Select the job you want to stop from the print job menu or scan job menu, and then press the [DELETE] button. For details, see 📖 P.251 “8.JOB STATUS”.

Test printing

A part of a document of several pages can be printed out.

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of 📖 P.205 “Printing the whole document”.

2 Press the [TEST PRINT] button.

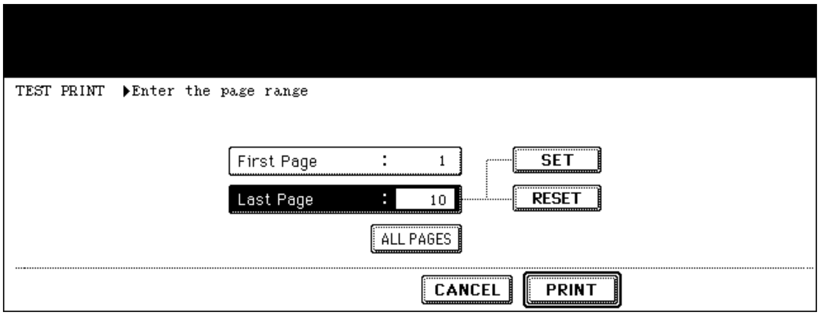


PRINT ▸Select the document or folder

	Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
	HAKKODA	10,19:55	LT	1
	HAKKODA-001	10,19:57	LT	1
	New	10,08:27		

OPEN FOLDER
DELETE
TEST PRINT
SETTINGS
CANCEL
PRINT
1/1

3 Key in the number of the last page and press the [SET] button. Then key in the number of the first page.



TEST PRINT ▸Enter the page range

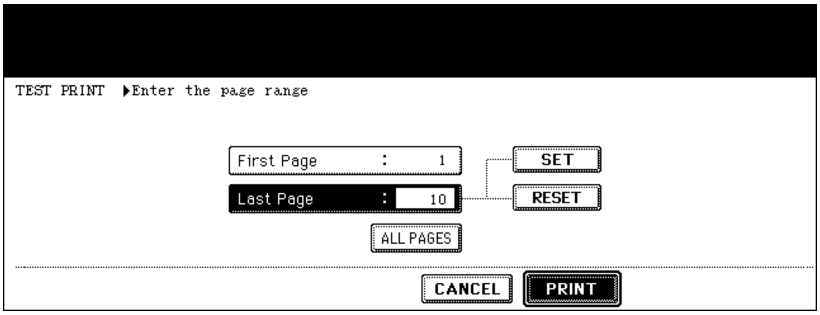
First Page : 1

Last Page : 10

SET
RESET
ALL PAGES
CANCEL
PRINT

- To correct the pages, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- To print all pages, press the [ALL PAGES] button.

4 Press the [PRINT] button.



TEST PRINT ▸Enter the page range

First Page : 1

Last Page : 10

SET
RESET
ALL PAGES
CANCEL
PRINT

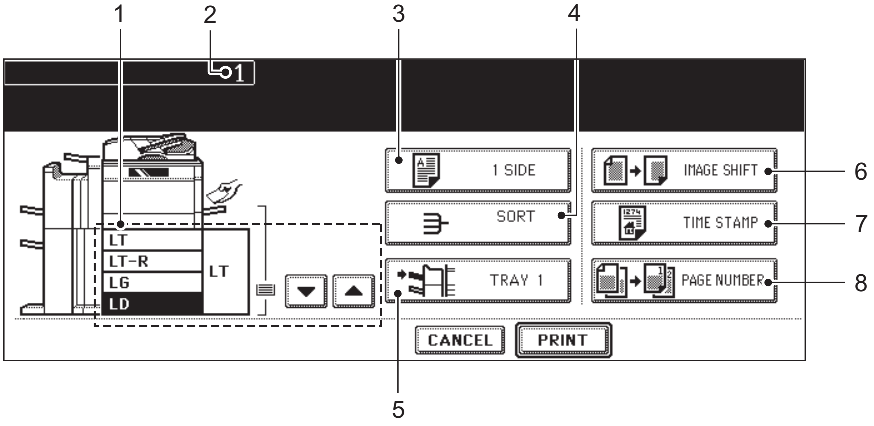
- Printing of the set pages starts.

To stop printing a stored document during this operation
Select the job you want to stop from the print job menu or scan job menu, and then press the [DELETE] button. For details, see 📖 P.251 “8.JOB STATUS”.

Printing the stored document after changing the settings

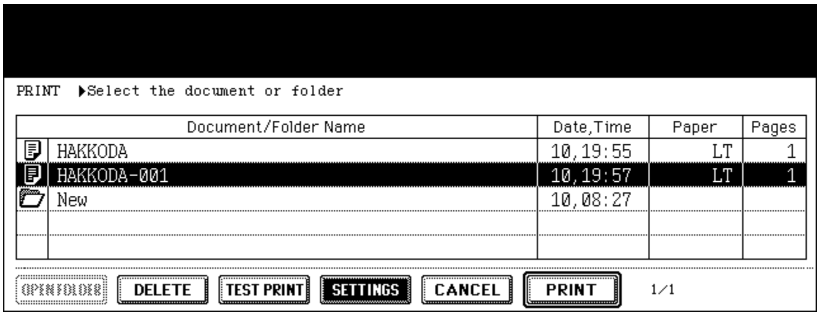
The following settings are available before the stored document is printed.

1. Paper source (Press the drawer icon to be set as a paper source. However, the paper in the drawer selected for the paper source is used only when its size and type correspond to those of the documents in the box.)
2. Number of printings (Key them in.)
3. Simplex printing / duplex printing
4. Finishing mode (Selecting the mode is limited depending on the installed optional equipment.)
5. Paper exit (Available when the Finisher or Saddle Stitch Finisher (both are optional) is installed)
6. Image shift position
7. Added date and time position
8. Page number position


1
2
3
4
1
1 SIDE
IMAGE SHIFT
6
SORT
TIME STAMP
7
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
TRAY 1
PAGE NUMBER
8
CANCEL
PRINT
5

1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of 🕮 P.205 “Printing the whole document”.

2 Press the [SETTINGS] button.



PRINT ▶Select the document or folder

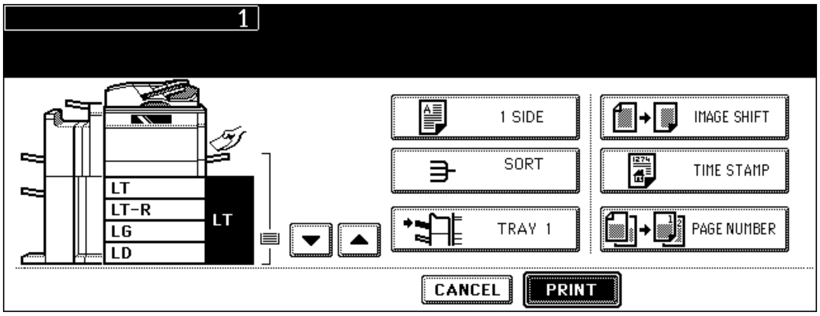
	Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
	HAKKODA	10,19:55	LT	1
	HAKKODA-001	10,19:57	LT	1
	New	10,08:27		

OPEN FOLDER
DELETE
TEST PRINT
SETTINGS
CANCEL
PRINT
1/1

3 Set the printing modes as required.

- See the eight items mentioned above for the setting mode. To set items 3 to 8, press the button and set the required setting on the menu.

4 Press the [PRINT] button.


1
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
1 SIDE
SORT
TRAY 1
IMAGE SHIFT
TIME STAMP
PAGE NUMBER
CANCEL
PRINT

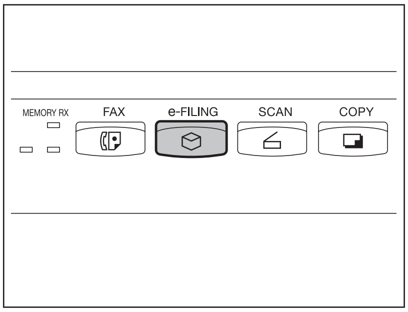
- Printing starts.

To stop printing a stored document during this operation
Select the job you want to stop from the print job menu or scan job menu, and then press the [DELETE] button. For details, see 🕮 P.251 “8.JOB STATUS”.

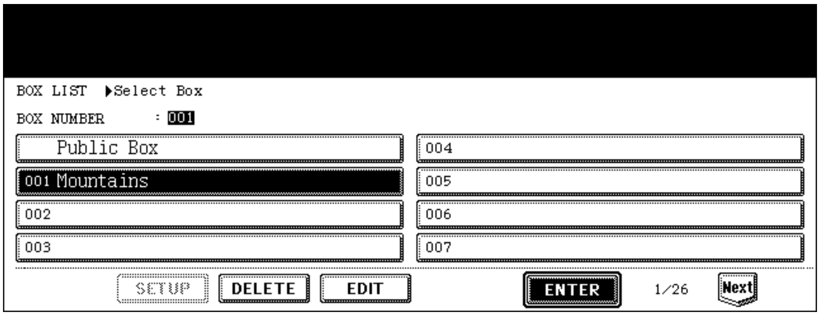
7. Deleting Folders or Documents

Unnecessary folders or documents can be deleted. If a folder is deleted, all documents in the folder are also deleted.

1 Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.


MEMORY RX
FAX
e-FILING
SCAN
COPY

2 Select the box in which you want to delete the folder or document, and then press the [ENTER] button.

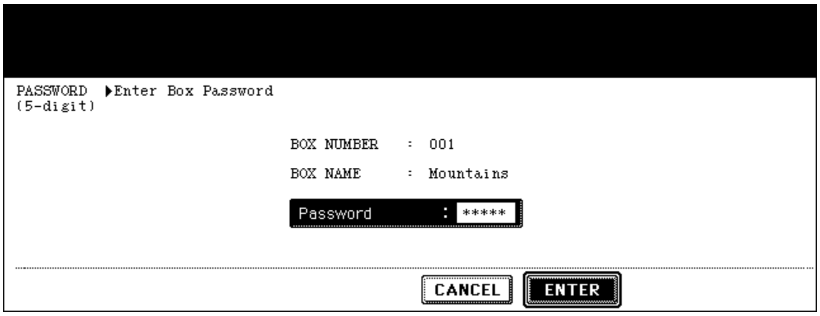

BOX LIST ▸Select Box

BOX NUMBER : 001

Public Box
001 Mountains
002
003
004
005
006
007
SETUP
DELETE
EDIT
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

3 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PASSWORD (5-digit) ▸Enter Box Password

BOX NUMBER : 001

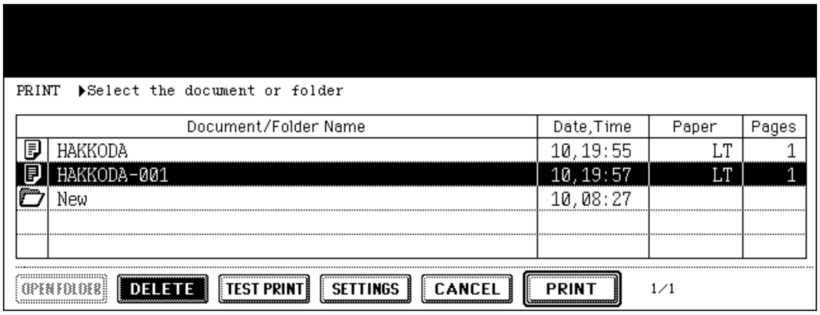
BOX NAME : Mountains

Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the box was created, skip to step 4.

4 Select the folder or document to be deleted, and then press the [DELETE] button.

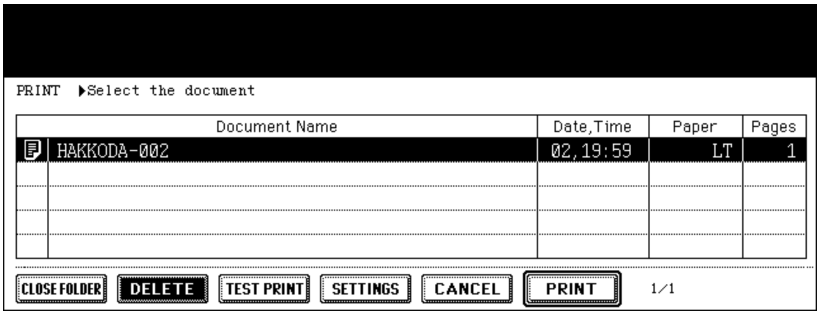


PRINT ▶Select the document or folder

	Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
	HAKKODA	10,19:55	LT	1
	HAKKODA-001	10,19:57	LT	1
	New	10,08:27		

OPEN FOLDER
DELETE
TEST PRINT
SETTINGS
CANCEL
PRINT
1/1

To delete a document in the folder
To delete a document in the folder, select the folder in which you want to delete the document and press the [OPEN FOLDER] button. Select the desired document and press the [DELETE] button.

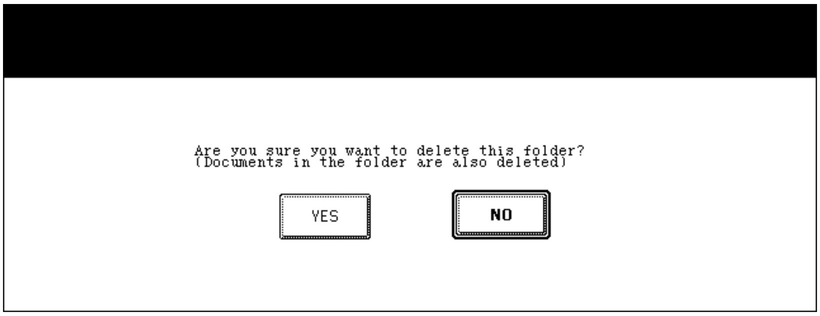


PRINT ▶Select the document

	Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
	HAKKODA-002	02,19:59	LT	1

CLOSE FOLDER
DELETE
TEST PRINT
SETTINGS
CANCEL
PRINT
1/1

5 “Are you sure you want to delete this folder?” or “Are you sure you want to delete this document?” appears. Press the [Yes] button to delete the folder or document.



Are you sure you want to delete this folder?
(Documents in the folder are also deleted)

- The folder or document is deleted.
  If a folder is deleted, all the documents in the folder are also deleted.

8. Appendix

Storing documents in the shared folder

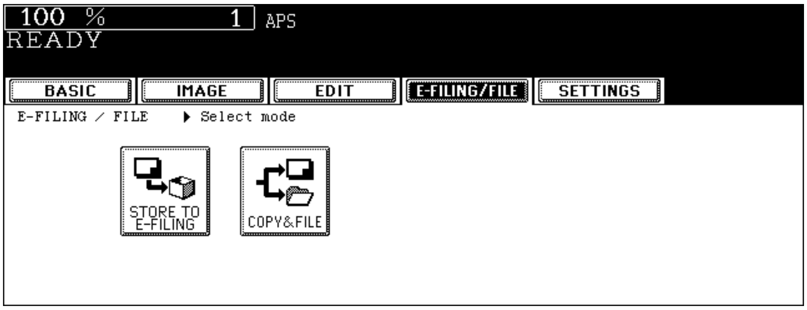
Scanned original data can be stored in the shared folder. You can copy originals and store the data at the same time.

Tips

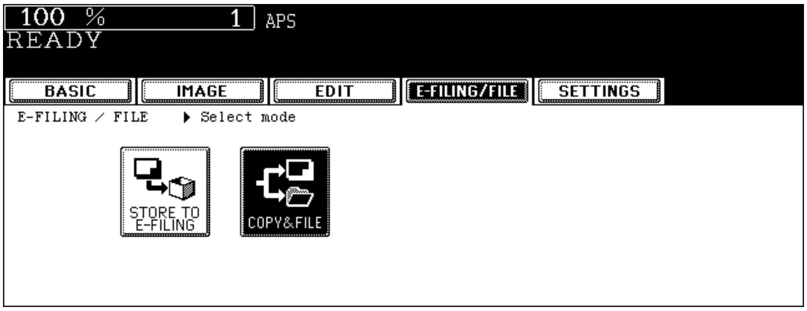
- Data can be stored in the TIFF, PDF or XPS format.
- Data can be stored in the [MFP LOCAL] (hard disk in the equipment) as well as [REMOTE 1] and [REMOTE 2] (hard disk of a computer connected with the equipment in the network).
  To set “REMOTE 1” and “REMOTE 2”, ask your network administrator.
- To enable "Copy & File", the Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is required.

1 Place the original(s).

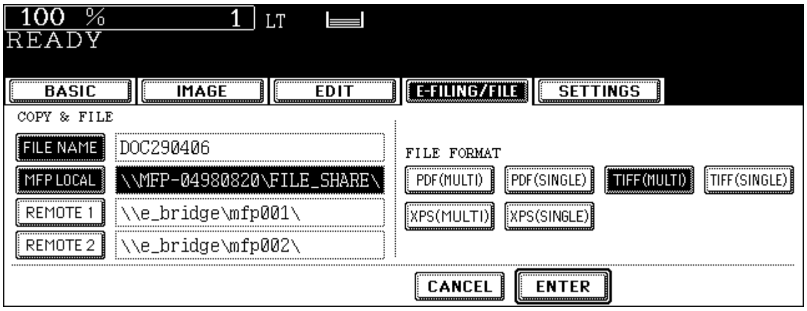
2 Press the [E-FILING/FILE] button on the basic menu to enter the e-Filing/file menu.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
E-FILING / FILE
▶ Select mode
STORE TO E-FILING
COPY&FILE

3 Press the [COPY & FILE] button.


100 %
1
APS
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
E-FILING / FILE
▶ Select mode
STORE TO E-FILING
COPY&FILE

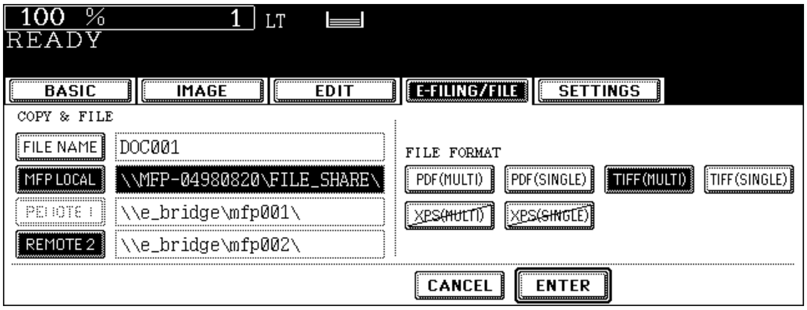
4 Press the [FILE NAME] button.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY & FILE
FILE NAME
MFP LOCAL
REMOTE 1
REMOTE 2
FILE FORMAT
PDF(MULTI)
PDF(SINGLE)
TIFF(MULTI)
TIFF(SINGLE)
XPS(MULTI)
XPS(SINGLE)
CANCEL
ENTER

FILE NAME: DOC290406
MFP LOCAL: \\MFP-04980820\FILE_SHARE\
REMOTE 1: \\e_bridge\mfp001\
REMOTE 2: \\e_bridge\mfp002\
FILE FORMAT: TIFF(MULTI)

When the [FILE NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 45 characters can be entered.

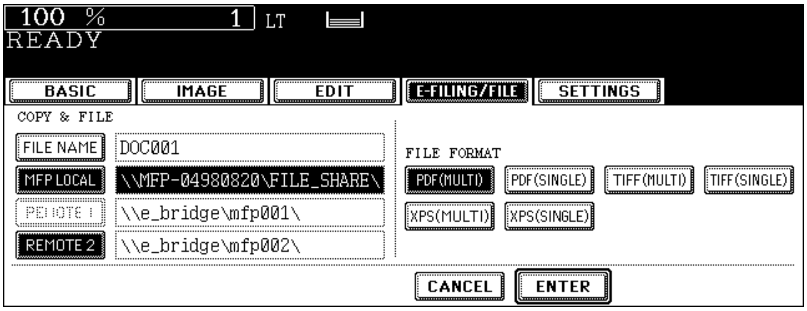
5 Select the destination you want to store the data.


100 %
1
LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY & FILE
FILE NAME
MFP LOCAL
REMOTE 1
REMOTE 2
FILE FORMAT
PDF(MULTI)
PDF(SINGLE)
TIFF(MULTI)
TIFF(SINGLE)
~~XPS(MULTI)~~
~~XPS(SINGLE)~~
CANCEL
ENTER

FILE NAME: DOC001
MFP LOCAL: \\MFP-04980820\FILE_SHARE\
REMOTE 1: \\e_bridge\mfp001\
REMOTE 2: \\e_bridge\mfp002\
FILE FORMAT: TIFF(MULTI)

- Any two of the destinations [MFP LOCAL], [REMOTE 1] and [REMOTE 2] can be selected at one time.
- If you press the [REMOTE 1] or [REMOTE 2] button, you may need to specify the computer in which you want to store the data. See “6. Copy & File” in the Scanning Guide for details.

6 Select the format in which the data are stored.


100 % 1 LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY & FILE
FILE FORMAT
PDF(MULTI)
PDF(SINGLE)
TIFF(MULTI)
TIFF(SINGLE)
XPS(MULTI)
XPS(SINGLE)
CANCEL
ENTER

FILE NAME DOC001
MFP LOCAL \\MFP-04980820\FILE_SHARE\
REMOTE 1 \\e_bridge\mfp001\
REMOTE 2 \\e_bridge\mfp002\

PDF (MULTI)

Scanned originals are stored as one PDF file.

PDF (SINGLE)

A folder is created and each page of the scanned original is stored into this folder separately as a PDF file.

E.g.: A three-page original is stored as three PDF files.

TIFF (MULTI)

Scanned originals are stored as one TIFF file.

TIFF (SINGLE)

A folder is created and each page of the scanned original is stored into this folder separately as a TIFF file.

E.g.: A three-page original is stored as three TIFF files.

XPS (MULTI)

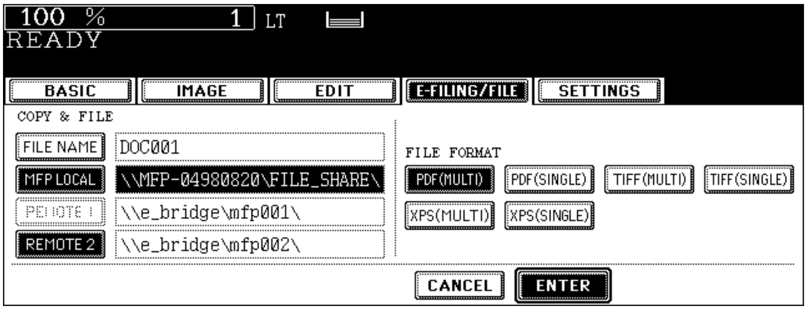
Scanned originals are stored as one XPS file.

XPS (SINGLE)

A folder is created and each page of the scanned original is stored into this folder separately as a XPS file.

E.g.: A three-page original is stored as three XPS files.

7 Press the [ENTER] button.


100 % 1 LT
READY
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
COPY & FILE
FILE FORMAT
PDF(MULTI)
PDF(SINGLE)
TIFF(MULTI)
TIFF(SINGLE)
XPS(MULTI)
XPS(SINGLE)
CANCEL
ENTER

FILE NAME DOC001
MFP LOCAL \\MFP-04980820\FILE_SHARE\
REMOTE 1 \\e_bridge\mfp001\
REMOTE 2 \\e_bridge\mfp002\

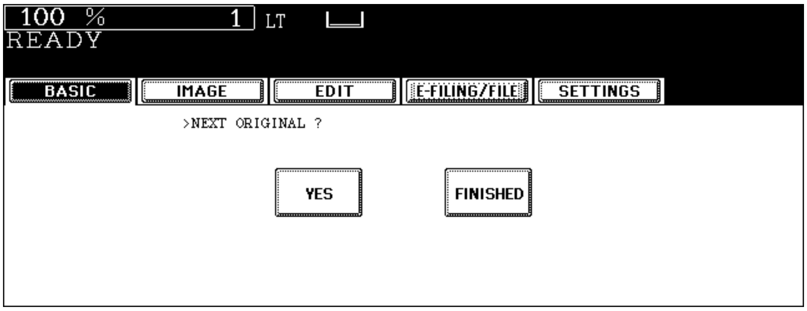
8 Press the [START] button.

- The scanning, storing and copying of the documents starts.

Tip

When the original is placed on the original glass or on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) in the single original feeding mode, the following menu is displayed. Setting the original on the original glass: When the next original is placed, the [YES] button and then the [START] button are pressed, storing of the document starts.

Setting the original on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder in the single original feeding mode: When the next original is placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, storing of the document starts. After the last page has finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.



READY

>NEXT ORIGINAL ?

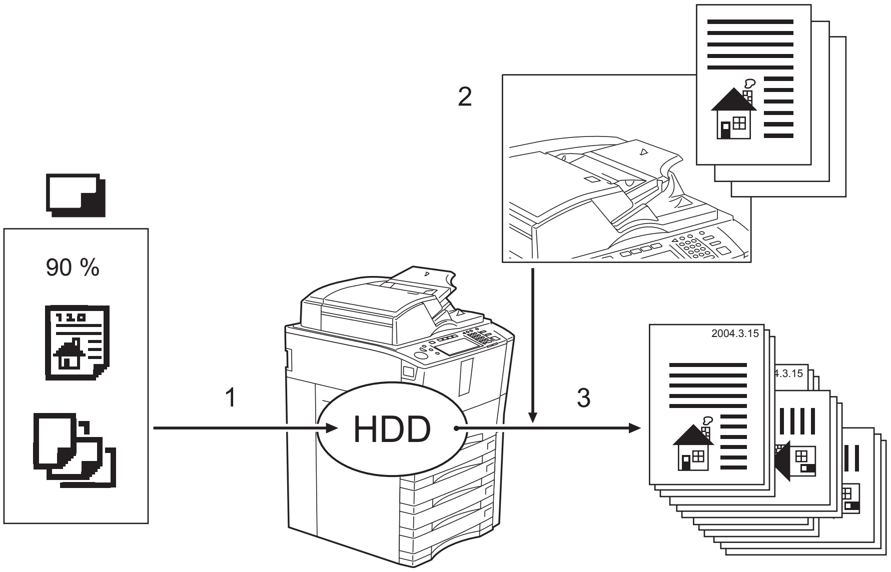
7. TEMPLATE

1. Template 218
2. Registering User Groups and Templates 221
3. Changing Data of User Groups and Templates 233
4. Recalling Templates...241
5. Deleting User Groups or Templates...246

1. Template

A combination of functions frequently used can be registered as a template and recalled as required. Templates can be used with the copy, scanning and Fax functions.

- To use scanning functions, the Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is required.
- To use Fax functions, the optional Fax Unit is required.

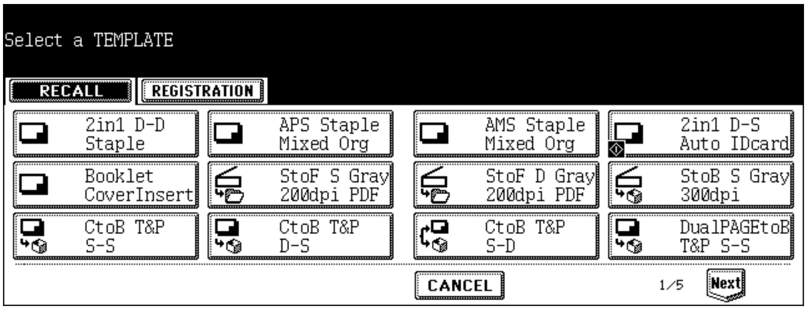

2
90 %
1
HDD
3
2004.3.15
4.3.15

1. Register the combination of the functions to the template.
2. Place the original.
3. Recall the desired template, and then make a copy.

Template in “Useful Template”

In this equipment, 12 templates are included by default. They are registered to be available in the user group number 001 “Useful Template”.

- To recall the template, see 🕮 P.243 “When recalling a template in a user group”.



Select a TEMPLATE

RECALL
REGISTRATION
2in1 D-D Staple
APS Staple Mixed Org
AMS Staple Mixed Org
2in1 D-S Auto IDcard
Booklet CoverInsert
StoF S Gray 200dpi PDF
StoF D Gray 200dpi PDF
StoB S Gray 300dpi
CtoB T&P S-S
CtoB T&P D-S
CtoB T&P S-D
DualPAGEtoB T&P S-S
CANCEL
1/5
Next

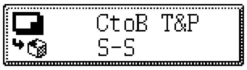
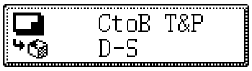
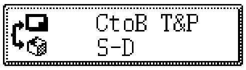
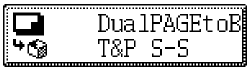
Template using the copying function

Button	Function [*1]
2in1 D-D Staple	2-sided originals are copied in the 2IN1 and duplex mode, and then copies are stapled in the position of [FRONT STAPLE]. *2, *3
APS Staple Mixed Org	Mixed-size originals are copied in the automatic paper selection mode, and copies are stapled in the position of [FRONT STAPLE]. *2
AMS Staple Mixed Org	Mixed-size originals are copied in the automatic magnification selection mode on A4 paper, and copies are stapled in the position of [FRONT STAPLE]. *2
2in1 D-S Auto IDcard	Small 2-sided originals such as business cards, etc. can be copied in full size on one side of the copy paper in the 2IN1 mode. • Before recalling a template, place the original on the original glass. • After the scanning of a 2-sided original is finished, press the [FINISHED] button.
Booklet CoverInsert	One-sided originals are copied with cover sheets added in the Magazine sort mode and stapled along their center line. *4 • The cover sheets are not copied.

Template using the scanning function [*5]

Button	Function [*1]
StoF S Gray 200dpi PDF	A 1-sided original is scanned in the image smoothing mode at 200 dpi resolution, then stored in the shared folder of this equipment as a PDF (multi) file.
StoF D Gray 200dpi PDF	A 2-sided original is scanned in the image smoothing mode at 200 dpi resolution, then stored in the shared folder of this equipment as a PDF (multi) file.
StoB S Gray 300dpi	A 1-sided original is scanned in the image smoothing mode at 300 dpi resolution, then stored in e-Filing. • Documents are stored in Public Box.

Template using the e-Filing function

Button	Function [*1]
 CtoB T&P S-S	Documents are read in the text/photo mode and with "1-sided original -> 1-sided copy", then stored in e-Filing of this equipment. • Documents are stored in Public Box.
 CtoB T&P D-S	Documents are read in the text/photo mode and with "2-sided original -> 1-sided copy", then stored in e-Filing of this equipment. • Documents are stored in Public Box.
 CtoB T&P S-D	Documents are read in the text/photo mode and with "1-sided original -> 2-sided copy", then stored in e-Filing of this equipment. • Documents are stored in Public Box.
 DualPAGEtoB T&P S-S	Documents are read in the text/photo mode and with "1-sided original -> 1-sided copy" using the dual-page function, then stored in e-Filing of this equipment. • Documents are stored in Public Box.

*1 Functions not described in the "Function" field are set by default.
*2 The Finisher (optional) is necessary.
*3 The External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is necessary.
*4 The Inserter Unit (optional) is necessary.
*5 The Scanner Kit (optional) is necessary.

2. Registering User Groups and Templates

A template can be registered either in “PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP” or “USER GROUP” depending on your purpose. Passwords can be set to restrict the unauthorized use of a template.

PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP:
This is prepared as a default setting. Anyone can use a template registered in this group.
It is useful if the setting combinations of functions frequently used throughout the company or organization are registered in this group. Up to 60 templates can be registered.

- When registering a template in the public template group, keying in the Admin Password is required.

USER GROUP:
Up to 200 groups can be registered. It is useful if you register each department, section or person as a user group. Up to 60 templates can be registered in each group. Passwords can be set for the user groups.

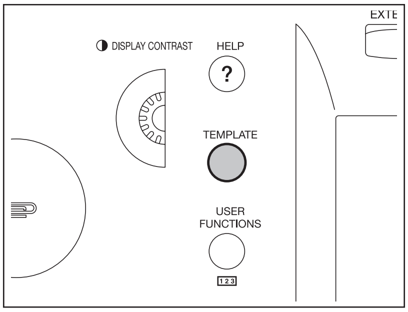
- “Useful Template” is registered to be available in user group number 001.

Registering a template in the public template group

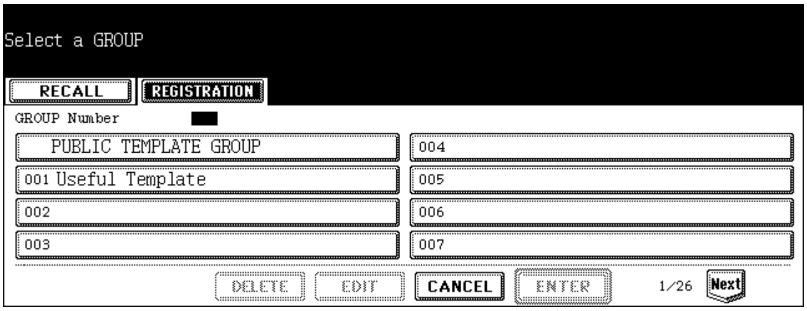
1 Set every function you want to include in the combination.

- e.g.: Setting “Image shift”, “90% reduction” and “10 sets of copies” of the copy function.

2 Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.

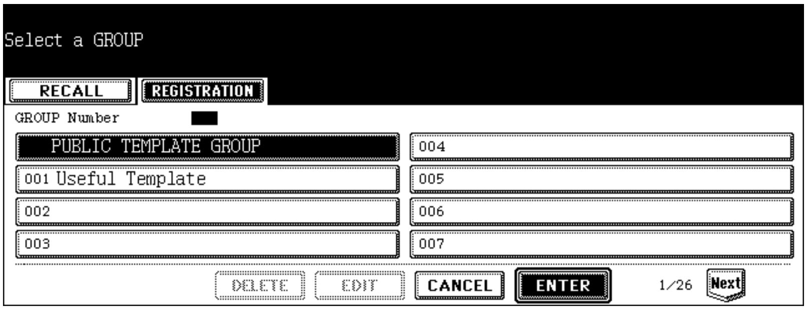


3 Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

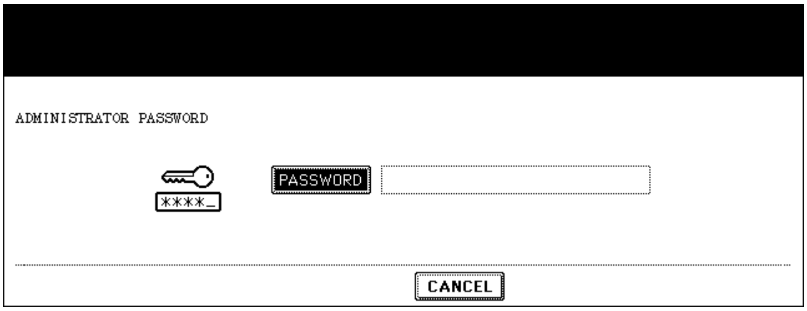

Select a GROUP

PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002
003
004
005
006
007

4 Press the [PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP], and then press the [ENTER] button.


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

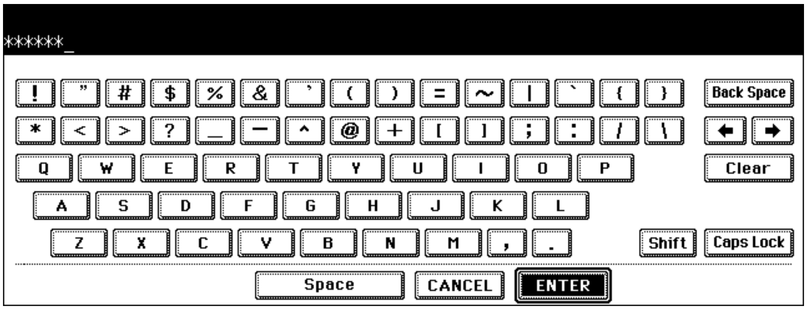
5 Press the [PASSWORD] button.


ADMINISTRATOR PASSWORD
****_
PASSWORD
CANCEL

- The letter entry menu is displayed.

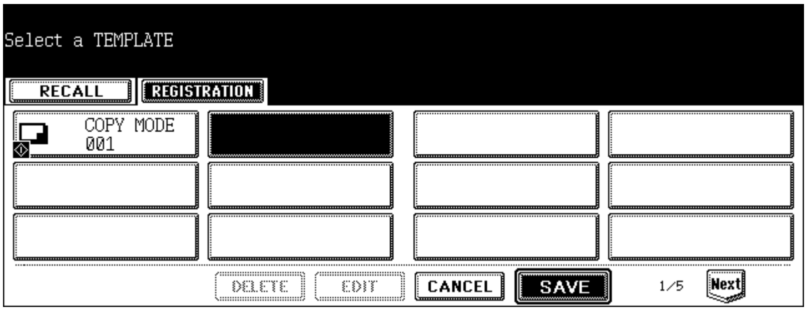
6 Key in the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits) with the keys on the letter entry menu and the digital keys, and then press the [ENTER] button.

- If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.


******_
Back Space
Clear
Shift
Caps Lock
Space
CANCEL
ENTER

- The corresponding buttons of the template registered in the public template group are displayed.

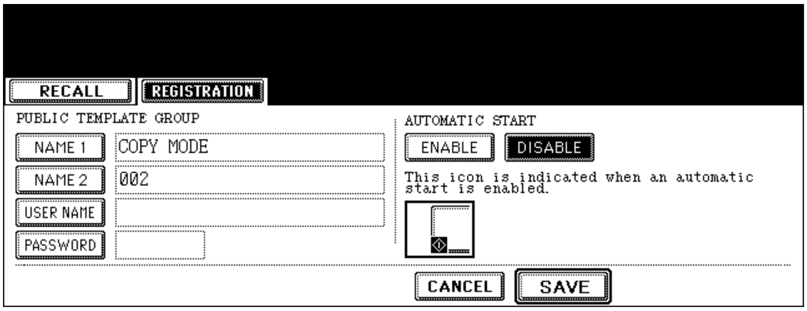
7 Press the blank key, and then press the [SAVE] button.



Select a TEMPLATE

COPY MODE
001

8 Press the [NAME1] button and the [NAME2] button, and then enter the template name.



PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP

NAME 1: COPY MODE

NAME 2: 002

USER NAME:

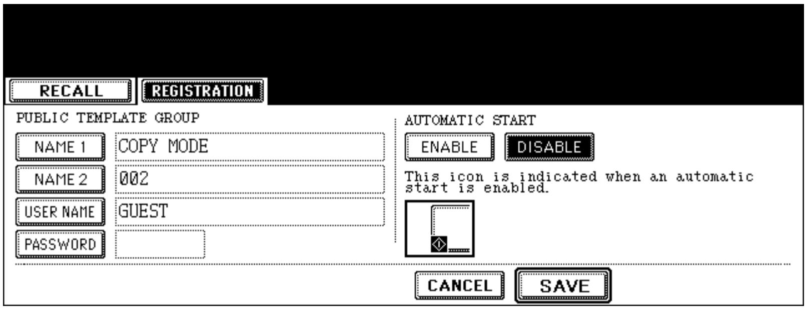
PASSWORD:

AUTOMATIC START: ENABLE / DISABLE

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- [NAME 1] is displayed on the upper side and [NAME 2] is displayed on the lower side of the template button. Enter [NAME 1] and/or [NAME 2]. When both are entered, [NAME 1] is displayed on the upper side and [NAME 2] on the lower side of the button.
- When the [NAME 1] or [NAME 2] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 11 characters can be entered.
- The following symbols cannot be used for [NAME 1] and [NAME 2].
  ["], [=], [|], [*], [<], [>], [?], [+], [[], []], [;], [:], [/], [\], [,], [.]

9 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the user name of the template as required.



PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP

NAME 1: COPY MODE

NAME 2: 002

USER NAME: GUEST

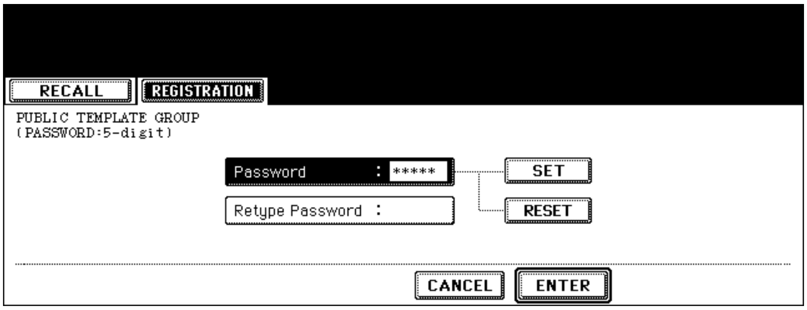
PASSWORD:

AUTOMATIC START: ENABLE / DISABLE

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 30 characters can be entered.
- To set the password, proceed to step 10. If not, skip to step 12.

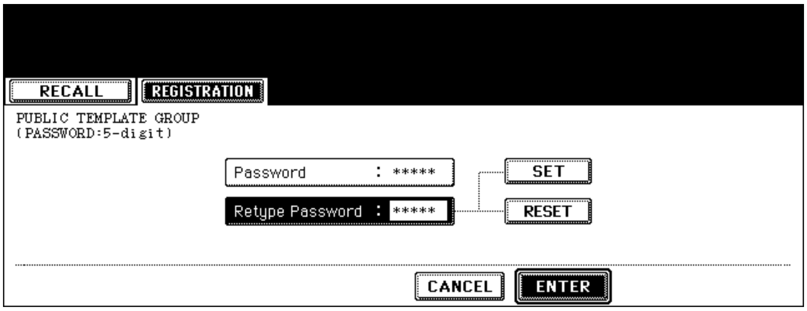
10 Key in the password in “Password” as required, and then press the [SET] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
(PASSWORD:5-digit)
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

Password : *****
Retype Password :

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

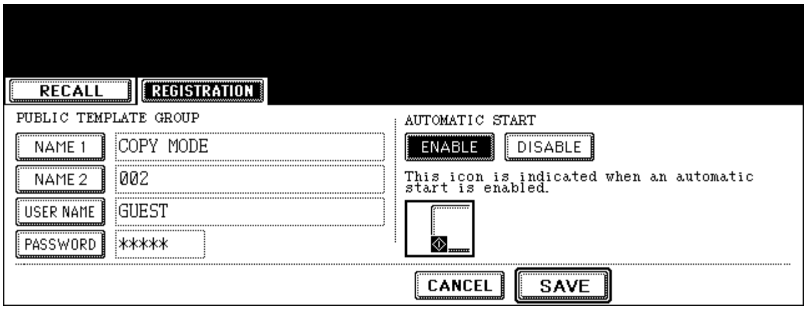
11 Key in the password in “Retype Password”, and then press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
(PASSWORD:5-digit)
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

Password : *****
Retype Password : *****

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

12 Select whether to enable “AUTOMATIC START” or not when the template is recalled.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
ENABLE
DISABLE
CANCEL
SAVE

PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP

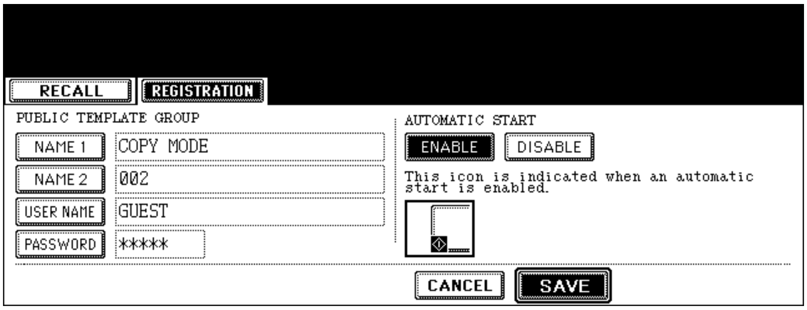
NAME 1: COPY MODE
NAME 2: 002
USER NAME: GUEST
PASSWORD: *****

AUTOMATIC START

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- Press the [ENABLE] or [DISABLE] button.
- When [ENABLE] is selected, the ◈ icon is added to the template button. (The operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button with the ◈ icon when the template is recalled. However, if a password is set for the template, you need to key it in when an operation with the function set to the template is performed, though automatic start is enabled.)

13 Press the [SAVE] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
ENABLE
DISABLE
CANCEL
SAVE

PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP

NAME 1: COPY MODE
NAME 2: 002
USER NAME: GUEST
PASSWORD: *****

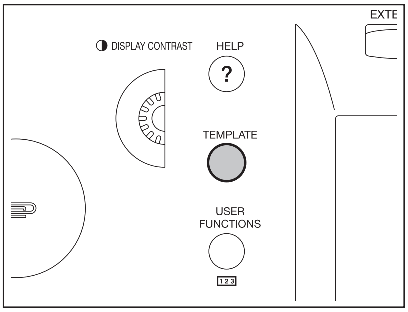
AUTOMATIC START

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

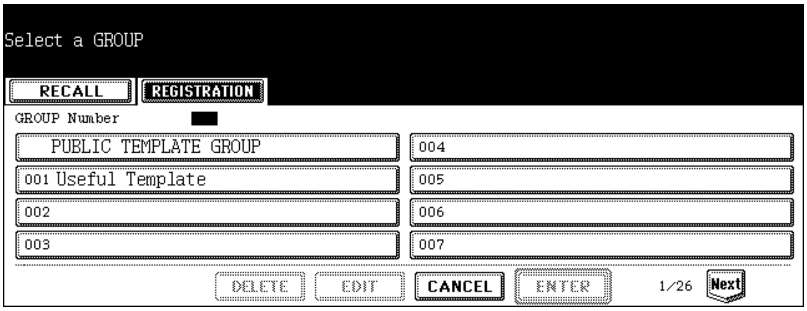
- The screen returns to the one of step 1, which is the menu before the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel is pressed.

Registering the new user group

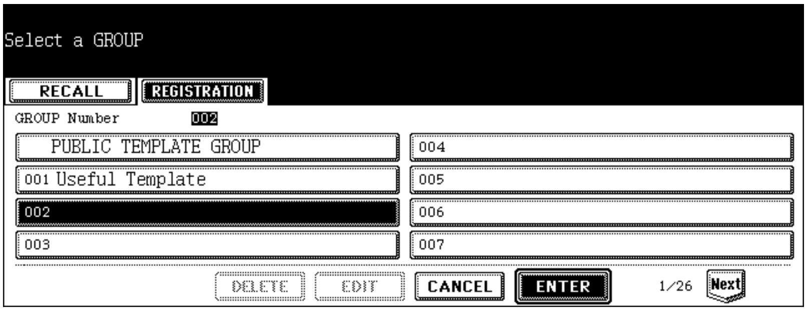
1 Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

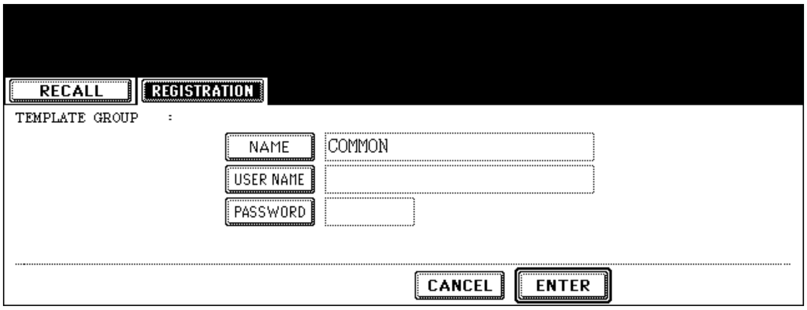

Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

3 Select an unregistered user group between “002” and “200”, and then press the [ENTER] button.


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number 002
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

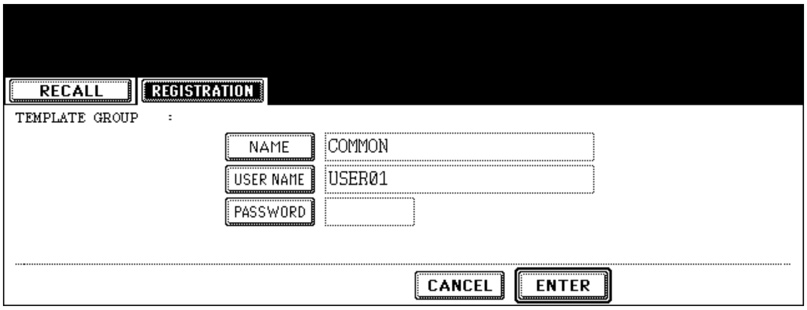
4 Press the [NAME] button, and then enter the user group name.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP :
NAME
USER NAME
PASSWORD
CANCEL
ENTER

NAME: COMMON

- When the [NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 20 characters can be entered.

5 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the user name of the user group as required.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
NAME
USER NAME
PASSWORD
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP :

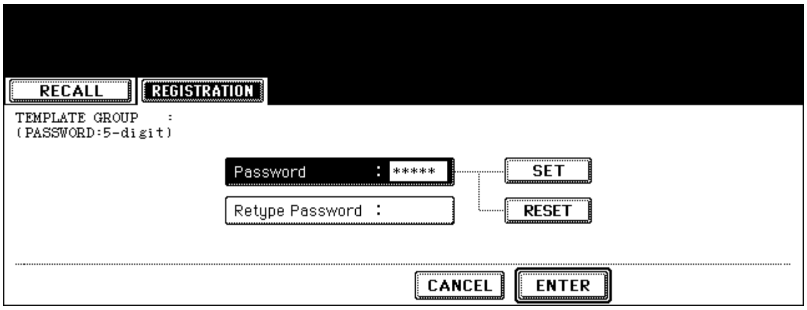
NAME: COMMON

USER NAME: USER01

PASSWORD:

- When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 30 characters can be entered.
- To set the password, proceed to step 6. If not, skip to step 8.

6 Key in the password in “Password” as required, and then press the [SET] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

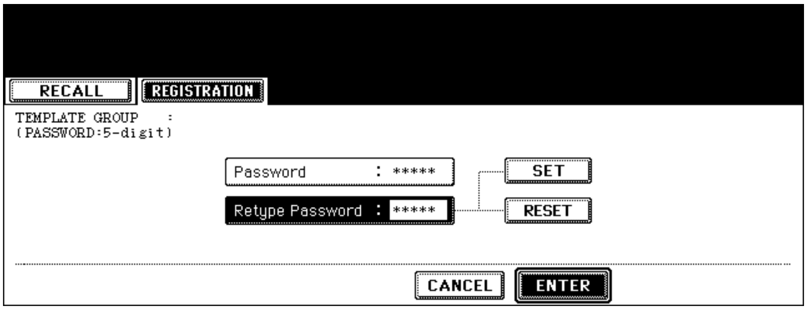
TEMPLATE GROUP :
(PASSWORD:5-digit)

Password : *****

Retype Password :

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

7 Key in the password in “Retype Password”, and then press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

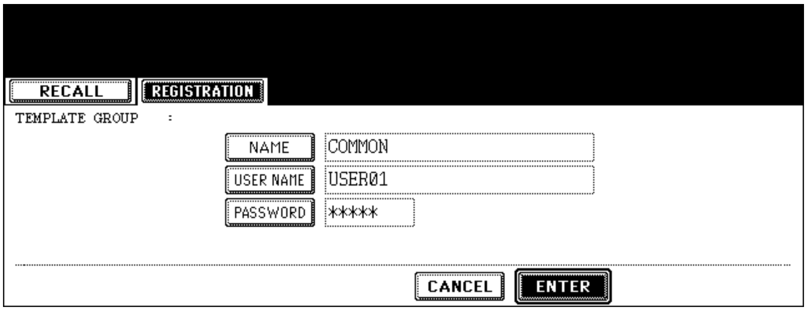
TEMPLATE GROUP :
(PASSWORD:5-digit)

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

8 Press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP :

NAME COMMON

USER NAME USER01

PASSWORD *****

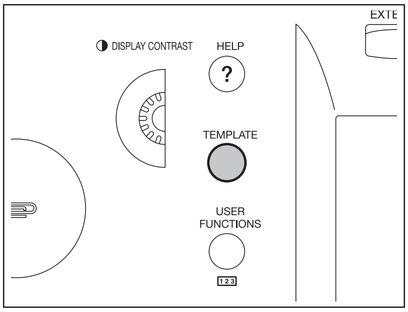
- The user group is registered.

Registering a template in the user group

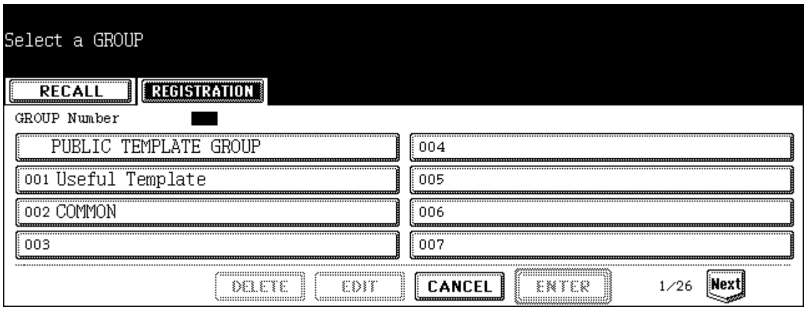
1 Set every function you want to include in the combination.

- e.g.: Setting “Image shift”, “90% reduction” and “10 sets of copies” of the copy function.

2 Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER
FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

3 Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

Select a GROUP

GROUP Number

PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP

001 Useful Template

002 COMMON

003

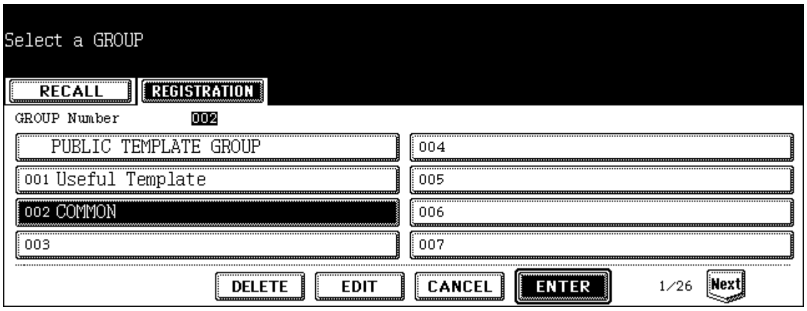
004

005

006

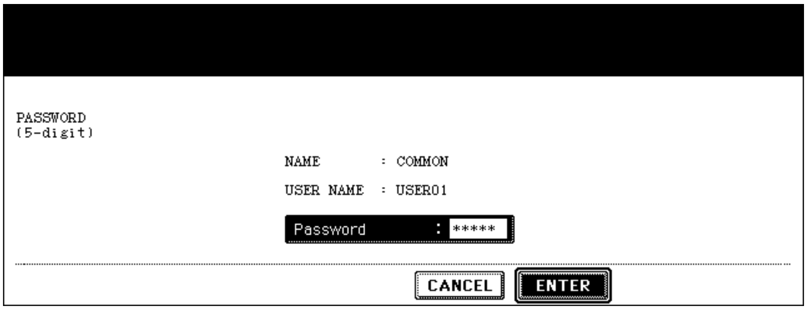
007

4 Select the desired user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number 002
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 COMMON
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

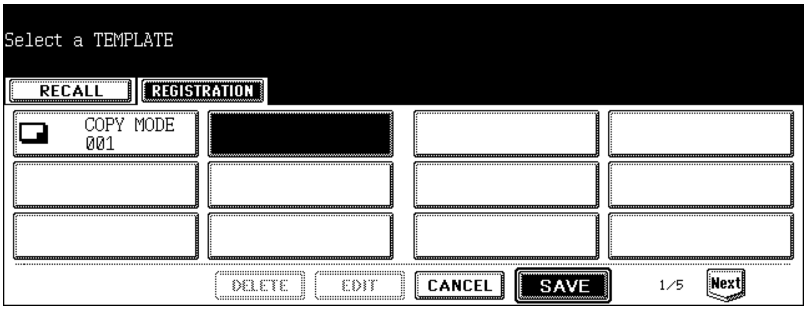
5 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PASSWORD
(5-digit)
CANCEL
ENTER

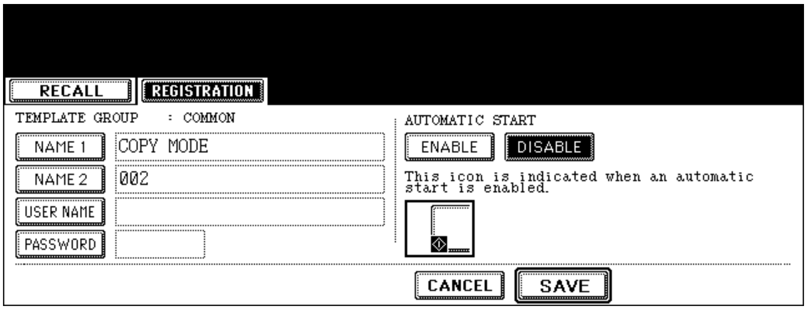
NAME : COMMON
USER NAME : USER01
Password : *****

- If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 6.

6 The corresponding buttons of the template registered in the user group are displayed. Press the blank key, and then press the [SAVE] button.


Select a TEMPLATE
RECALL
REGISTRATION
COPY MODE
001
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
SAVE
1/5
Next

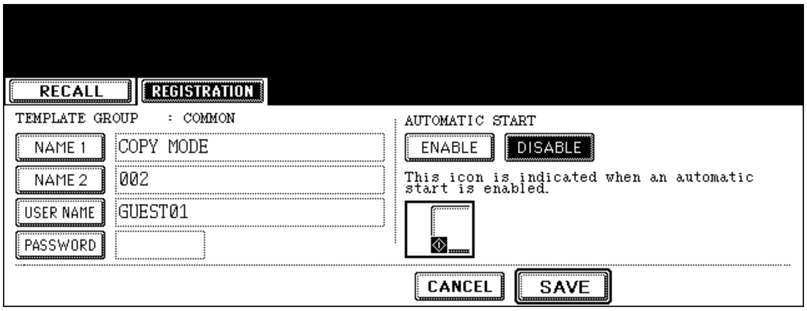
7 Press the [NAME1] button and the [NAME2] button, and then enter the template name.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
NAME 1
NAME 2
USER NAME
PASSWORD
ENABLE
DISABLE
CANCEL
SAVE

TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
NAME 1: COPY MODE
NAME 2: 002
AUTOMATIC START: DISABLE
This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- [NAME 1] is displayed in the upper side and [NAME 2] is displayed in the lower side of the template button. Enter [NAME 1] and/or [NAME 2]. When both are entered, [NAME 1] is displayed in the upper side and [NAME 2] is displayed in the lower side of the button.
- When the [NAME 1] or [NAME 2] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 11 characters can be entered.
- The following symbols cannot be used for [NAME 1] and [NAME 2].
  ["], [=], [|], [*], [<], [>], [?], [+], [[], []], [;], [:], [/], [\], [,], [.]

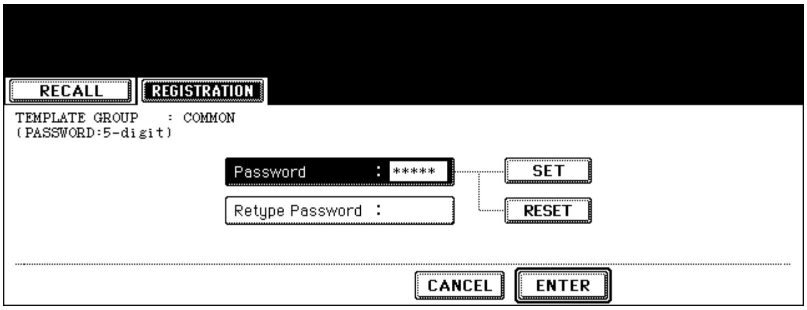
8 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the user name of the template as required.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
NAME 1
NAME 2
USER NAME
PASSWORD
ENABLE
DISABLE
CANCEL
SAVE

TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
NAME 1: COPY MODE
NAME 2: 002
USER NAME: GUEST01
AUTOMATIC START: DISABLE
This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

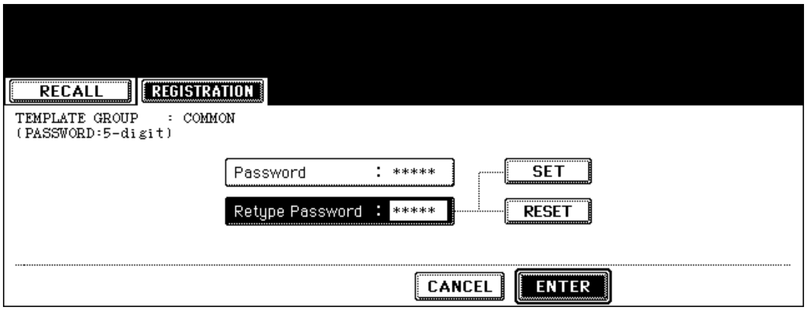
- When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 30 characters can be entered.
- To set the password, proceed to step 9. If not, skip to step 11.

9 Key in the password in “Password” as required, and then press the [SET] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
(PASSWORD:5-digit)
Password : *****
Retype Password :
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

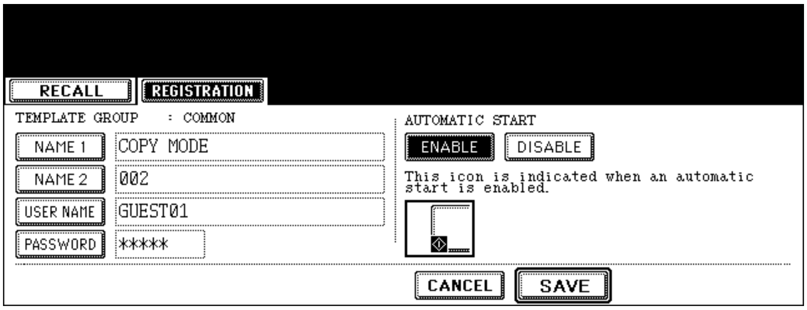
- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

10 Key in the password in “Retype Password”, and then press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
(PASSWORD:5-digit)
Password : *****
Retype Password : *****
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

11 Select whether to enable “AUTOMATIC START” or not when the template is recalled.



TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON

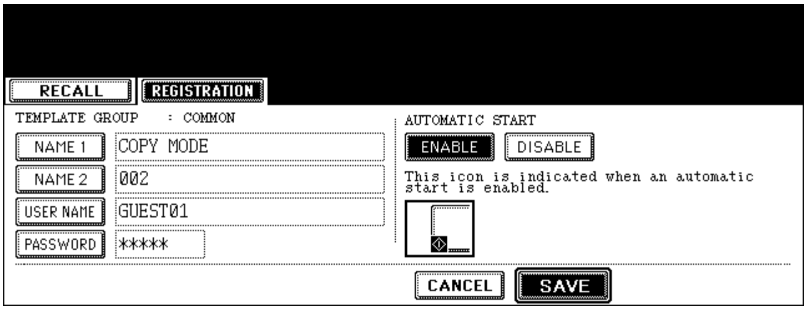
NAME 1: COPY MODE
NAME 2: 002
USER NAME: GUEST01
PASSWORD: *****

AUTOMATIC START: ENABLE

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- Press the [ENABLE] or [DISABLE] button.
- When [ENABLE] is selected, the ◈ icon is added to the template button. (The operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button with the ◈ icon when the template is recalled. However, if a password is set for the template, you need to key it in when an operation with the function set to the template is performed, though automatic start is enabled.)

12 Press the [SAVE] button.



TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON

NAME 1: COPY MODE
NAME 2: 002
USER NAME: GUEST01
PASSWORD: *****

AUTOMATIC START: ENABLE

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- The screen returns to the one of step 1, which is the menu before the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel is pressed.

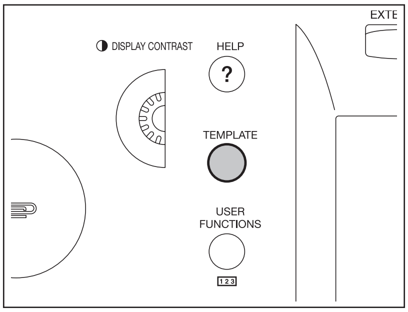
Registered names, user names and passwords of user groups or templates, and the automatic start setting of a template can be changed.

Tip

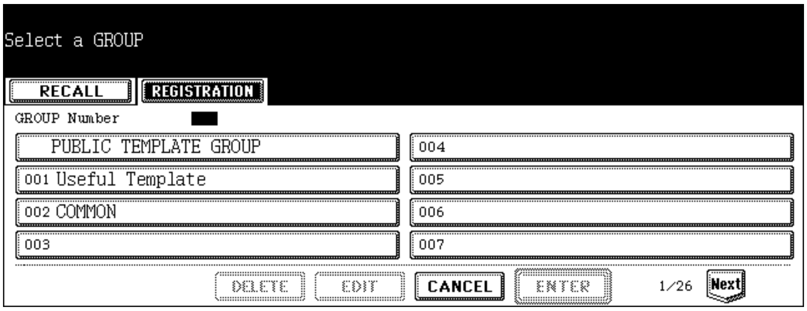
The data of a public group and the agent of a template cannot be changed from the control panel, but from "TopAccess". For details, see the TopAccess Guide.

Changing the data of a user group

1 **Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.**

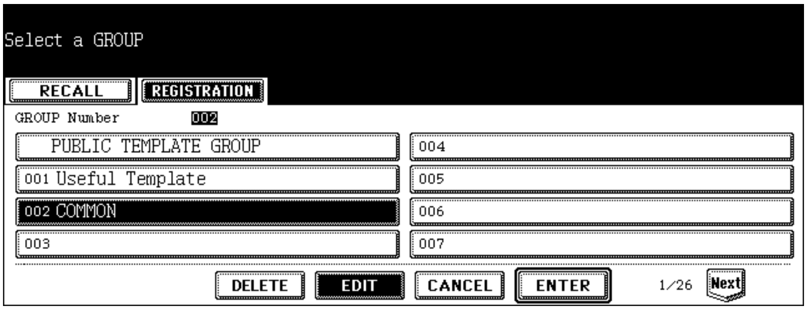

EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 **Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.**


Select a GROUP

RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
004
001 Useful Template
005
002 COMMON
006
003
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

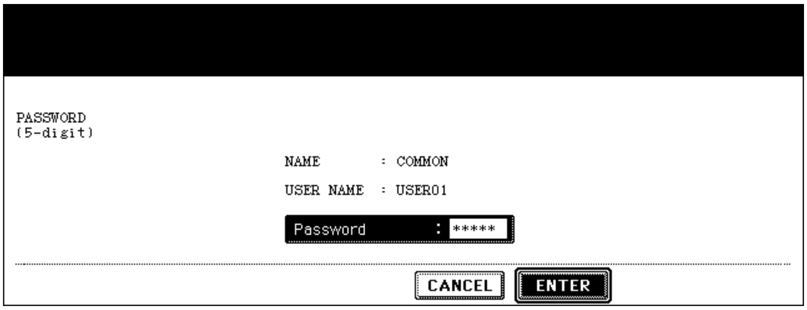
3 Select the user group you want to change, and then press the [EDIT] button.


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 COMMON
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

GROUP Number 002

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

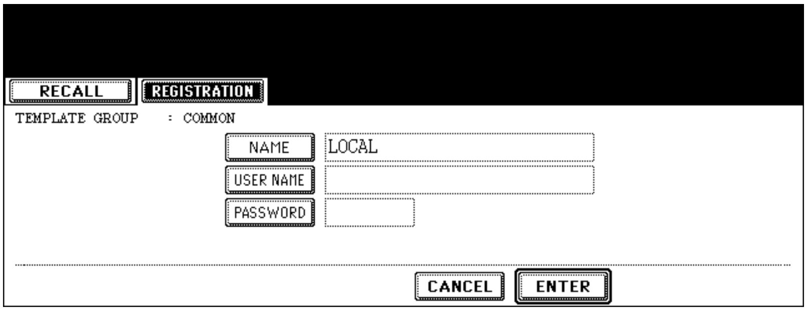
4 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PASSWORD
(5-digit)
CANCEL
ENTER

NAME : COMMON
USER NAME : USER01
Password : *****

- If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.

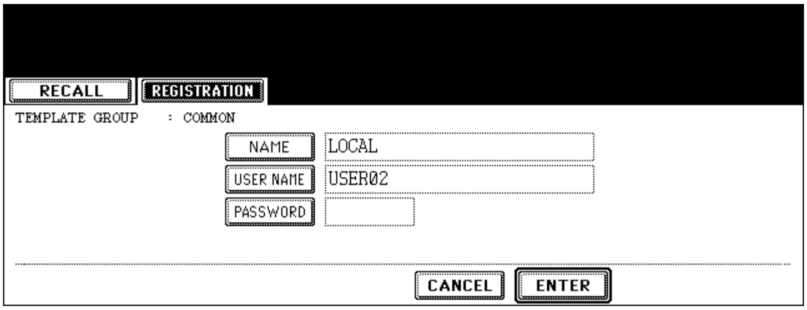
5 Press the [NAME] button, and then enter the new name of the user group.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
NAME
USER NAME
PASSWORD
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
NAME LOCAL

- When the [NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 20 characters can be entered.

6 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the new user name of the user group.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON

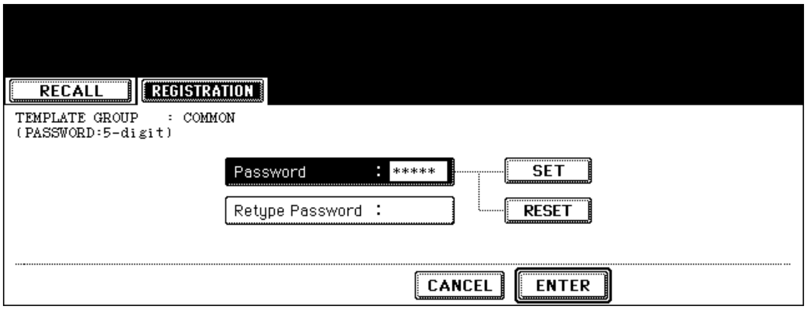
NAME: LOCAL

USER NAME: USER02

PASSWORD:

- When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 30 characters can be entered.

7 Key in the new password in “Password”, and then press the [SET] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

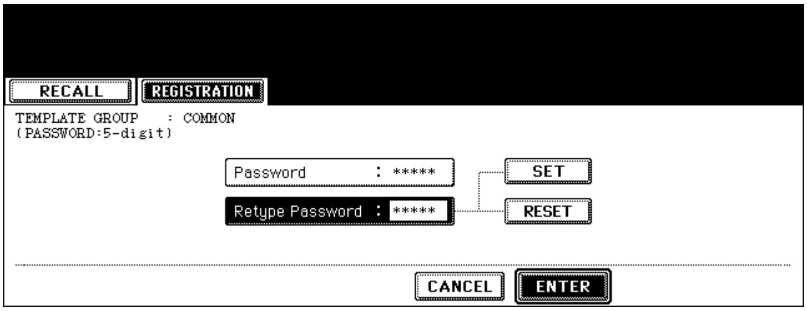
TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
(PASSWORD:5-digit)

Password : *****

Retype Password :

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

8 Key in the password in “Retype Password”, and then press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

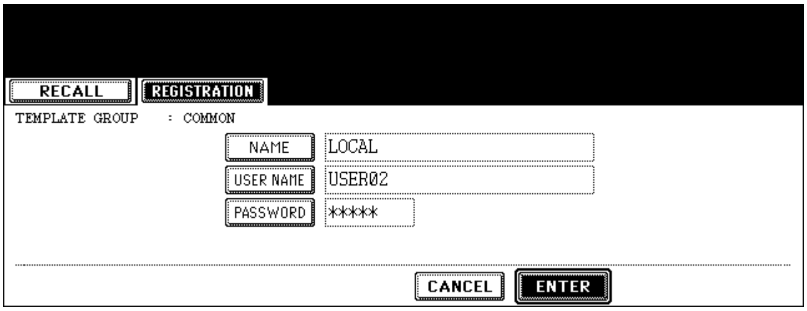
TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON
(PASSWORD:5-digit)

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

9 Press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON

NAME: LOCAL

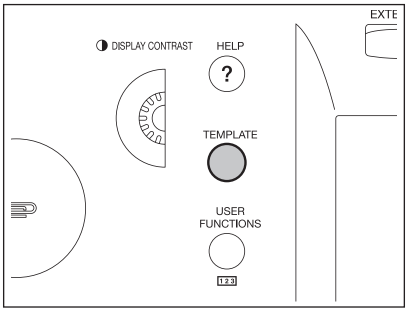
USER NAME: USER02

PASSWORD: *****

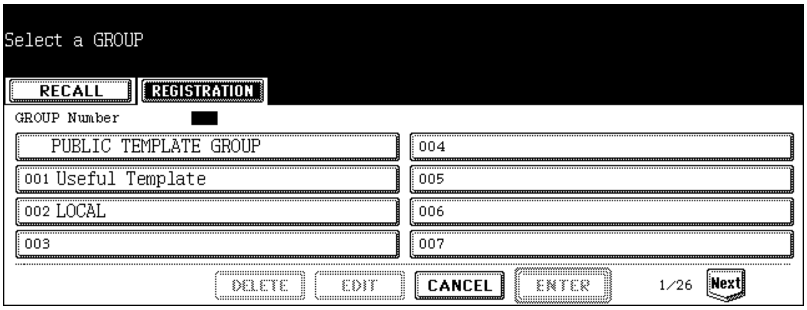
- The data of the user group are changed.

Changing the data of a template

1 Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
Next

Select a GROUP

GROUP Number

PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP

001 Useful Template

002 LOCAL

003

004

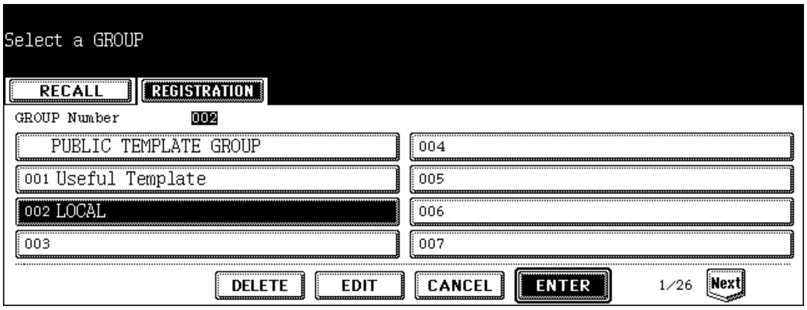
005

006

007

1/26

3 Select the group in which the template to be changed was registered, and then press the [ENTER] button.


Select a GROUP

GROUP Number 002

RECALL
REGISTRATION
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

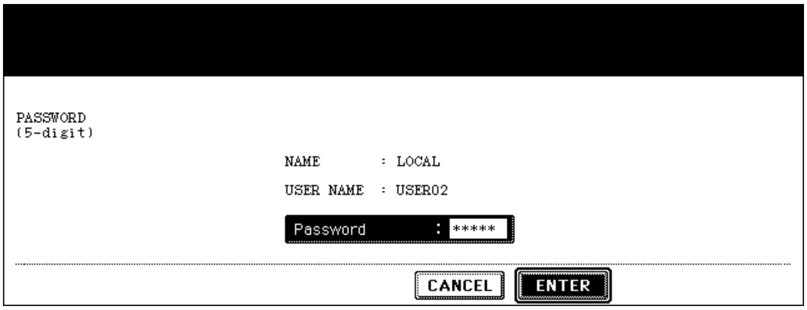
- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

4 Enter the password, and then press the [ENTER] button.

When the public group is selected:
Press the [PASSWORD] button, and then key in the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits) with the keys on the letter entry menu and the digital keys.

- If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.

When the user group is selected:
Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group. (If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.)


PASSWORD
(5-digit)

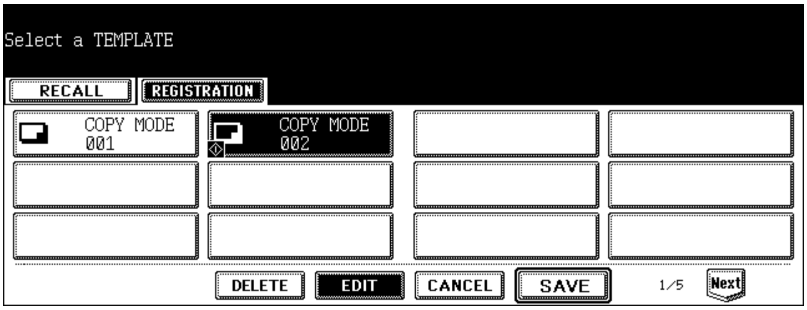
NAME : LOCAL

USER NAME : USER02

Password : *****

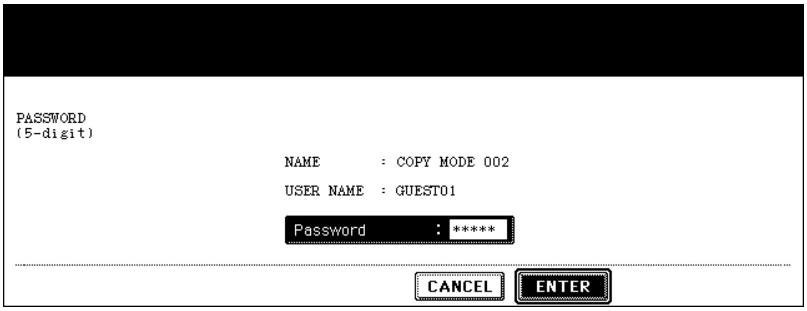
CANCEL
ENTER

5 Select the button of template to be changed, and then press the [EDIT] button.


Select a TEMPLATE
RECALL
REGISTRATION
COPY MODE 001
COPY MODE 002
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
SAVE
1/5
Next

- If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

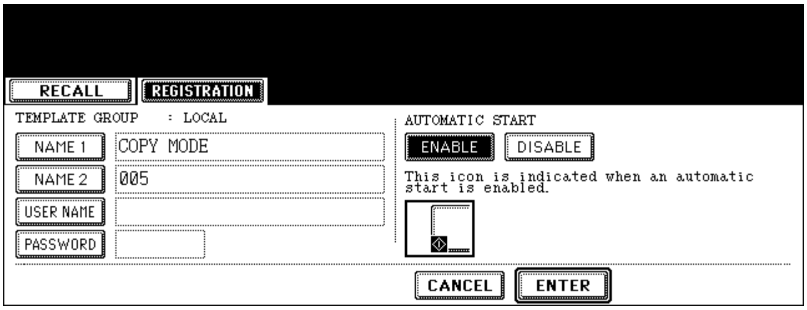
6 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PASSWORD
(5-digit)
CANCEL
ENTER

NAME : COPY MODE 002
USER NAME : GUEST01
Password : *****

- If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 7.

7 Press the [NAME1] button and the [NAME2] button, and then enter the new name of the template.

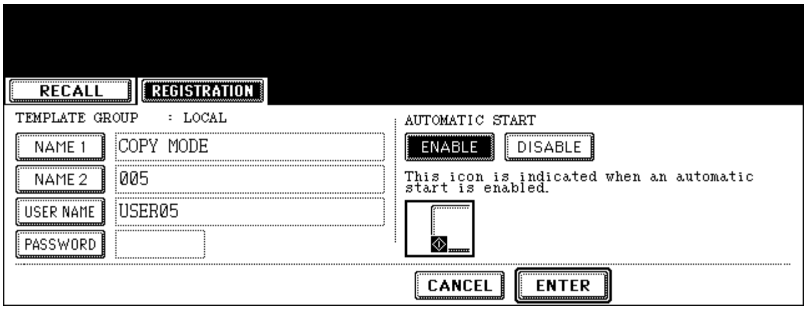

RECALL
REGISTRATION
USER NAME
PASSWORD
AUTOMATIC START
ENABLE
DISABLE
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL
NAME 1 COPY MODE
NAME 2 005

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- When the [NAME 1] or [NAME 2] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 11 characters can be entered.
- The following symbols cannot be used for [NAME 1] and [NAME 2].
  ["], [=], [|], [*], [<], [>], [?], [+], [[], []], [;], [:], [/], [\], [,], [.]

8 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the new user name of the template.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
NAME 1
NAME 2
USER NAME
PASSWORD
ENABLE
DISABLE
CANCEL
ENTER

TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL

NAME 1: COPY MODE

NAME 2: 005

USER NAME: USER05

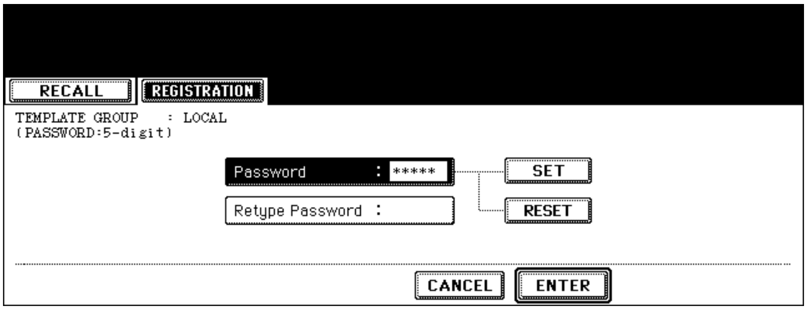
PASSWORD:

AUTOMATIC START

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Up to 30 characters can be entered.

9 Key in the new password in “Password”, and then press the [SET] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

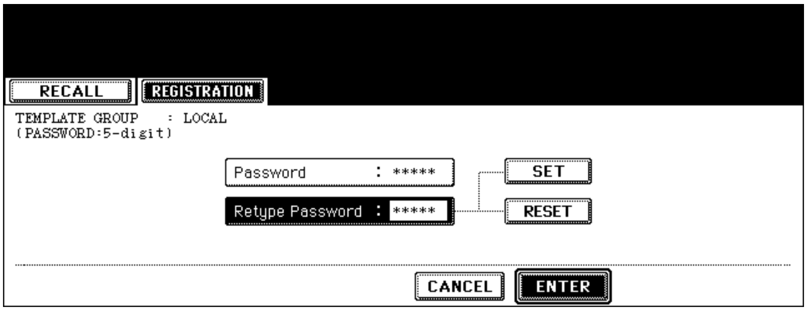
TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL
(PASSWORD:5-digit)

Password : *****

Retype Password :

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, “Retype Password” becomes highlighted.

10 Key in the password in “Retype Password”, and then press the [ENTER] button.


RECALL
REGISTRATION
SET
RESET
CANCEL
ENTER

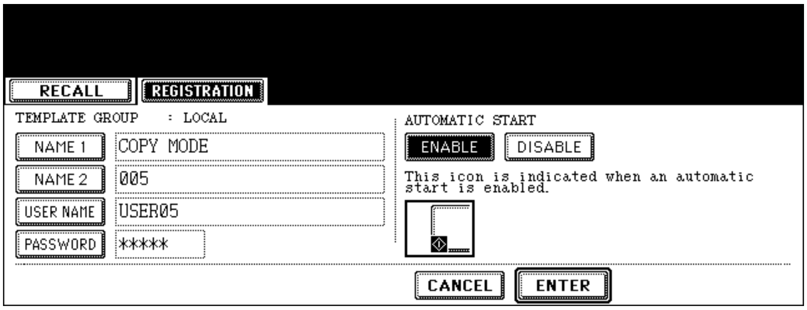
TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL
(PASSWORD:5-digit)

Password : *****

Retype Password : *****

- * (asterisk) is displayed in “Retype Password” when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

11 Change the setting of “AUTOMATIC START” for recalling the template.



TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL

NAME 1: COPY MODE

NAME 2: 005

USER NAME: USER05

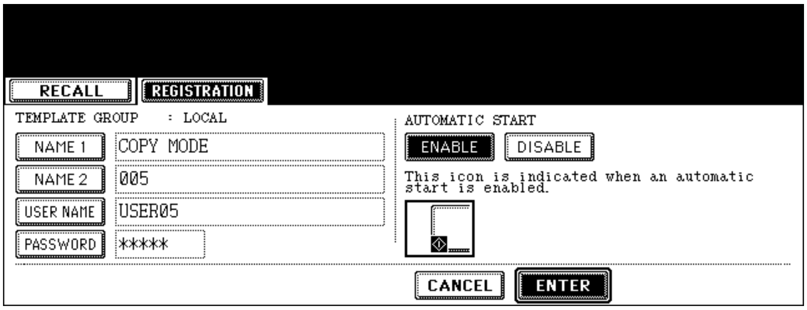
PASSWORD: *****

AUTOMATIC START: ● ENABLE ○ DISABLE

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- Press the [ENABLE] or [DISABLE] button.
- When [ENABLE] is selected, the ◈ icon is added to the template button. (The operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button with the ◈ icon when the template is recalled. However, if a password is set for the template, you need to key it in when an operation with the function set to the template is performed, though automatic start is enabled.)

12 Press the [ENTER] button.



TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL

NAME 1: COPY MODE

NAME 2: 005

USER NAME: USER05

PASSWORD: *****

AUTOMATIC START: ● ENABLE ○ DISABLE

This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.

- The data of the template are changed.

4. Recalling Templates

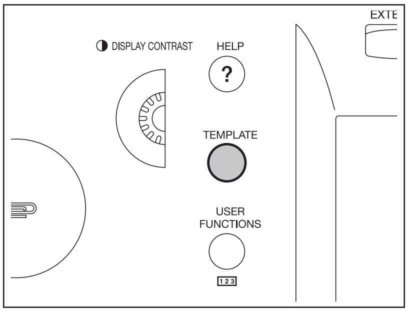
When a template is recalled, the registered setting functions of the template are reflected in the equipment.
If [ENABLE] is selected for “AUTOMATIC START” when the template is registered, operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button.

When recalling a template in a public group

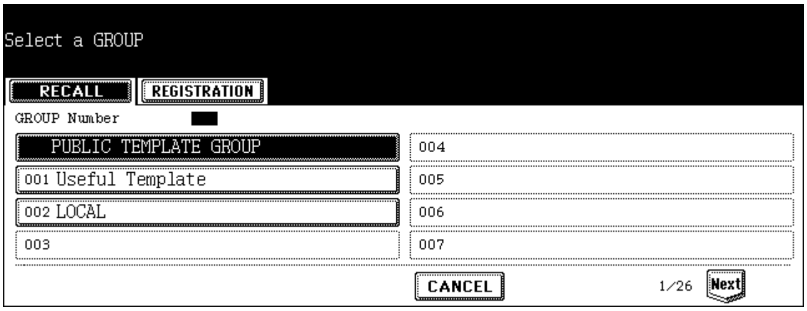
1. **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2. **Place the original(s).**

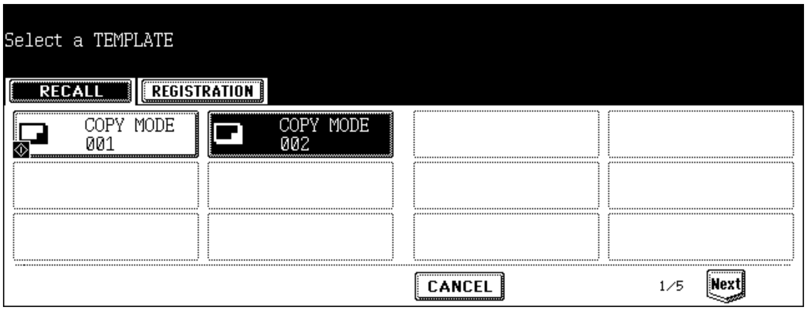
3. **Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.**


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

4. **Press the [PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP].**


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
CANCEL
1/26
Next

5 Press the desired template button.

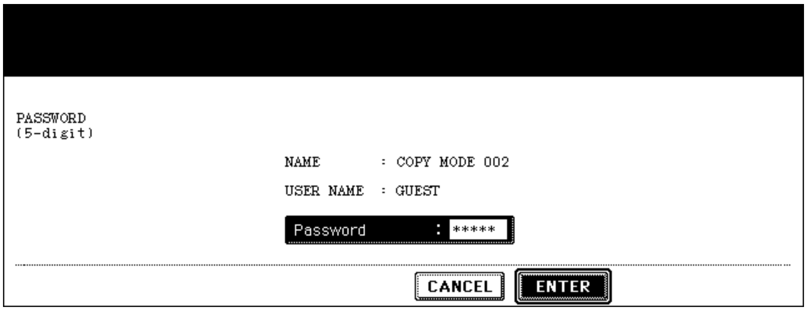


Select a TEMPLATE

RECALL
REGISTRATION
COPY MODE 001
COPY MODE 002
CANCEL
1/5
Next

- If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- If you press the template button with the ◈ icon, the operation of the registered setting functions is automatically started.

6 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.



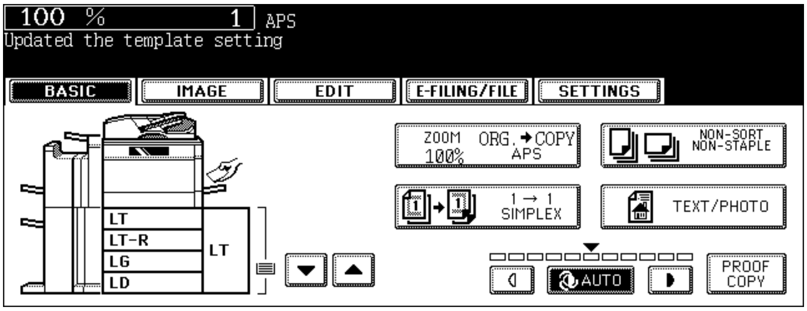
PASSWORD
(5-digit)

NAME : COPY MODE 002
USER NAME : GUEST
Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 7.

7 Confirm that “Updated the template setting” appears on the menu.



100 % 1 APS
Updated the template setting

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- The message appears for approx. 3 seconds.
- Select other copy modes as required.

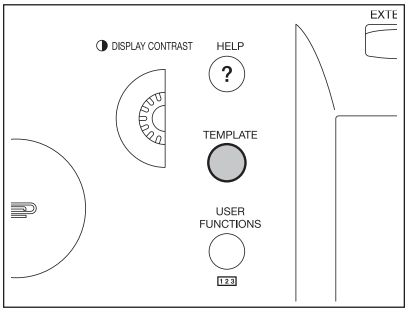
8 Press the [START] button.

When recalling a template in a user group

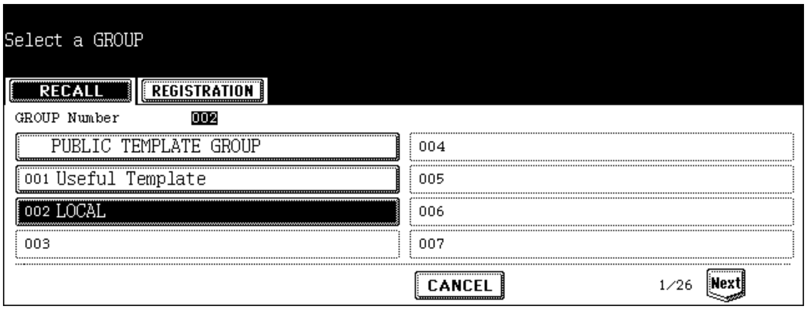
1 **Place paper in the drawer(s).**

2 **Place the original(s).**

3 **Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.**

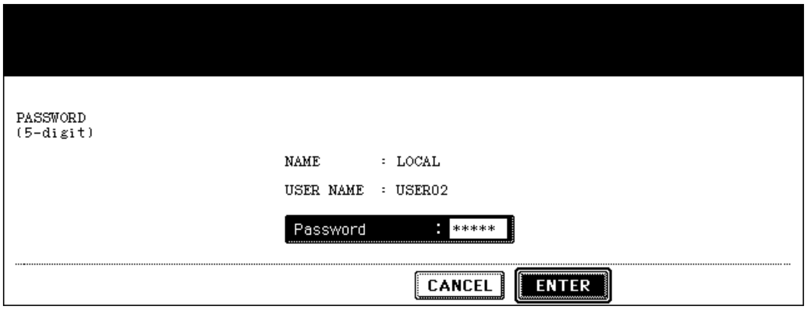

EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

4 **Select the user group in which the template to be recalled is registered.**


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number 002
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
CANCEL
1/26
Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

5 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.



PASSWORD
(5-digit)

NAME : LOCAL

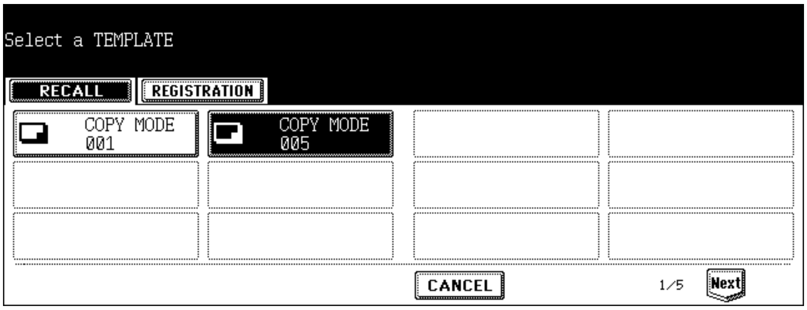
USER NAME : USER02

Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 6.

6 Press the desired template button.

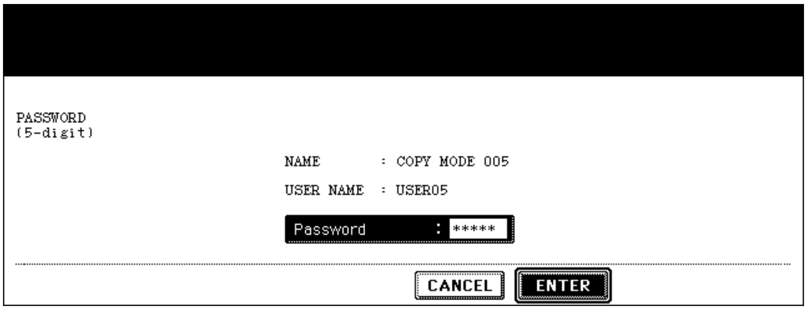


Select a TEMPLATE

RECALL
REGISTRATION
COPY MODE 001
COPY MODE 005
CANCEL
1/5
Next

- If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- If you press the template button with the ◈ icon, the operation of the registered setting functions is automatically started.

7 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.



PASSWORD
(5-digit)

NAME : COPY MODE 005

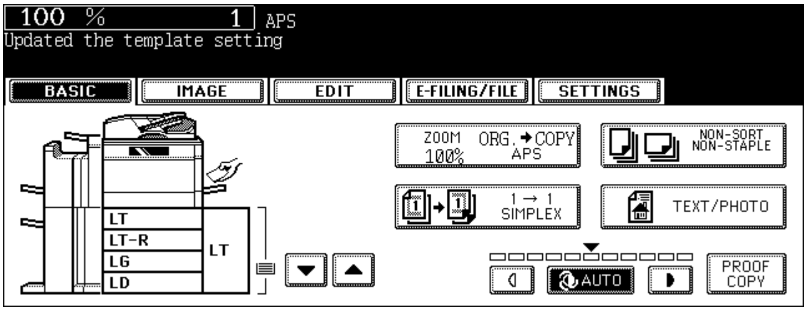
USER NAME : USER05

Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 8.

8 Confirm that “Updated the template setting” appears on the menu.



100 % 1 APS

Updated the template setting

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

- The message appears for approx. 3 seconds.
- Select other copy modes as required.

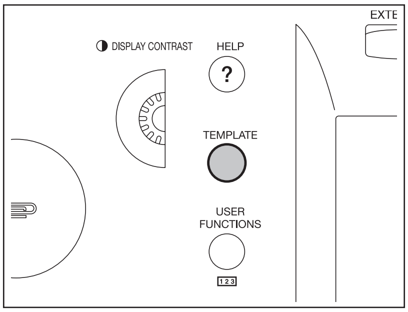
9 Press the [START] button.

5. Deleting User Groups or Templates

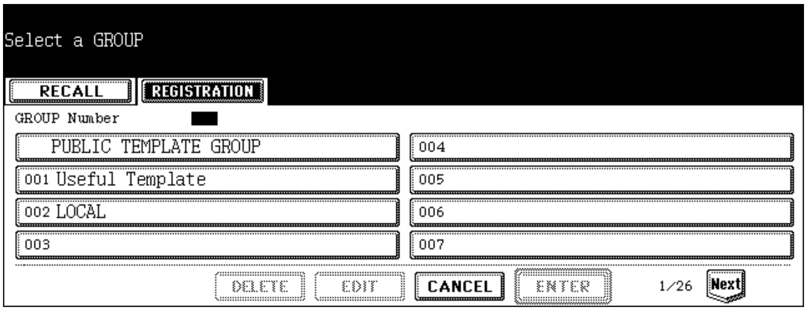
Unnecessary user groups and templates can be deleted. If a user group is deleted, all templates in the user group are also deleted.

Deleting a user group

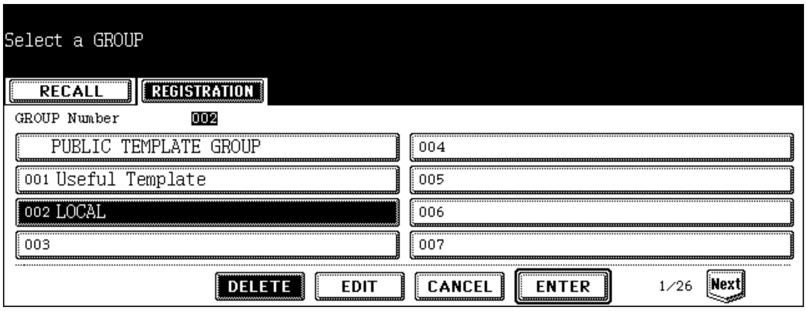
1 **Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.**


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 **Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.**

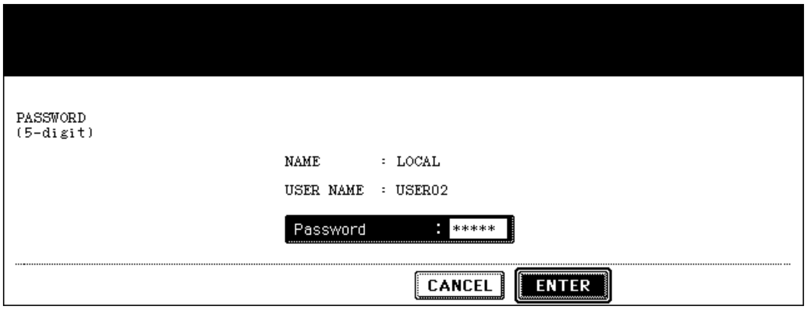

Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

3 **Select the user group you want to delete, and then press the [DELETE] button.**


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number 002
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

4 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PASSWORD
(5-digit)

NAME : LOCAL

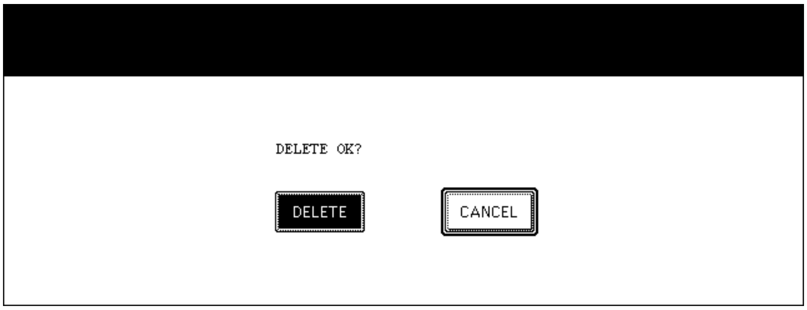
USER NAME : USER02

Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.

5 "DELETE OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.

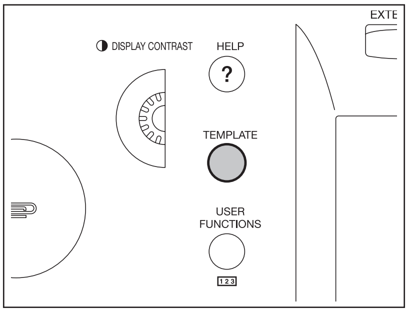

DELETE OK?

DELETE
CANCEL

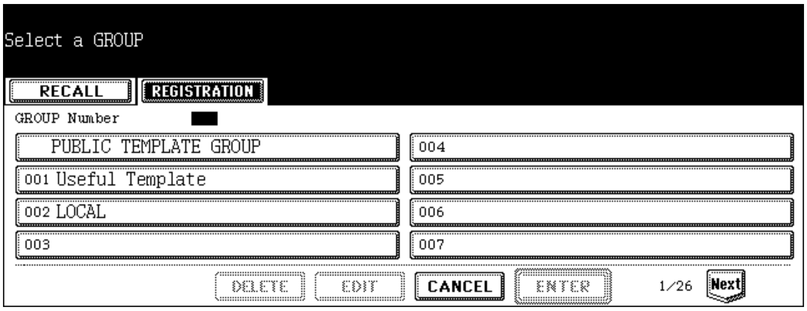
- The selected user group is deleted.

Deleting a template

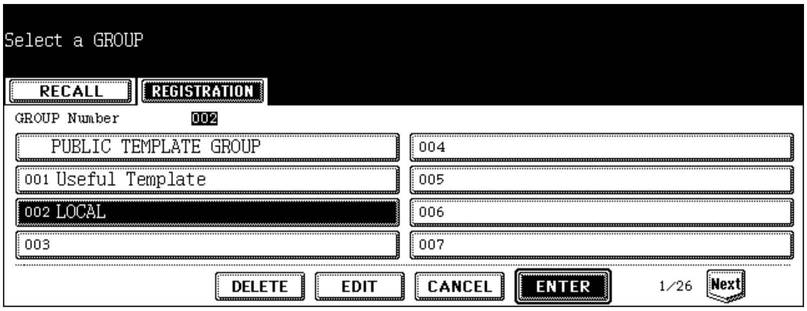
1 Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

2 Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
GROUP Number
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

3 Select the group in which the template to be deleted is registered, and then press the [ENTER] button.


Select a GROUP
RECALL
REGISTRATION
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP
001 Useful Template
002 LOCAL
003
004
005
006
007
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
ENTER
1/26
Next

GROUP Number 002

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

4 Enter the password, and then press the [ENTER] button.

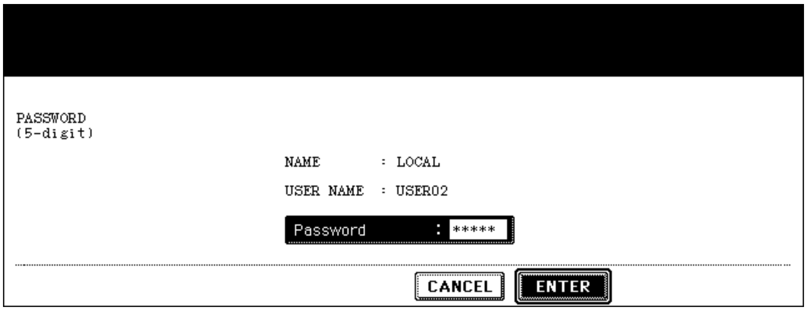
When the public group is selected:

Press the [PASSWORD] button, and then key in the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits) with the keys on the letter entry menu and the digital keys.

- If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.

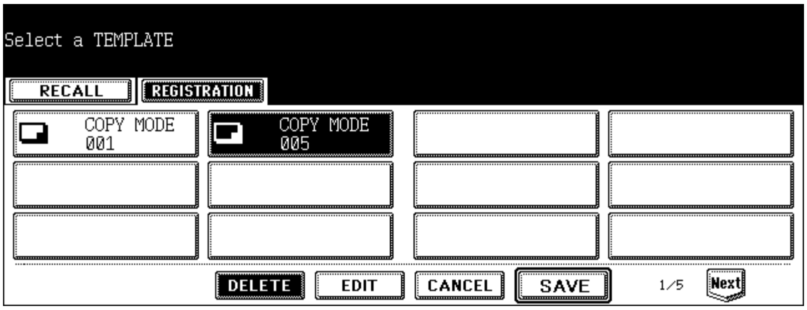
When the user group is selected:

Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group. (If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.)


PASSWORD
(5-digit)
CANCEL
ENTER

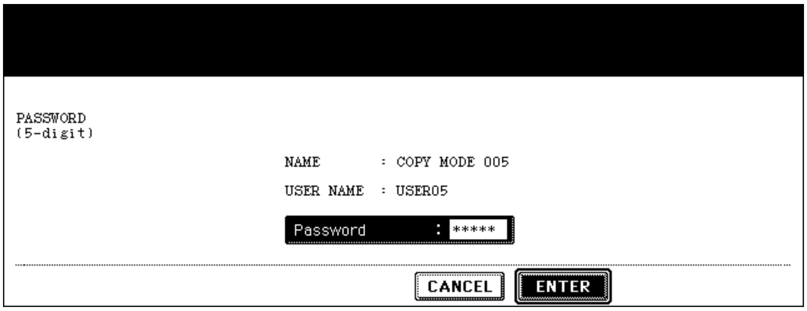
NAME : LOCAL
USER NAME : USER02
Password : *****

5 Select the button of template you want to delete, and then press the [DELETE] button.


Select a TEMPLATE
RECALL
REGISTRATION
COPY MODE 001
COPY MODE 005
DELETE
EDIT
CANCEL
SAVE
1/5
Next

- If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

6 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.

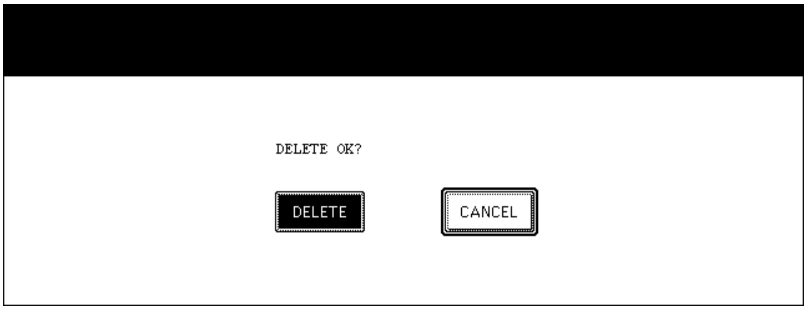

PASSWORD
(5-digit)

NAME : COPY MODE 005
USER NAME : USER05
Password : *****

CANCEL
ENTER

- If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 7.

7 "DELETE OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.


DELETE OK?

DELETE
CANCEL

- The selected template is deleted.

8. JOB STATUS

1. Job Status 252
2. Confirming Print Job Status 253
    - Print jobs 254
    - Proof print jobs 257
    - Private print jobs 260
    - When using department codes 263
3. Confirming Scan Job Status 266
4. Log List 267
    - Confirming job history in log list 268
    - Registering into address book from log lists 272
    - Printing journals (send/receive log list) 274
5. Print Status Display 275
6. Error Code 278

1. Job Status

When you press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel, the job status menu is displayed. The following information can be confirmed on this menu.

- Status of jobs (print, fax, Internet Fax and scan) in waiting
- Log list of jobs (print, sending/receiving, scan) performed
- Print status

You can also start, pause, release, delete and move the job which is in waiting.

- For the status confirmation of Fax jobs, see the Operator’s Manual for Facsimile Function.

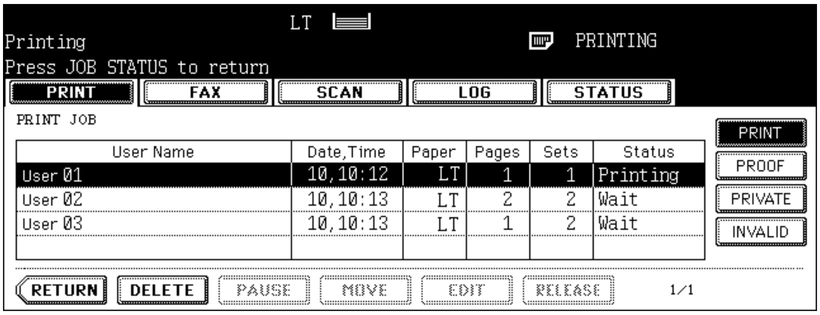
Tips

- When the equipment is managed under the user management function (📖 P.36), enter the user information (e.g. user name, password) before pressing the [JOB STATUS] button.
- The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary for the scanning function.
- The FAX Unit (optional) is necessary for the Fax function.
- The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary for the Internet Fax and E-mail functions.
- The Printer Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary for printing from a client PC through the network.

---

2. Confirming Print Job Status

You can confirm the status of the print job. The following information is displayed in a list.


LT
PRINTING
PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

Printing
Press JOB STATUS to return

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1	Printing
User 02	10,10:13	LT	2	2	Wait
User 03	10,10:13	LT	1	2	Wait

User Name: Name of user for whom the job was registered
Date, Time: Date and time the job was registered
Paper: Paper size to be printed
Pages: Number of pages to be printed
Sets: Number of sets to be printed
Status: Status of jobs ("Scheduled" is displayed for the scheduled print.)

Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 250 pages (1000 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

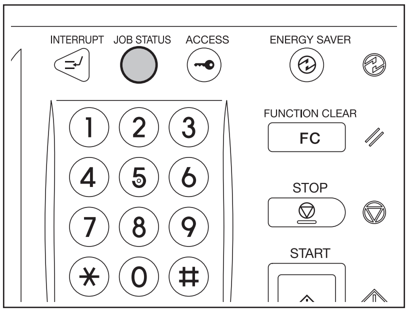
Print jobs

Copying and printing of the document, and printing of an E-mail, etc. are called print jobs.
Print jobs can be deleted, paused and released, moved, and printed on the print job list.

Displaying print job list

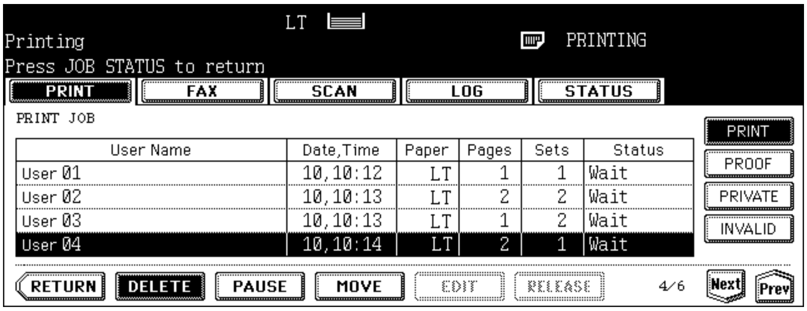
1 **Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.**

- The print job list is displayed.


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START

Deleting print jobs

1 **Select the job you want to delete on the print job list, then press the [DELETE] button.**


LT
PRINTING
PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
4/6
Next
Prev

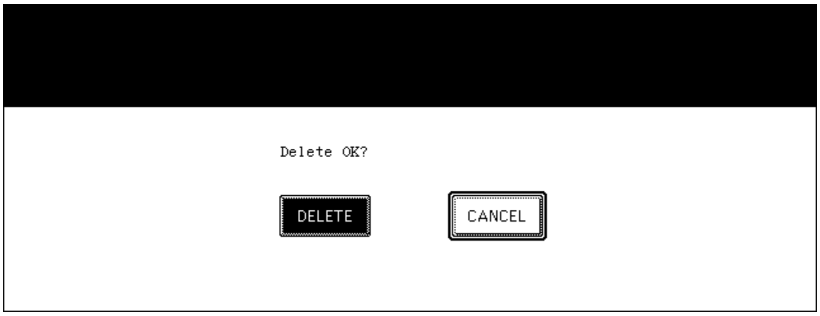
Printing
Press JOB STATUS to return

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1	Wait
User 02	10,10:13	LT	2	2	Wait
User 03	10,10:13	LT	1	2	Wait
User 04	10,10:14	LT	2	1	Wait

- If the subject job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

2 **“Delete OK?” appears. Press the [DELETE] button.**


DELETE
CANCEL

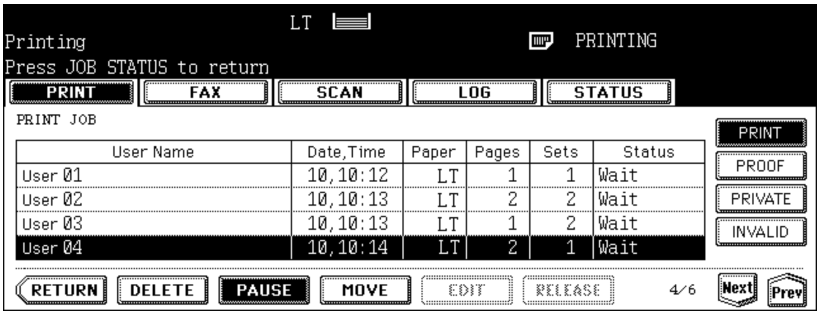
Delete OK?

- The job is deleted.

Pausing print jobs

The 11th job or later counting from the one in progress can be paused.

1 Select the job you want to pause on the print job list, then press the [PAUSE] button.


LT
PRINTING
PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
4/6
Next
Prev

Printing
Press JOB STATUS to return

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1	Wait
User 02	10,10:13	LT	2	2	Wait
User 03	10,10:13	LT	1	2	Wait
User 04	10,10:14	LT	2	1	Wait

- When the [PAUSE] button is pressed, the display of this button changes to [RESUME].
- When the job is paused, the next job is started.

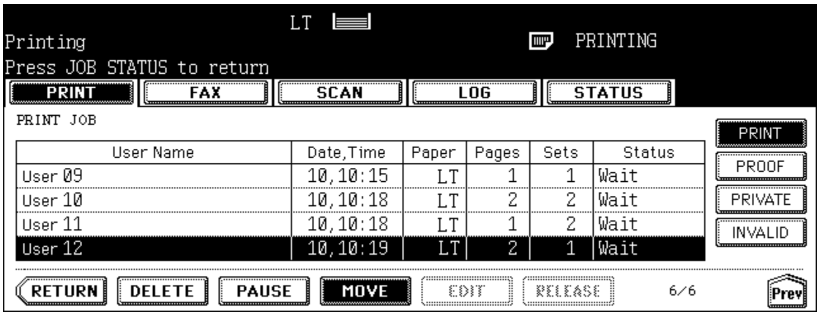
Releasing print job

Press the [RESUME] button. A job once paused will not be printed out unless the [RESUME] button is pressed.

Moving print jobs

The job in waiting can be moved to a specified position. However, this is available only at the 11th job or later counting from the one in progress.

1 Select the job you want to move on the print job list, then press the [MOVE] button.


LT
PRINTING
PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
6/6
Prev

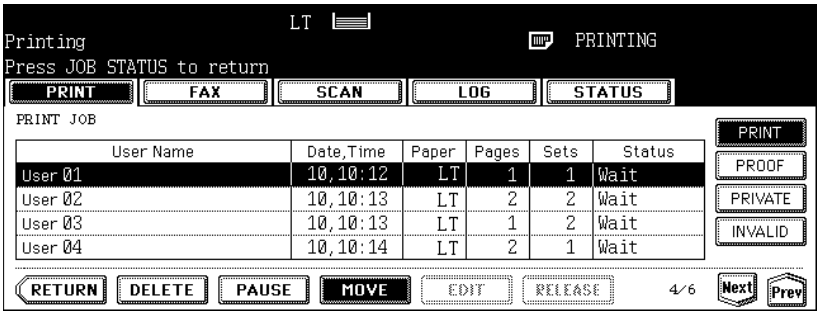
Printing
Press JOB STATUS to return

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User 09	10,10:15	LT	1	1	Wait
User 10	10,10:18	LT	2	2	Wait
User 11	10,10:18	LT	1	2	Wait
User 12	10,10:19	LT	2	1	Wait

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

2 **Select the position where you want to move the job. (The job comes right under the job you selected on the list.)**

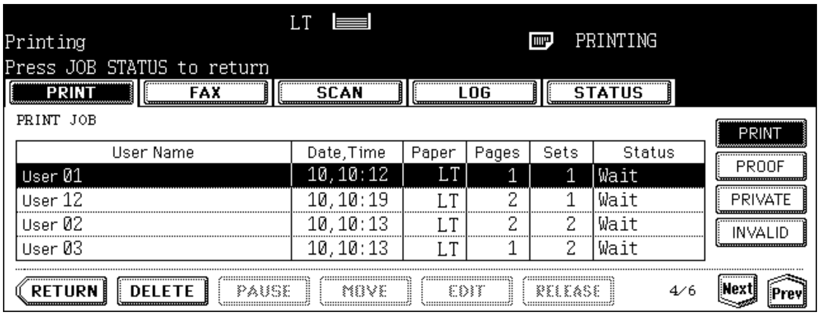

LT
PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
4/6
Next
Prev

Printing
Press JOB STATUS to return

PRINTING

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1	Wait
User 02	10,10:13	LT	2	2	Wait
User 03	10,10:13	LT	1	2	Wait
User 04	10,10:14	LT	2	1	Wait


LT
PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
4/6
Next
Prev

Printing
Press JOB STATUS to return

PRINTING

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1	Wait
User 12	10,10:19	LT	2	1	Wait
User 02	10,10:13	LT	2	2	Wait
User 03	10,10:13	LT	1	2	Wait

Proof print jobs

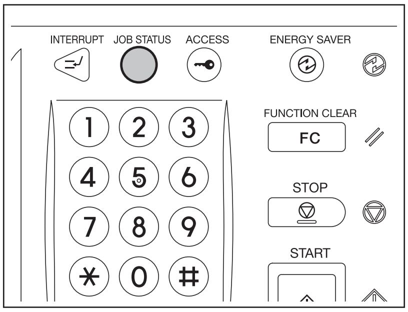
"Proof print" is a function to print only 1 set as a proof print when you print more than one set of documents from a client PC on the network before you print out all the sets of the documents.
You can check this proof print and then select whether you print the rest of the documents or quit printing to change the setting on the proof print job list. If you want to print the rest, you can change the number of printouts.

- For details of proof print, see the Printing Guide.

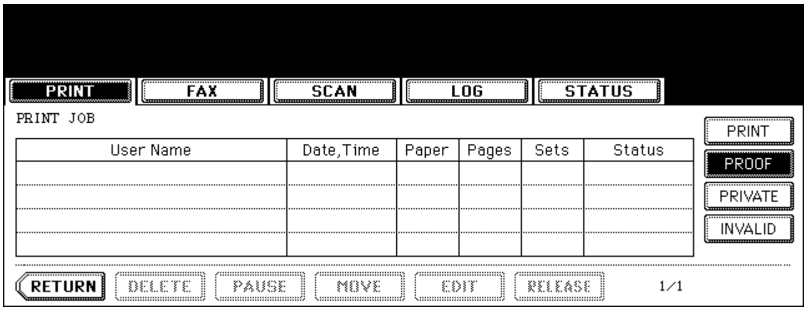
Displaying proof print job list

1 **Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.**

- The print job list is displayed.


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#

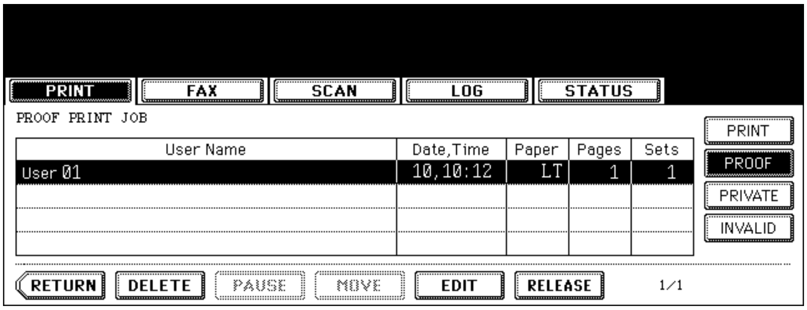
2 **Press the [PROOF] button.**


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT JOB
User Name
Date,Time
Paper
Pages
Sets
Status
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

- The proof print job list is displayed.

Continuing printing after proof printing

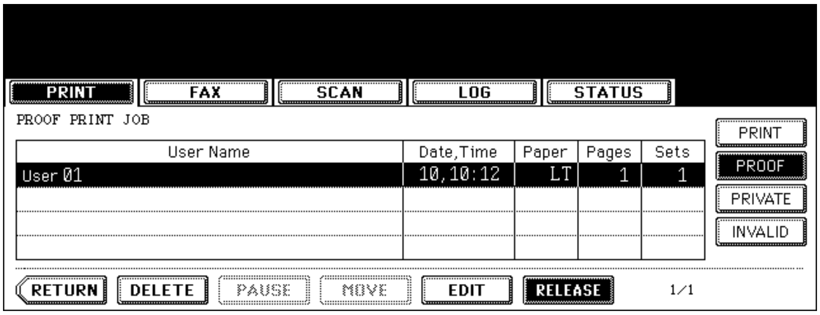
1 Select the job you want to print on the proof print job list.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PROOF PRINT JOB
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

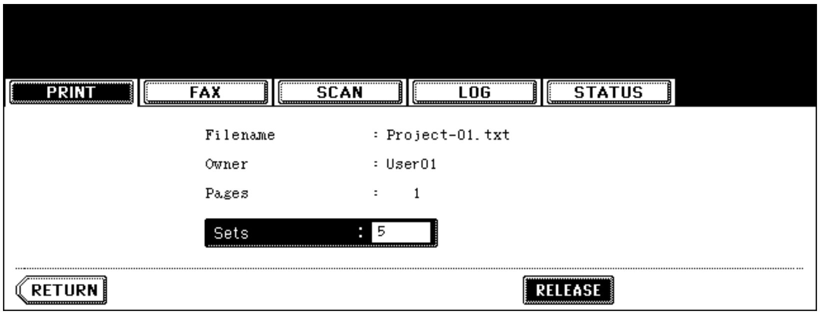
2 Press the [RELEASE] button.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PROOF PRINT JOB
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- Printing starts.
- The printing status can be confirmed on the print job list.

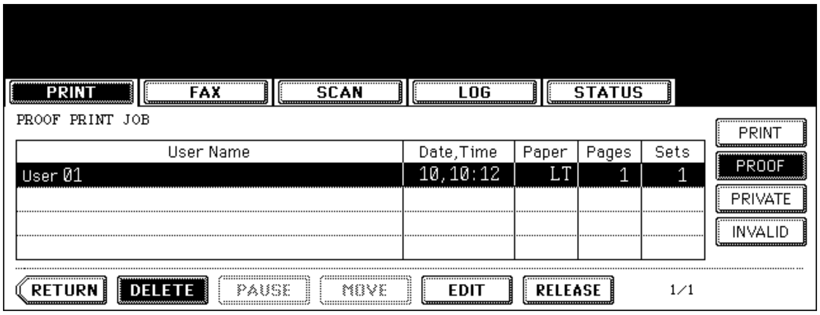
When you want to change the number of sets
When you want to change the number of sets, press the [EDIT] button and key in the desired number. Then press the [RELEASE] button to start printing.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
RETURN
RELEASE

Filename : Project-01.txt
Owner : User01
Pages : 1
Sets : 5

Deleting proof print jobs

1 **Select the job you want to delete on the proof print job list, and then press the [DELETE] button.**

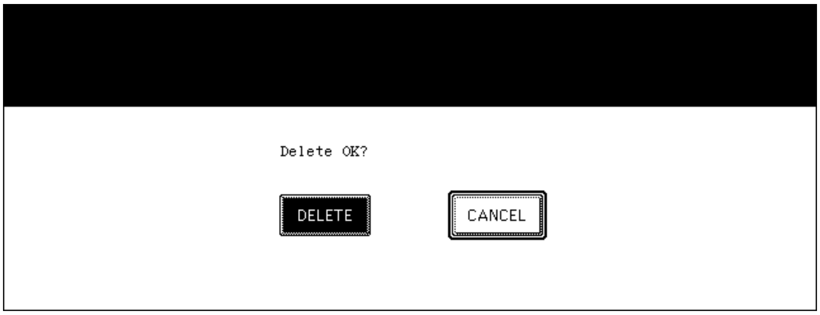

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

PROOF PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

2 **“Delete OK?” appears. Press the [DELETE] button.**


DELETE
CANCEL

Delete OK?

- The job is deleted.

Private print jobs

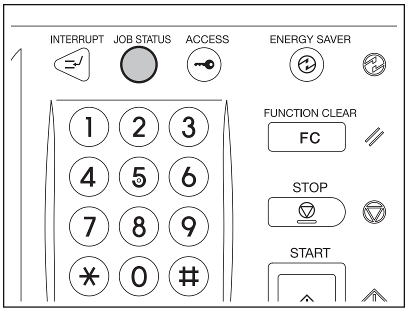
"Private print" is a function to print a document from a client PC on the network only when a previously set password is keyed in from the control panel of this equipment. This function is useful when you want to print confidential documents.

- For details of private print jobs, see the Printing Guide.

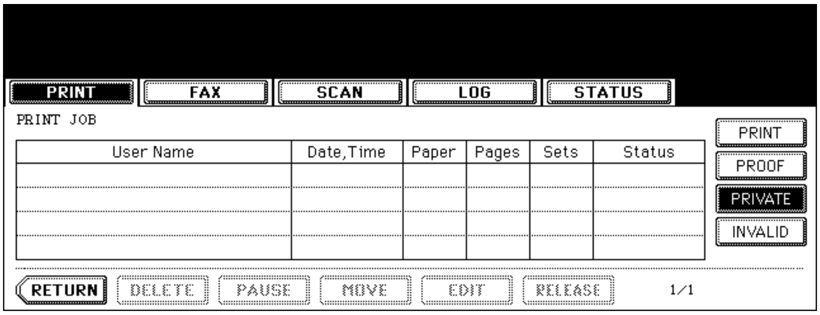
Displaying private print job list

1 **Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.**

- The print job list is displayed.


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#

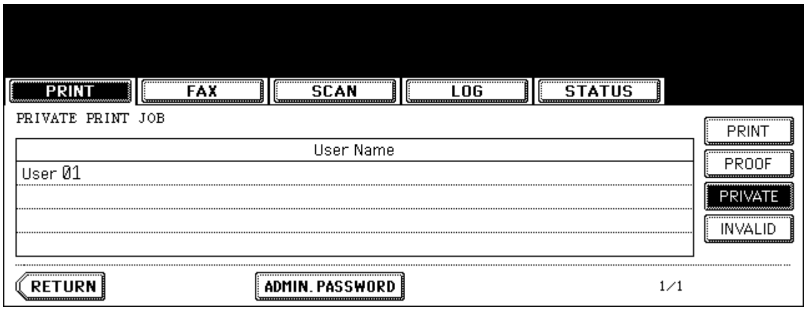
2 **Press the [PRIVATE] button.**


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status

3 **Select the appropriate user name.**

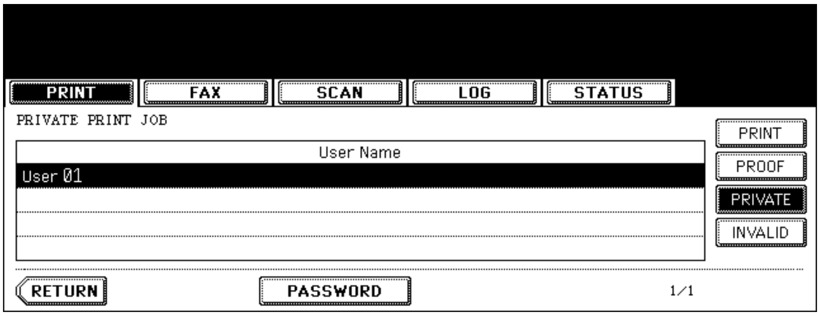

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
ADMIN. PASSWORD
1/1

PRIVATE PRINT JOB

User Name
User 01

- When you perform the operation as an administrator, do not press the user name but press the [ADMIN. PASSWORD] button. The letter entry menu (📖 P.33 "Setting letters") appears and you can enter the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits). In this case, jobs can be deleted but not printed. (If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.)

4 Press the [PASSWORD] button.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
PASSWORD
1/1

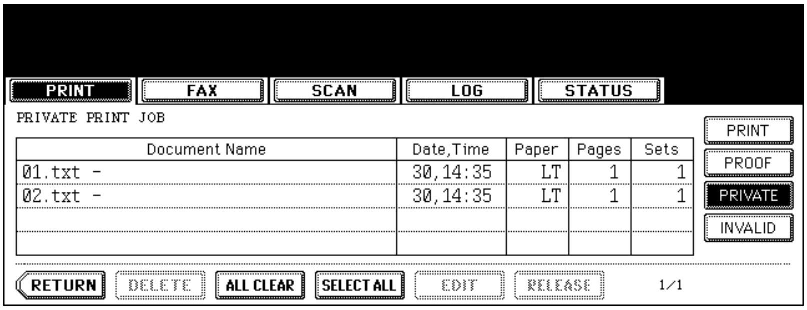
PRIVATE PRINT JOB

User Name
User 01

- The letter entry menu (P.33 “Setting letters”) is displayed. Key in the password, which has previously been set from the client PC, and then press the [ENTER] button.
- The private print job list is displayed.

Tip

A list of private print jobs for which the same password has been set appears.

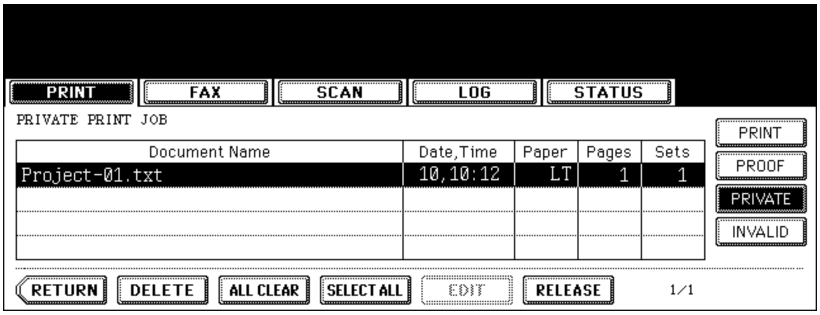

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
ALL CLEAR
SELECT ALL
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

PRIVATE PRINT JOB

Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
01.txt -	30,14:35	LT	1	1
02.txt -	30,14:35	LT	1	1

Printing private print jobs

1 Select the job you want to print on the private print job list.

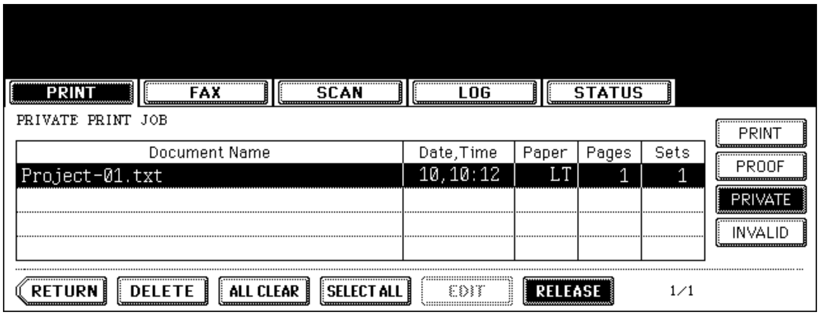

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
ALL CLEAR
SELECT ALL
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

PRIVATE PRINT JOB

Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
Project-01.txt	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.
- To select all jobs on the private print job list, press the [SELECT ALL] button. To clear the selection, press the [ALL CLEAR] button.

2 Press the [RELEASE] button.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
ALL CLEAR
SELECT ALL
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

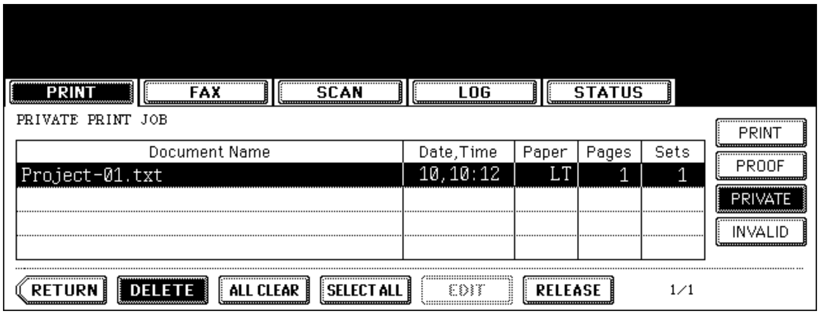
PRIVATE PRINT JOB

Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
Project-01.txt	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- Printing starts.
- The printing status can be confirmed on the print job list.

Deleting private print jobs

1 Select the job you want to delete on the private print job list, and then press the [DELETE] button.

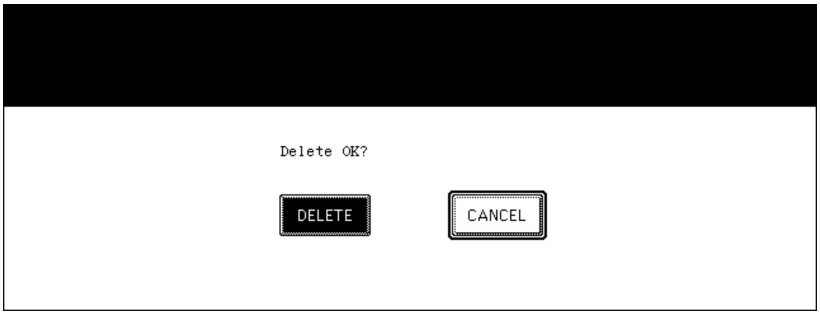

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
ALL CLEAR
SELECT ALL
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

PRIVATE PRINT JOB

Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
Project-01.txt	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.
- To select all jobs on the private print job list, press the [SELECT ALL] button. To clear the selection, press the [ALL CLEAR] button.

2 “Delete OK?” appears. Press the [DELETE] button.


Delete OK?

DELETE
CANCEL

- The job is deleted.

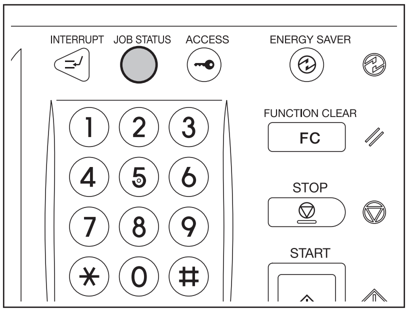
When using department codes

If the department code keyed in at printing is not correct, this job will be stored in the invalid queue (= the list of jobs with an incorrect department code or with no department code), and will not be printed out. However, the jobs stored in the invalid queue can be printed when the correct department code is newly keyed in.
A print job, whose number of pages exceeds that specified for a particular department code, will not be printed out either. In this case, contact the administrator in your office.

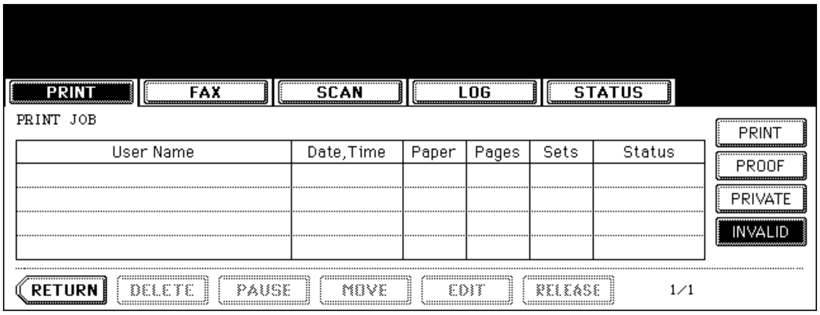
Displaying invalid queues

1 Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.

- The print job list is displayed.


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
#

2 Press the [INVALID] button.

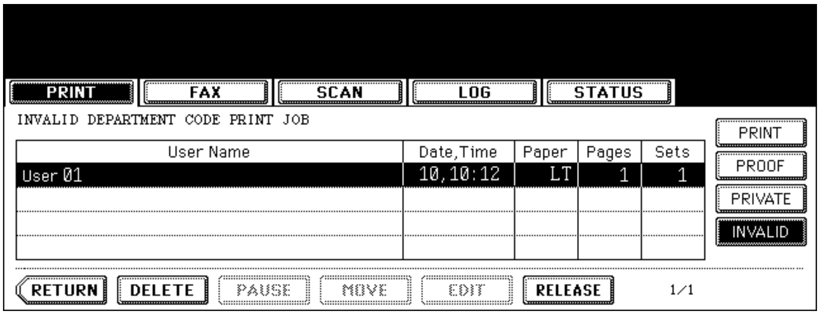

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT JOB
User Name
Date,Time
Paper
Pages
Sets
Status
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

- The menu for the invalid queue is displayed.

Keying in correct department code to print

When an incorrect department code has been keyed in at printing, you can key in the correct department code again to print the subject job.

1 Select the job you want to print on the menu for the invalid queue.

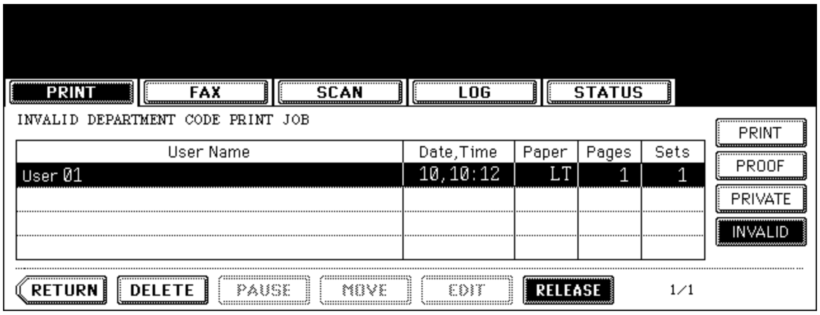

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

INVALID DEPARTMENT CODE PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- If the corresponding is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

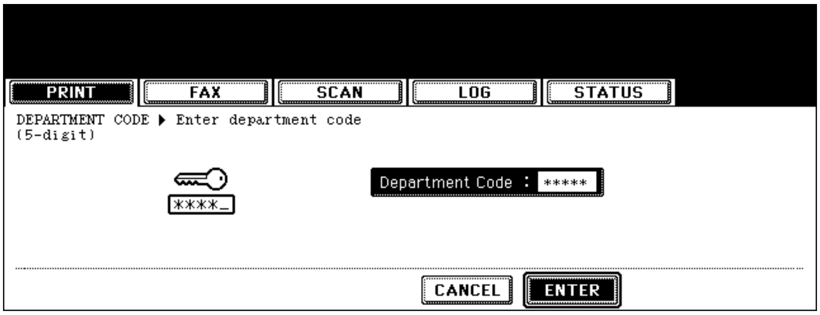
2 Press the [RELEASE] button.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

INVALID DEPARTMENT CODE PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1

3 Key in the correct department code, and then press the [ENTER] button.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
****_
CANCEL
ENTER

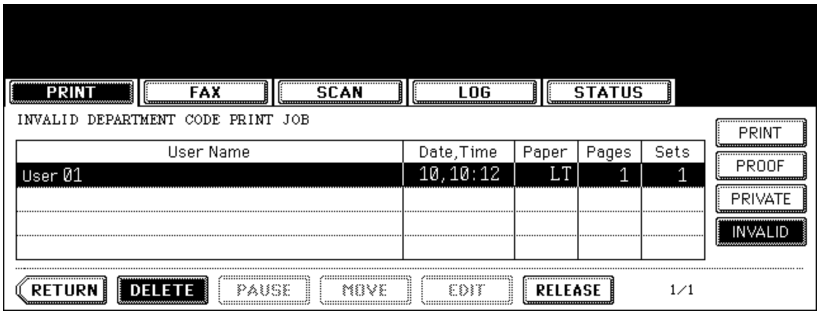
DEPARTMENT CODE ▶ Enter department code (5-digit)

Department Code : *****

- Printing starts.
- The printing status can be confirmed on the print job list.

Deleting invalid print jobs

1 **Select the job you want to delete on the menu for the invalid queue, then press the [DELETE] button.**

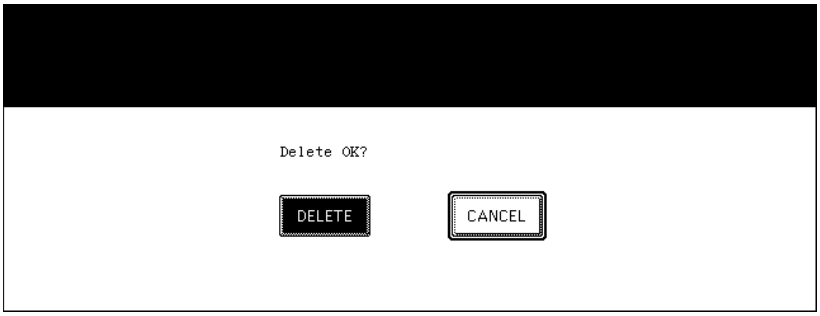

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
PROOF
PRIVATE
INVALID
RETURN
DELETE
PAUSE
MOVE
EDIT
RELEASE
1/1

INVALID DEPARTMENT CODE PRINT JOB

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User 01	10,10:12	LT	1	1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

2 **“Delete OK?” appears. Press the [DELETE] button.**


DELETE
CANCEL

Delete OK?

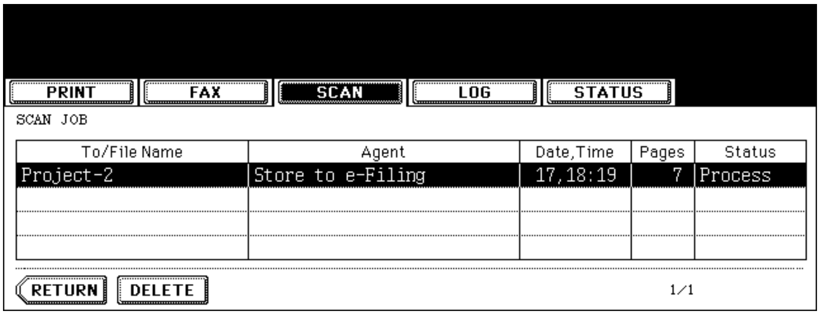
- The job is deleted.

3. Confirming Scan Job Status

You can confirm the scan job status and delete a scan job. For details, refer to the Scanning Guide.

- The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary for the scanning function.

Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel. Then press the [SCAN] button on the touch panel to display the scan job list.



SCAN JOB

To/File Name	Agent	Date,Time	Pages	Status
Project-2	Store to e-Filing	17,18:19	7	Process

The following information is displayed.

To/File Name:	Where the scanned data are to be filed or to be sent
Agent:	Agent by which performed
Date, Time:	Date and time the job was registered
Pages:	Number of originals
Status:	Status of jobs

Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 250 pages (1000 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

Deleting scan job

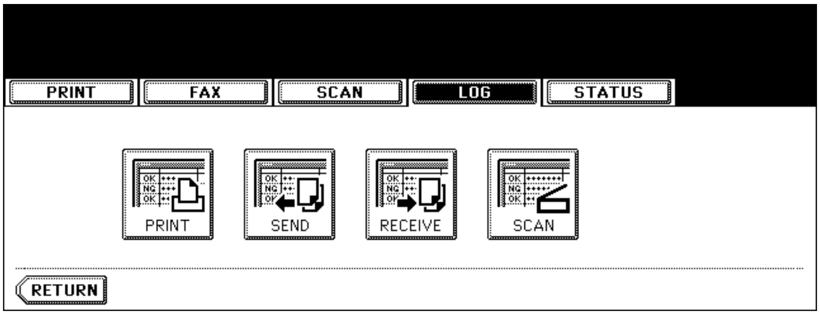
Select the job you want to delete on the scan job list, and then press the [DELETE] button.

4. Log List

You can confirm the history of each copy, print, scan, and, sending and receiving of Fax, Internet Fax and E-mail job on the log list.
You can also register unregistered Fax numbers or E-mail addresses into the address book from the log list of the Fax and Internet Fax, or the log list of scan jobs.

- The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary for the scanning function.
- The FAX Unit (optional) is necessary for the Fax function.
- The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary for the Internet Fax and E-mail functions.
- The Printer Kit (optional) is necessary for printing from a client PC through the network.

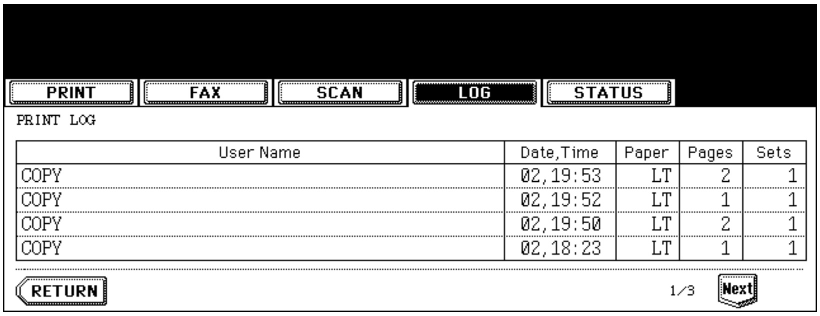
When you press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel and the [LOG] button on the touch panel, the log menu is displayed.



Confirming job history in log list

Print log

When you press the [PRINT] button on the log menu, the history of copy jobs and print jobs is displayed.



PRINT LOG

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
COPY	02,19:53	LT	2	1
COPY	02,19:52	LT	1	1
COPY	02,19:50	LT	2	1
COPY	02,18:23	LT	1	1

The following information is displayed.

User Name: Name of the senders of the copy/print job
Date, Time: Date and time the job was printed
Paper: Paper size printed
Pages: Number of pages of the copy/print job
Sets: Number of sets printed

Tip

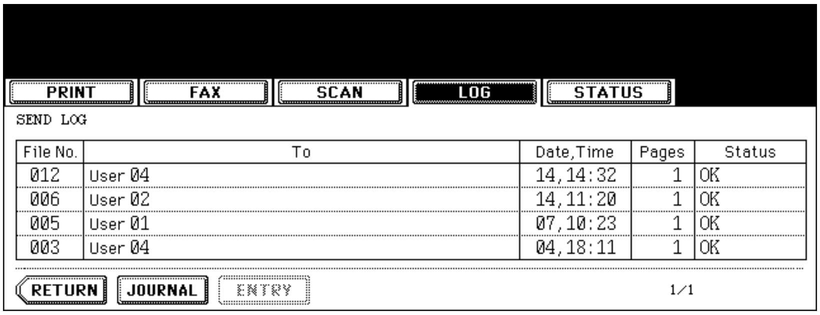
4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 30 pages (120 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following button is displayed.

[RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.

Send log

When you press the [SEND] button on the log menu, the sending history of Fax jobs and Internet Fax jobs is displayed. (The Fax function and the Internet Fax function are both optional.)



SEND LOG

File No.	To	Date,Time	Pages	Status
012	User 04	14,14:32	1	OK
006	User 02	14,11:20	1	OK
005	User 01	07,10:23	1	OK
003	User 04	04,18:11	1	OK

The following information is displayed.

File No.: Order of job registered
To: Recipient’s Fax number or E-mail address of Internet Fax
Date, Time: Date and time the Fax or Internet Fax was sent
Pages: Number of pages of the Fax or Internet Fax sent
Status: Result is displayed as “OK” or in error codes.
(For the error codes, see 📖 P.278 “6.Error Code”.)

Tip

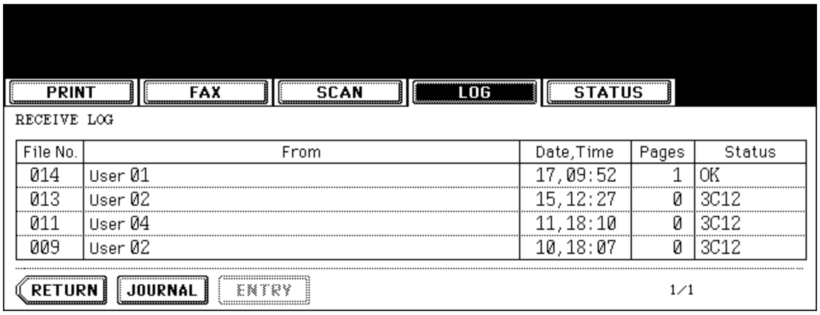
4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 10 pages (40 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following buttons are displayed.

[JOURNAL]: Press this button to print the history of sent jobs (= journal). (For details, see 📖 P.274 “Printing journals (send/receive log list)”.)
[ENTRY]: Press this button to register unregistered Fax numbers or E-mail addresses on the send log list into the address book. (For details, see 📖 P.272 “Registering into address book from log lists”.)
[RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.

Receive log

When you press the [RECEIVE] button on the log menu, the receiving history of Fax jobs, Internet Fax jobs and E-mail jobs is displayed. (The Fax function and the Internet Fax function are both optional.)



RECEIVE LOG

File No.	From	Date,Time	Pages	Status
014	User 01	17,09:52	1	OK
013	User 02	15,12:27	0	3C12
011	User 04	11,18:10	0	3C12
009	User 02	10,18:07	0	3C12

The following information is displayed.

File No.: Order of job registered
From: Sender’s Fax number or E-mail address of Internet Fax
Date, Time: Date and time the Fax, Internet Fax or E-mail was received
Pages: Number of pages of the Fax, Internet Fax or E-mail received
Status: Result is displayed as “OK” or in error codes.
(For the error codes, see 📖 P.278 “6.Error Code”.)

Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 10 pages (40 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

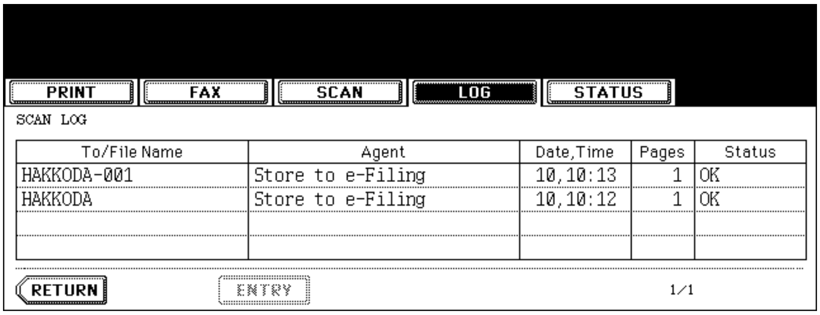
The following buttons are displayed.

[JOURNAL]: Press this button to print the history of received jobs (= journal). (For details, see 📖 P.274 “Printing journals (send/receive log list)”.)
[ENTRY]: Press this button to register unregistered Fax numbers or E-mail addresses on the receive log list into the address book. (For details, see 📖 P.272 “Registering into address book from log lists”.)
[RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.

Scan log

When you press the [SCAN] button on the log menu, the histories of the following items are displayed.

- Job filed in e-Filing by copying
- Job filed in a shared folder by copying (= SAVE AS FILE) (The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary.)
- Job filed in e-Filing or a shared folder by scanning (= SCAN TO FILE) (The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary.)
- E-mail sent by scanning (= SCAN TO E-MAIL) (The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary.)
- Remote Scan (The Scanner Kit or the Printer/Scanner Kit (both optional) is necessary.)



SCAN LOG

To/File Name	Agent	Date,Time	Pages	Status
HAKKODA-001	Store to e-Filing	10,10:13	1	OK
HAKKODA	Store to e-Filing	10,10:12	1	OK

The following information is displayed.

To/File Name:	Where the scanned data are to be filed or sent
Agent:	Agent by which performed
Date, Time:	Date and time the scan job was performed
Pages:	Number of pages of job scanned or E-mailed
Status:	Result is displayed as “OK” or in error codes. (For the error codes, see 🕮 P.278 “6.Error Code”.)

Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 30 pages (120 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following buttons are displayed.

[ENTRY]:	Press this button to register unregistered E-mail addresses on the scan log list into the address book. (For details, see 🕮 P.272 “Registering into address book from log lists”.)
[RETURN]:	Press this button to return to the log menu.

Registering into address book from log lists

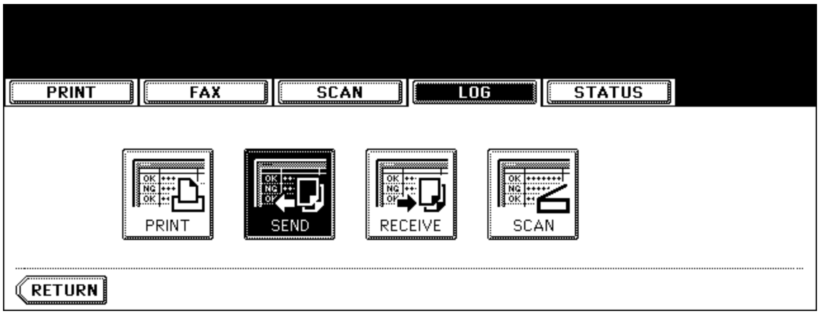
You can register Fax numbers and E-mail addresses, which have not yet been registered, into the address book from the send, receive or scan log list.

The following information can be registered from the Send log:
- Remote FAX number which was dialed by direct entry using the digital keys, or which was searched for by the LDAP server
- E-mail address which was manually entered, or which was searched for by the LDAP server

The following information can be registered from the Receive log:
- Remote FAX number which was dialed by direct entry using the digital keys, or which was searched for by the LDAP server for a Polling Reception
- E-mail address of the sender

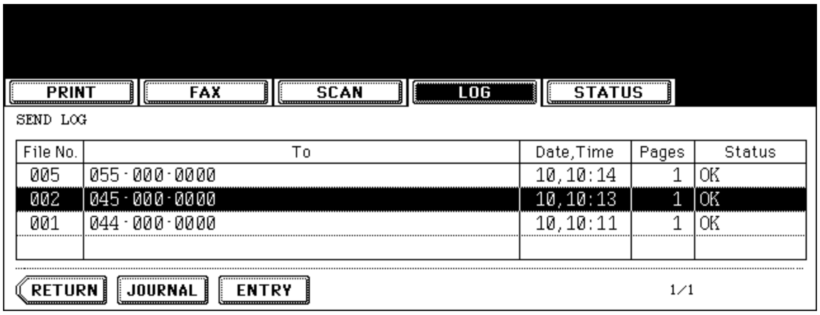
The following information can be registered from the Scan log:
- E-mail address which was manually entered, or which was searched for by the LDAP server

1 Press the [SEND] (or [RECEIVE] or [SCAN]) button on the log menu.



- The send (or receive or scan) log list is displayed.

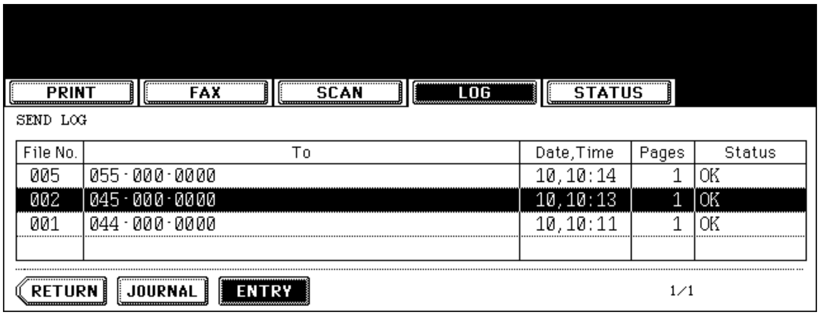
2 Select the job which includes the Fax number or E-mail address you want to register into the address book.



SEND LOG

File No.	To	Date,Time	Pages	Status
005	055-000-0000	10,10:14	1	OK
002	045-000-0000	10,10:13	1	OK
001	044-000-0000	10,10:11	1	OK

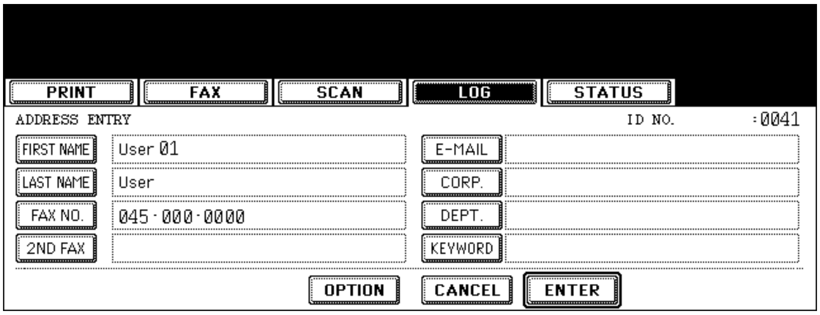
3 Press the [ENTRY] button.



SEND LOG

File No.	To	Date,Time	Pages	Status
005	055-000-0000	10,10:14	1	OK
002	045-000-0000	10,10:13	1	OK
001	044-000-0000	10,10:11	1	OK

4 Enter the following information. (You need to enter at least either of [FIRST NAME] or [LAST NAME], and either of [FAX NO.] or [E-MAIL].)



ADDRESS ENTRY

ID NO. :0041

FIRST NAME: User 01
LAST NAME: User
FAX NO.: 045-000-0000
2ND FAX:
E-MAIL:
CORP.:
DEPT.:
KEYWORD:

- **FIRST NAME:** Enter the first name. The entered first name is displayed in the address book list on the touch panel.
- **LAST NAME:** Enter the last name. The entered last name is displayed in the address book list on the touch panel.
- **FAX NO.:** Enter the Fax number.
- **2ND FAX:** Enter the second Fax number.
- **E-MAIL:** Enter the E-mail address.
- **CORP.:** Enter the company name.
- **DEPT.:** Enter the department name.
- **KEYWORD:** Enter a keyword with which you can search for the desired contact.

Tip

When you press any of the above, the letter entry menu (📖 P.33) is displayed. Enter the information with the buttons on this menu and the digital keys on the control panel.

5 Press the [ENTER] button.

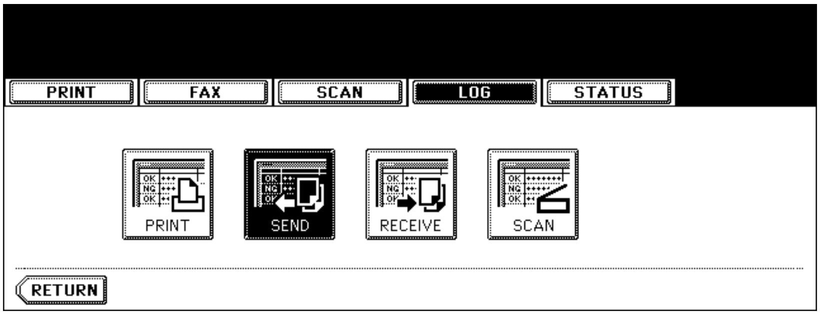
- The information has been registered in the address book.
- For details of the address book, see the User Functions Guide.

Printing journals (send/receive log list)

You can print the send and receive log lists of the Fax job. The 40 latest send-and-receive logs (1 page), or the 120 latest send-and-receive logs (3 pages) can be printed out. You can also select and print only 1 log.

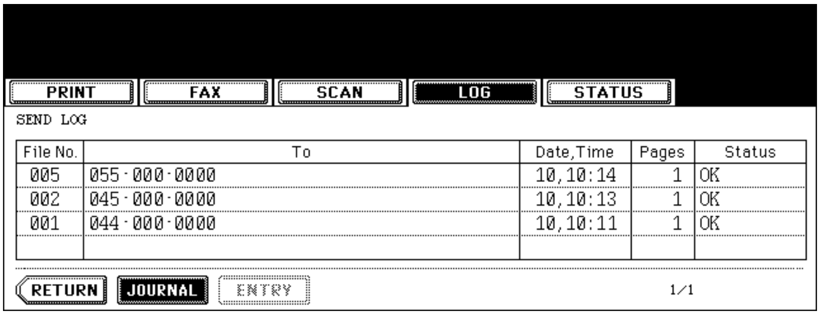
- For details, see the Operator's Manual for Facsimile Function.

1 Press the [SEND] (or [RECEIVE]) button on the log menu.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
PRINT
SEND
RECEIVE
SCAN
RETURN

- The send (receive) log list is displayed.

2 Press the [JOURNAL] button.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS

SEND LOG

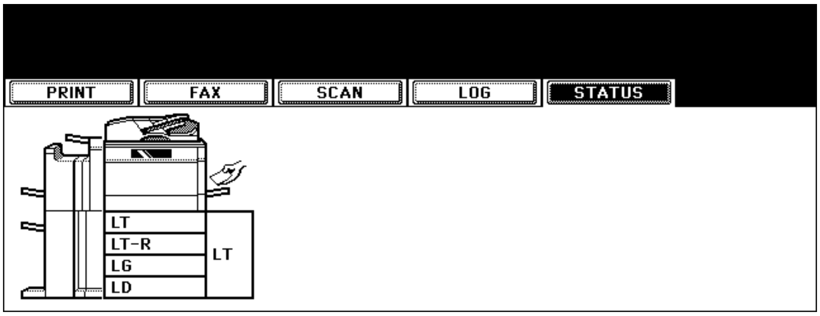
File No.	To	Date,Time	Pages	Status
005	055-000-0000	10,10:14	1	OK
002	045-000-0000	10,10:13	1	OK
001	044-000-0000	10,10:11	1	OK

RETURN
JOURNAL
ENTRY
1/1

- The send (receive) log list is printed.

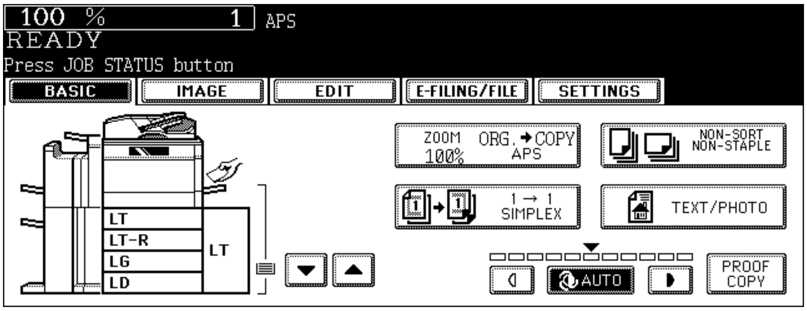
5. Print Status Display

When you press the [STATUS] button on the touch panel while no operation is in progress, the size of the paper set in the drawer is displayed. When you press the [STATUS] button during printing, the drawer button being used for the feeding of this printing is highlighted.


PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT

Releasing print job errors

If the specified size of paper is not in the drawer when printing is to be performed from a client PC, a print job error occurs. The [JOB STATUS] button blinks and the following menu is displayed.



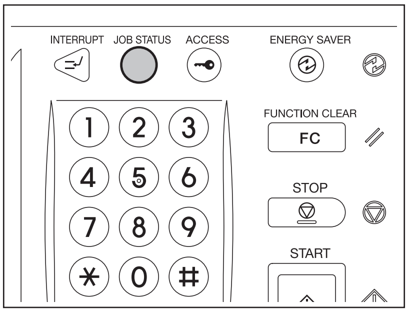
100 % 1 APS
READY
Press JOB STATUS button

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT

Follow the procedure below to release the error.

Printing by placing sheets of paper on the bypass tray

1 Press the blinking [JOB STATUS] button.

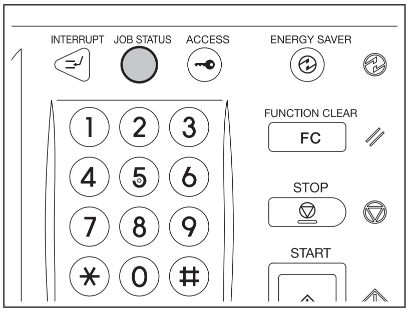

INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#

2 Place the specified size of paper on the bypass tray, and then press the [START] button.

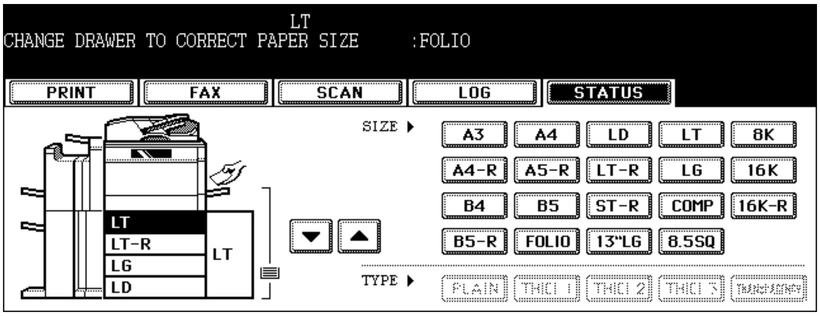
- Printing is performed. Press the [JOB STATUS] button.

Printing by placing appropriate size of sheets in the drawer

1 Press the blinking [JOB STATUS] button.


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START

2 Press the drawer button whose size you want to change on the touch panel.



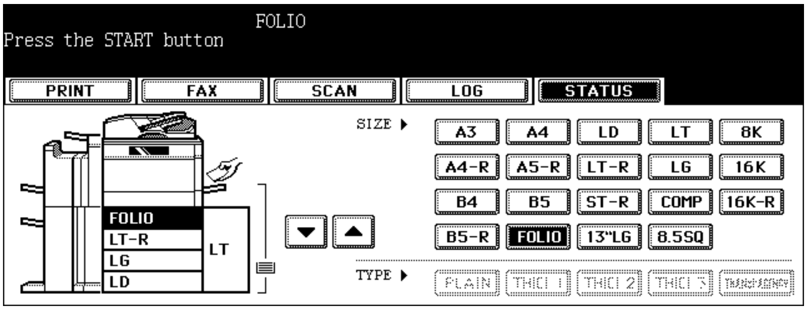
LT
CHANGE DRAWER TO CORRECT PAPER SIZE :FOLIO

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
SIZE
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
TYPE
PLAIN
THICK 1
THICK 2
THICK 3
TRANSPARENCY

- You can select the desired drawer with the paper source selection (▼/▲) buttons.

3 Place paper in the corresponding drawer.

4 Press the paper size button corresponding to the one you have placed.



FOLIO
Press the START button

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
SIZE ▶
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
FOLIO
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
▼
▲
TYPE ▶
PLAIN
THICK 1
THICK 2
THICK 3
TRANSPARENCY

5 Press the [START] button.

- Printing is performed. Press the [JOB STATUS] button.

Printing by selecting a paper size already placed in another drawer
When the specified size of paper is not in the drawer, you can release the error by selecting another size of paper already placed in another drawer, instead of placing the specified size of paper in the drawer. However, a part of the image may not be printed if the size of the paper placed in the drawer is smaller than the specified one.
Press the drawer button whose size you want to use on the touch panel. Then press the [START] button.

6. Error Code

If an error occurs while using the optional printer, optional Fax, optional Internet Fax or optional scan, the error code is displayed in the status of each log. Take an appropriate action with reference to the following.

Fax / Internet Fax

Error code	Problem	What to do
Fax		
0012	Original jam	Clear the jammed original.
0013	Door open	Firmly close the open door.
0020	Power interruption	Check the power interruption report.
0030	Reset	Transmission is cancelled. (The transmission is terminated by the jammed printing paper during the Direct Transmission.)
0033	Polling Error	Check polling options setup (Security Code, etc.), and check if the polling document exists.
0042	Memory full	Make sure that there is sufficient memory before making the call again.
0050	Line busy	Retry communications.
0053	Security Mismatch in Relay or Mail Box transmission	Confirm the remote party's Security Code, system password, and your setup.
00B0 - 00B5 00C0 - 00C4 00D0 - 00D2 00F0, 00F1	Signal Error or Line Condition Error	Retry communications. Frequent failures may indicate a phone line problem. If possible, move the unit to another line and try your communications again.
00E8	HDD Error	Retry communications.
Internet Fax		
1C10	System access abnormality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C11	Insufficient memory	When there are running jobs, perform the job in error again after the completion of the running jobs. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
1C12	Message reception error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
1C13	Message transmission error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
1C14	Invalid parameter	When a template is used, form the template again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
1C15	Exceeding file capacity	Ask your administrator to change the “Fragment Page Size” setting for the Internet Fax setting, or reduce the number of pages and perform the job again.
1C20	System management module access abnormality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the recovery is still not completed, contact your service representative.
1C21-1C22	Job control module access abnormality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the recovery is still not completed, contact your service representative.

Error code	Problem	What to do
1C30-1C33	Disk access error	When there are running jobs, perform the job in error again after the completion of the running jobs. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
1C40	Image conversion abnormality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C60	HDD full failure during processing	Reduce the number of pages of the job in error and perform the job again. Check if the server or local disc has a sufficient space in disc capacity.
1C61	Address Book reading failure	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. Reset the data in the Address Book and perform the job again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C62	Memory acquiring failure	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C63	Terminal IP address unset	Ask your administrator to set the IP address of the equipment.
1C64	Terminal mail address unset	Ask your administrator to set the E-mail address of the equipment.
1C65	SMTP address unset	Ask your administrator to set the SMTP server address.
1C66	Server time time out error	Check if the SMTP server is operating properly.
1C69	SMTP server connection error	Ask your administrator to set the login name or password of SMTP server and perform the job again. Check if the SMTP server is operating properly.
1C6A	HOST NAME error	Ask your administrator to check if there is an illegal character in the device name. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate device name.
1C6B	Terminal mail address error	Ask your administrator to check the SMTP Authentication method or if there is an illegal character in the Terminal mail address. Set the correct SMTP Authentication method or delete the illegal character in the Terminal mail address.
1C6C	Destination mail address error	Check if there is an illegal character in the Destination E-mail address. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate Destination E-mail address, then perform the job again.
1C6D	System error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C70	SMTP client OFF	Ask your administrator to enable the SMTP Client and perform the job again.
1C71	SMTP authentication error	Check if the SMTP authentication method, login name and password are correct.
1C72	POP Before SMTP error	Check if the settings of POP Before SMTP and POP3 are correct. If the SSL setting is enabled, check if the setting and the port number of SSL correspond to those of the server.

Error code	Problem	What to do
1C80	Internet Fax transmission failure when processing E-mail job received	Confirm the “Received Internet Fax Forward” settings.
1C81	Onramp Gateway transmission failure	Confirm the mail box settings.
1C82	Internet Fax transmission failure when processing Fax job received	Confirm the “Received Fax Forward” setting.
1CC0	Job canceling	Job was canceled
1CC1	Power failure	Check if the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Check if the power voltage is unstable.
3A10-3A12	MIME format error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail in the MIME1.0 format.
3A20-3A22	E-mail process error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3A30	Partial E-mail timeout error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail, or change the Partial Wait time setting.
3A40	Invalid partial E-mail received	Ask the sender to resend the partial E-mail in the RFC2046 format.
3A50-3A52	HDD full error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail by separating it to several E-mails. If this error occurs because the paper empty occurs and too much waiting jobs are stored in the hard disc, add the paper to activate other jobs.
3A60-3A62	HDD full alert	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail by separating it to several E-mails. If this error occurs because the paper empty occurs and too much waiting jobs are stored in the hard disc, add the paper to activate other jobs.
3A70	Interrupt partial E-mail reception	Ask your administrator to enable the Enable Partial E-mail setting and ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3A80-3A82	Partial E-mail disabled	Ask your administrator to enable the Enable Partial E-mail setting and ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3B10-3B12	E-mail format error	Ask your administrator to enable the Enable Partial E-mail setting and ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3B20-3B22	Context-Type error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached files that are the TIFF format.
3B30-3B32	Invalid character set	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail in the ISO-8559-1/2 format.
3B40-3B42	E-mail decode error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3C10-3C13	TIFF analysis error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached files that are the TIFF format.
3C20-3C22	TIFF compression error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached TIFF files in the MH, MR, MMR, or JPEG compression.
3C30-3C32	TIFF resolution error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached TIFF files whose resolution is either 200 x 100, 200 x 200, 200 x 400, 300 x 300, or 400 x 400 dpi.
3C40-3C42	TIFF paper size error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached TIFF files that can be printed on the paper available for this equipment.

Error code	Problem	What to do
3C50-3C52	Offramp transmission error	Ask the sender to specify the correct fax numbers and resend the E-mail.
3C60-3C62	Offramp security error	Confirm the fax numbers that are specified in the received offramp gateway job and ask the sender to resend the E-mail with correct fax numbers.
3C70	Power failure	Confirm the job is recovered or not. If not, ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3D10	Destination address error	Ask your administrator whether the DNS and mail server settings are correctly set. If they are correctly set, ask the sender to confirm the destination address is correct.
3D20	Exceeding maximum offramp destinations	Ask the sender to specify up to 40 destinations for one offramp gateway job. The equipment cannot perform the offramp gateway transmission for more than 40 destinations.
3D30	Fax unit is not installed	Make sure the Fax unit is installed, or connected correctly.
3E10	POP3 server communication error	Ask your administrator that the POP3 server address is correctly set, or the POP3 server works properly. Check if the setting and the port number of SSL correspond to those of the server.
3E20	POP3 server communication timeout	Ask your administrator that the POP3 server works properly and the LAN cable is connected to the server.
3E30	POP3 login error	Ask your administrator that the POP3 user name and password is set correctly.
3E40	POP3 login type error	Ask your administrator if the login types (Auto, POP3, APOP) to the POP3 server are correct.
3F00, 3F10, 3F20, 3F30, 3F40	File I/O error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.

Scan Job

Error code	Problem	What to do
Remote Scan		
2A20	Failed to acquire resource	Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
2A40	System fatal error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
2A50	Job canceling	Job was canceled.
2A51	Power failure	Check if the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Check if the power voltage is unstable.
Scan to E-mail		
2C10, 2C12, 2C13, 2C20-2C22	Illegal Job status	A system error has occurred during sending an E-mail. Retry it. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C11, 2C62	Not enough memory	When there are running jobs, perform the job in error again after the completion of the running jobs. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
2C14	Invalid parameter specified	Make sure you specify the settings correctly and try again.
2C15	Message size exceeded limit or maximum size	Fragment the message into several smaller-sized ones and send them again.
2C30-2C33	Disk access error	When there are running jobs, perform the job in error again after the completion of the running jobs. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
2C40	Failed to convert image file format	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C43	Encryption error. Failed to create file.	Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
2C61	Failed to read AddressBook	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the job in error. Reset the data in the Address Book and retry it. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C63, 2C64	Invalid Domain Address	Ask your administrator to set the IP address.
2C65, 2C66, 2C69	Failed to connect to SMTP server	Make sure the SMTP server is correctly working, or the SMTP server address has been set correctly. Then retry the scan.
2C6A	Failed to send E-Mail message	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C6B	Invalid address specified in From: field	Ask your administrator to check the SMTP Authentication method or if there is an illegal character in the Terminal mail address. Set the correct SMTP Authentication method or delete the illegal character in the Terminal mail address.
2C6C	Invalid address specified in To: field	Check if there is an illegal character in the Destination E-mail address. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate Destination E-mail address, then perform the job again.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2C6D	NIC system error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the job in error. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C70	SMTP service is not available	Ask your administrator to enable the SMTP setting.
2C71	SMTP authentication error	Check if the SMTP authentication method, login name and password are correct. Check if the setting and the port number of SSL correspond to those of the server.
2C72	POP Before SMTP error	Check if the settings of POP Before SMTP and POP3 are correct.
2C80	Failed to process received E-mail job	Ask your administrator to confirm whether the Received Internet Fax Forward is set.
2C81	Failed to process received Fax job	Ask your administrator to confirm whether the Received Fax Forward is set.
2CC0	Job canceled	Job was canceled.
2CC1	Power failure occurred	Make sure that the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Resend the job.
Save as File		
2D10, 2D12, 2D13, 2D20-2D22	Illegal Job status	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry sending. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2D11	Not enough memory for saving the scan job	Wait for a while and retry the job. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON and retry it.
2D14	An internal error occurred	Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and retry the job. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2D15	Exceeding maximum file capacity	Divide the file into several files, or retry in a single-page format.
2D30	Failed to create directory	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and also the disk in the directory has enough space, and then retry the job. If more than one job is performed simultaneously, the error may occur because the disk temporarily runs out of space. In this case, wait for a while and retry the job. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and then retry it.
2D31, 2D33	Failed to create file	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and also the disk in the directory has enough space, and then retry the job. If more than one job is performed simultaneously, the error may occur because the disk temporarily runs out of space. In this case, wait for a while and retry the job. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and then retry it.
2D32	Failed to delete file	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and then perform it again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and then carry it out again.
2D40	Failed to convert image file format	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2D43	Encryption error. Failed to create file.	Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2D60	Failed to copy file	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2D62	Failed to connect to network destination. Check destination path.	Check destination path. Make sure that the network path is correct, and retry the scan. If the error still occurs, ask your administrator to confirm whether the IP address or path of the server is correct. Also make sure that the server is operating properly.?
2D63	Specified network path is invalid. Check destination path.	Make sure you specify correct network folder and retry the scan.
2D64	Logon to file server failed. Check username and password.	Make sure you specify correct user name and password to logon the file server and retry the scan.
2D65	There are too many documents in the folder. Failed in creating new document.	Delete the data in the local storage folder in the equipment and retry the scan.
2D66	Failed to process your job. Insufficient storage space.	Delete the data in the local storage folder in the equipment and retry the scan.
2D67	FTP service is not available.	Ask your administrator whether the FTP service is configured correctly.
2D68	File Sharing service is not available.	Ask your administrator whether the SMB protocol is enabled.
2DA8	The HDD is running out of capacity for the shared folder.	Delete the unnecessary data in HDD.
2DC0	Job canceled	Job was canceled.
2DC1	Power failure occurred	Make sure that the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Resend the job.
Store to e-Filing		
2B10	There was no applicable job.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B11	Job status failed.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B20	Failed to access file.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B21	Message size exceeded limit or maximum size	Fragment the message into several smaller-sized ones and send them again.
2B30	Insufficient disk space.	Delete unnecessary documents in e-Filing and try again.
2B31	Failed to access e-Filing.	Make sure that the specified e-Filing or folder exists. (If not, this error would not occur.). Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Delete the specified e-Filing or folder and reset them. Retry the job in error. If the specified e-Filing or folder cannot be deleted, contact your service representative.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2B32	Failed to print e-Filing document.	Make sure that the specified document exists. (If not, this error would not occur.).Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Delete the specified document. If the specified document cannot be deleted, contact your service representative.
2B50	Failed to process image.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B51	Failed to process print image.	Make sure that the Function List can be printed out. Retry the print. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B90	Insufficient Memory.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2BA0	Invalid Box password specified.	Make sure that the password is correct and retry the scan, or reset the password and retry the scan. When this error occurs for the print of the data in the e-Filing, perform the print with the administrator's password. If the recovery is still not completed or in case of invalid password for the operation other than printing (opening the file, etc.), contact your service representative.
2BB0	Job canceled	Job was canceled by the user.
2BB1	Power failure occurred	Make sure that the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely.
2BC0	System fatal error.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the print. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2BC1	Failed to acquire resource.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the print. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B60	The folder was renamed. A folder of the same name already existed.	Check the folder to be made.
2B70	The document was renamed. A document of the same name already existed.	Check the data to be stored.
2B71	The storage period of e-Filing documents will expire.	Check the storage period.
2B80	The HDD for storing e-Filing data is running out of space.	Delete the unnecessary data in HDD.
2BA1	Incorrect paper size	This size is not supported by e-Filing. Check the paper size.
2BD0	Power failure occurred during restoring.	Check the power cable.
2BE0	Failed to obtain the machine parameters.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON to print again.
2BF0	Reached the maximum number of pages.	Reduce the pages to be inserted, and print them.
2BF1	Reached the maximum number of documents.	Delete unnecessary documents in the box or folder.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2BF2	Reached the maximum number of folders.	Delete unnecessary folders in the box.
Printer		
4030	No print enabler/invalid or Proof and Private Printing is Disabled	Check if the Printer Kit is connected properly and inserted securely, network printing of the XPS file is performed without the Memory (optional) being installed or the trial period has expired.
4031	HDD full for printing	Too many jobs of Private print and department code print are stored in HDD.
4032	Private-print-only error	Jobs other than Private print cannot be printed. Perform Private printing.
4033	Printing data storing limitation error	Printing with its data being stored to the HDD temporarily (Proof print, Private print, Scheduled print, etc.) cannot be performed. Perform normal printing.
4034	e-Filing storing limitation error	Printing with its data being stored to the HDD (print and e-Filing, print to e-Filing, etc.) cannot be performed. Perform normal printing.
4035	Local file storing limitation error	Network Fax or Internet Fax cannot be sent when “Local” is selected for the destination of the file to save. Select “Remote” (SMB/FTP) for the destination.
4036	User authentication error	The user performing the printing has not been authenticated or user-registered. Perform user authentication or user registration.
4040	No authority to execute a job	The user has not been assigned the Role to perform this operation by the Administrator.
4050	The connection with the LDAP server or its authority setting has something wrong.	Ask your LDAP server administrator about it.
A221	Print job cancel	Print job is canceled. Retry the print.
A222	Print Job power interruption	Power failure occurred. Retry the print.
A290	Limit over error	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the department code and user code at the same time. Clear the limit counter.
A291	Limit over error	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the user code. Clear the limit counter.
A292	Limit over error	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the department code. Clear the limit counter.

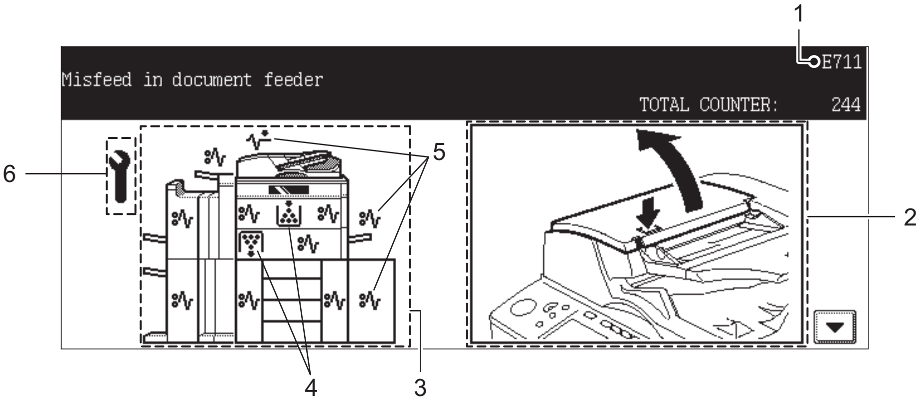
RFC related

Error code	Problem	What to do
2500	Syntax error, command unrecognized: HOST NAME error (RFC: 500), Destination mail address error (RFC: 500), Terminal mail address error (RFC: 500)	Check if the Terminal mail address and Destination mail address are correct. Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again.
2501	Syntax error in parameters or arguments: HOST NAME error (RFC: 501), Destination mail address error (RFC: 501), Terminal mail address error (RFC: 501)	Check if the Terminal mail address and Destination mail address are correct. Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again.
2503	Destination mail address error (RFC: 503)	Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2504	HOST NAME error (RFC: 504)	Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2550	Destination mail address error (RFC: 550)	Check if the Destination mail address is correct. Check the status of mailbox access restriction, etc. on the mail server.
2551	Destination mail address error (RFC: 551)	Check the Destination mail address. Check if the mail server is operating properly.
2552	Terminal/Destination mail address error (RFC: 552)	File is too large for mailbox. Confirm the mailbox size on the mail server. Transmit again in text mode or with a lower resolution. If the error still occurs, divide the document and transmit again.
2553	Terminal/Destination mail address error (RFC: 553)	Check if there is an illegal character in the mailbox in the mail server.

9. BLINKING GRAPHIC SYMBOLS

1. Blinking Graphic Symbols 290
2. Drawer Display on the Touch Panel 291
3. Toner-Related Symbols 292
4. Jam Symbols 295
5. Call Service Symbol 316

1. Blinking Graphic Symbols



Misfeed in document feeder

E711

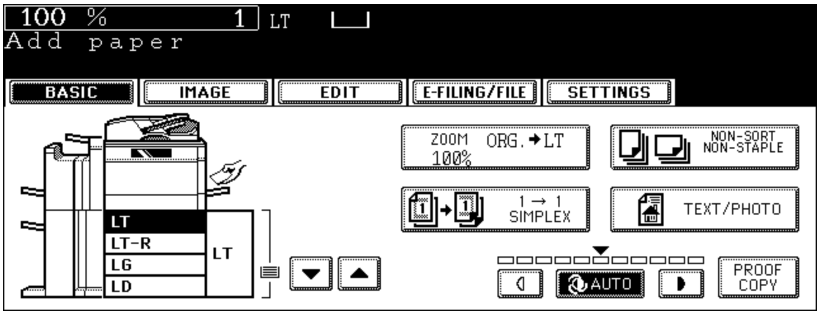
TOTAL COUNTER: 244

1. Error code
2. Guidance display area
3. Illustration of the equipment
4. Toner-related symbol (📖 P.292 “3.Toner-Related Symbols”)
5. Jam symbol (📖 P.295 “4.Jam Symbols”)
6. Call service symbol (📖 P.316 “5.Call Service Symbol”)

When one of the graphic symbols 4 to 6 blinks, take the appropriate action referring to the indicated pages.

2. Drawer Display on the Touch Panel

When the drawer runs out of paper, the drawer display on the touch panel starts blinking. Add paper to the drawer.



100 % 1 LT

Add paper

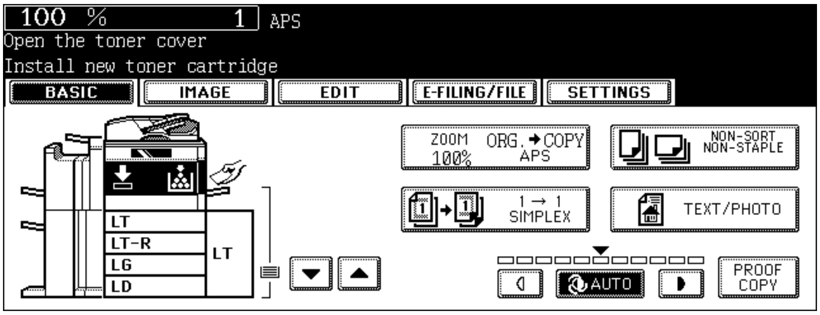
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔LT
NON-SORT
NON-STAPLE
1 → 1
SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF
COPY

3. Toner-Related Symbols

Toner cover symbol

Caution

Never attempt to incinerate toner cartridges. Dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bags in accordance with local regulations.



100 % 1 APS

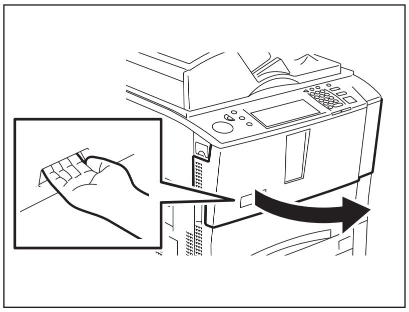
Open the toner cover

Install new toner cartridge

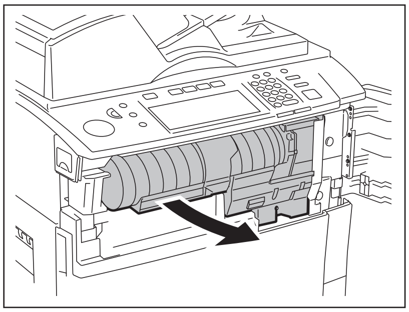
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

When the toner cartridge runs out of toner, the toner cover symbol blinks, and the above message appears.
Approx. 2000 sheets of copy are available after the toner cover symbol starts blinking. Also the toner cartridge can be replaced during the copy process while the toner cover symbol is blinking.
Replace the toner cartridge according to the following procedure.

1 **Insert your fingers in the access on the front and open the toner cover.**

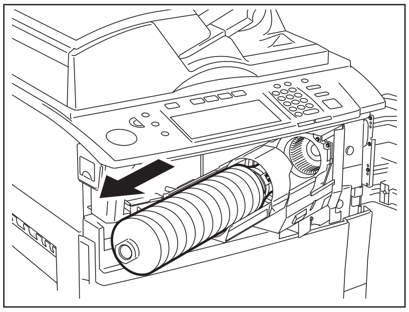


2 **Pull the toner cartridge holder toward you.**

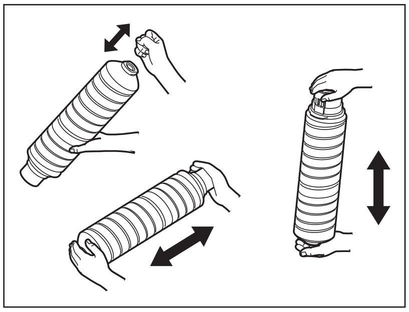


3 Take out the empty toner cartridge.

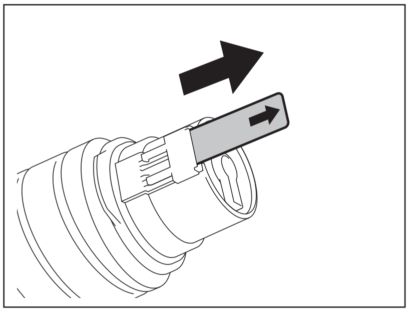
- Never attempt to incinerate toner cartridges and toner bags. Dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bags in accordance with local regulations.



4 Shake the new toner cartridge well to loosen the toner inside.

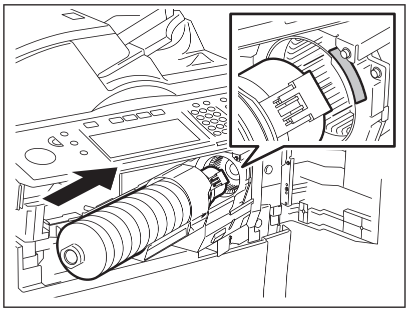


5 Holding the new toner cartridge horizontally, pull out the seal in the direction of the arrow.

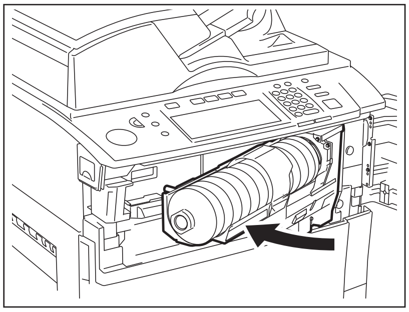


6 Install the toner cartridge to the toner cartridge holder.

- Match the label (orange) on the equipment with the shutter (orange) on the toner cartridge, then insert the toner cartridge to the end.
- If you cannot insert the toner cartridge completely, rotate it slightly to check the position and insert it again.
- If the toner scatters, wipe it off completely.



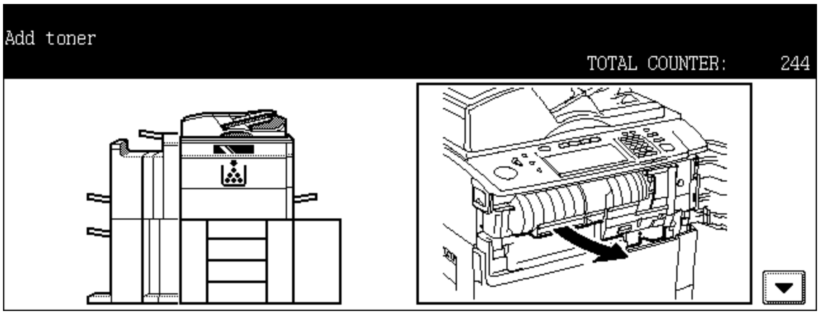
7 Return the toner cartridge holder to its original position.



8 Close the toner cover.

- “Wait adding toner” appears and supplying toner starts automatically.

Toner cartridge symbol



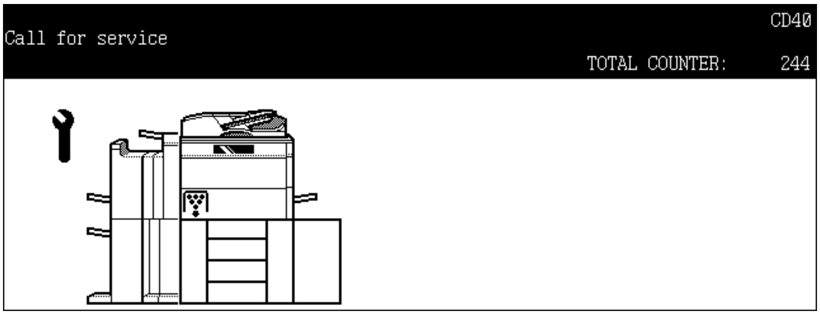
Add toner

TOTAL COUNTER: 244

When toner completely runs out and copying is disabled, the toner cartridge symbol starts blinking and the above message appears.
Replace the toner cartridge. (📖 P.292 “Toner cover symbol”)

Replace toner bag symbol

When the toner bag installed in the equipment becomes full, the replace toner bag symbol starts blinking.



CD40

Call for service

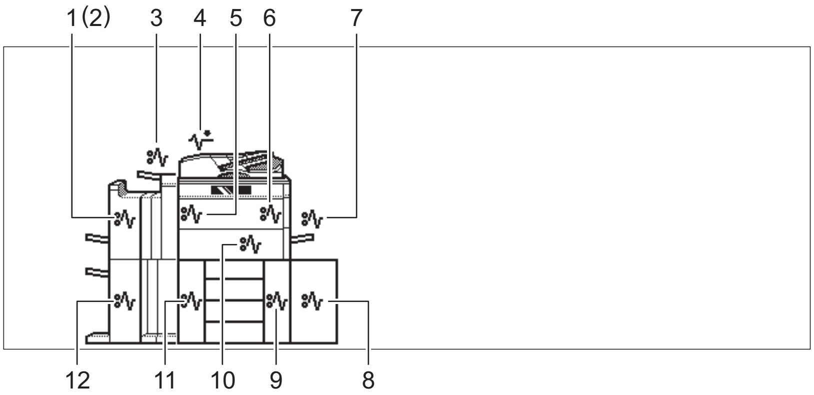
TOTAL COUNTER: 244

Your service technician will replace the toner bag. When the replace toner bag symbol blinks, please contact your service representative.

4. Jam Symbols

When a paper misfeed occurs in the equipment, the jam symbol blinks in the positions where the paper is misfed. Follow the guidance on the touch panel to remove the misfed paper properly.

- The misfed paper may not be in the correct position as shown in the illustration depending on the timing of the misfeeding. If the jam symbol keeps blinking, though the misfed paper has been removed, perform all the operations given in the guidance.



1. Finisher or Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional)
2. Hole Punch Unit (optional)
3. Inserter Unit (optional)
4. Reversing Automatic Document Feeder
5. Inside of the equipment (paper exit area)
6. Inside of the equipment (paper transport area)
7. Bypass tray
8. External Large Capacity Feeder (optional)
9. Inside of the equipment (paper feed area)
10. Inside of the equipment (duplex unit area)
11. Inside of the equipment (reversing area)
12. Saddle Stitch Unit of Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional)

Procedure of clearing a paper jam

When misfeeding occurs, remove the misfed paper by means of the following procedure.

Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (📖 P.297)

↓

Bypass tray (📖 P.300**)**

↓

External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) (📖 P.300)

↓

Finishing device (optional) (📖 P.302**)**
(including the Hole Punch Unit and Inserter Unit)

↓

Inside of the equipment (📖 P.310**)**

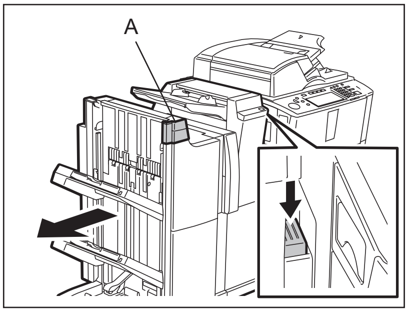
Separation/Installation and moving of the options

Perform the following procedure to separate, install and move the finishing device (including the Hole Punch Unit and Inserter Unit) and the External Large Capacity Feeder when clearing the jam.

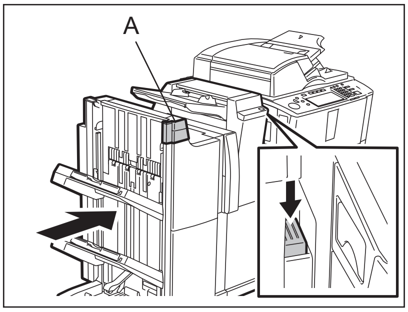
Caution

When installing the options, be careful not to let your fingers be caught between the equipment and the optional unit.

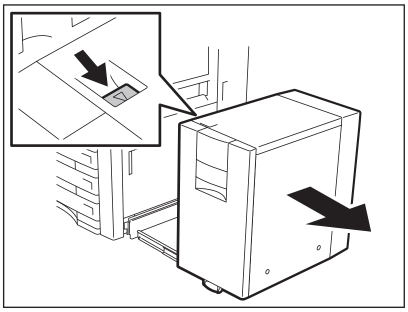
Separating/Installing and moving the finishing device
When separating the finishing device from the equipment:
While placing your hand (position A) and pressing the button, gently move the finishing device away from the equipment.



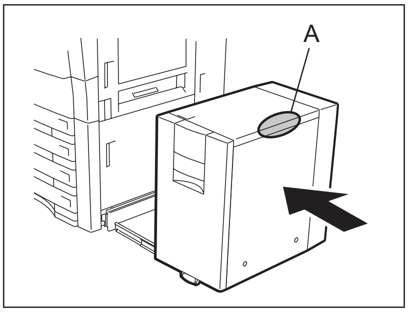
When installing the finishing device to the equipment:
While placing your hand (position A) and pressing the button, gently install the finishing device.



Separating/Installing and moving of the External Large Capacity Feeder
When separating the External Large Capacity Feeder from the equipment:
While pressing the button, gently separate the External Large Capacity Feeder.

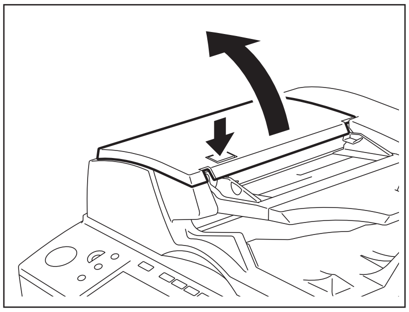


When installing the External Large Capacity Feeder to the equipment:
While placing your hand (position A) and pressing the button, gently install the External Large Capacity Feeder.

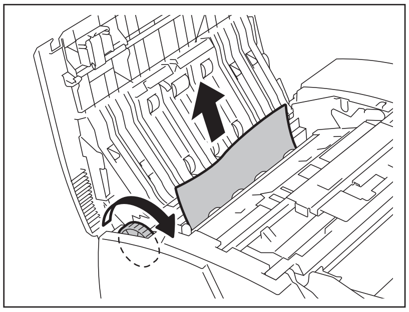


Reversing Automatic Document Feeder

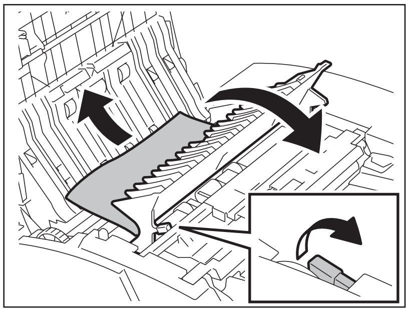
1 **Press the button on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder to open the upper cover.**



2 **Rotate the knob to remove any misfed originals.**

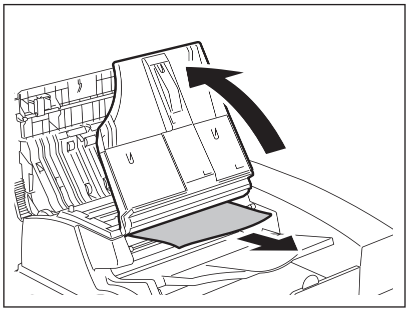


3 **Open the guide plate to remove any misfed paper.**

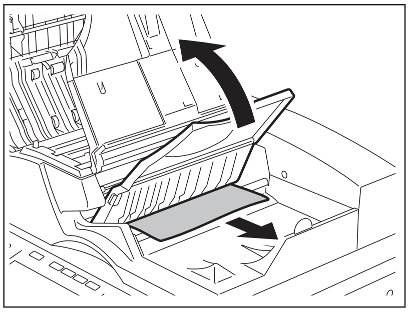


4 **Close the guide plate.**

5 **Open the original feeding tray and remove any misfed originals.**

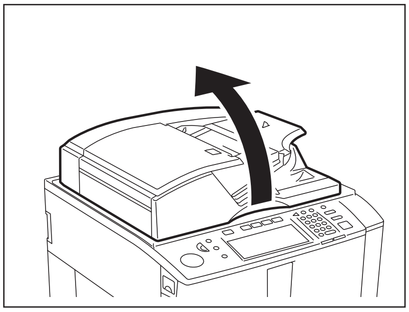


6 **Open the large size original exit tray, and remove any misfed originals.**

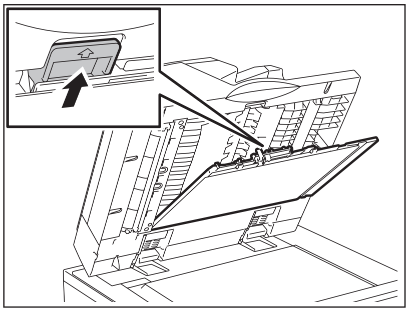


7 **Close the large size original exit tray, the original feeding tray and close the upper cover of the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.**

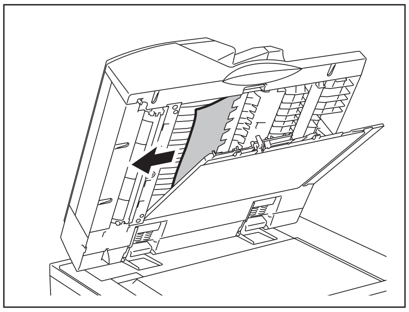
8 **Open the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.**



9 **Release the lock to open the platen sheet.**



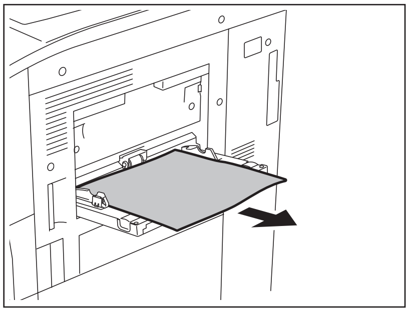
10 **Remove any misfed originals in the reversing area.**



11 **Close the platen sheet and the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.**

Bypass tray

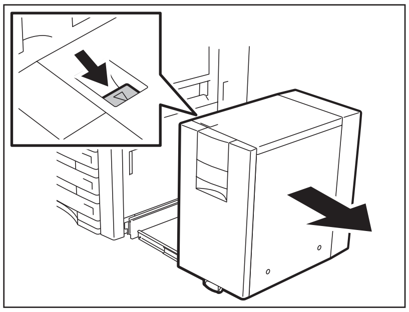
1 Remove the paper from the bypass tray.



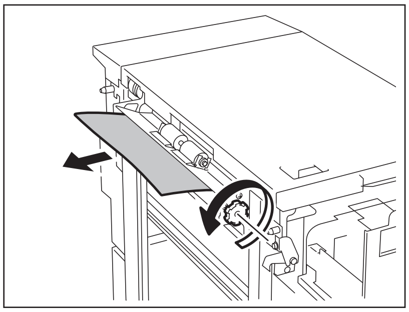
External Large Capacity Feeder

1 While pressing the button, gently separate the External Large Capacity Feeder from the equipment.

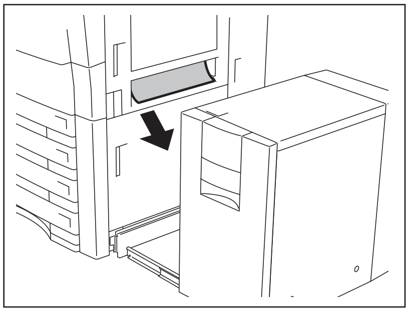
(See 🕮 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/ installation and moving of the options.)



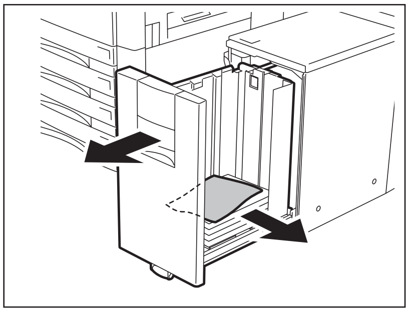
2 Turn the knob of the External Large Capacity Feeder to remove the paper.



3 Remove the paper from the bypass cover.

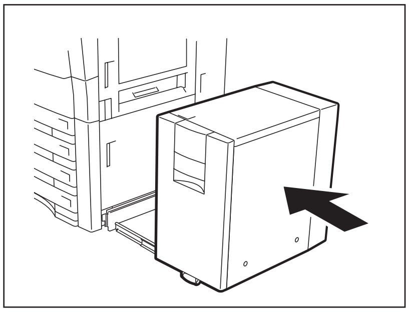


4 Open the drawer to remove the misfed paper.



5 Close the drawer and install the External Large Capacity Feeder to the equipment.

(See 📖 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/ installation and moving of the options.)



Finisher

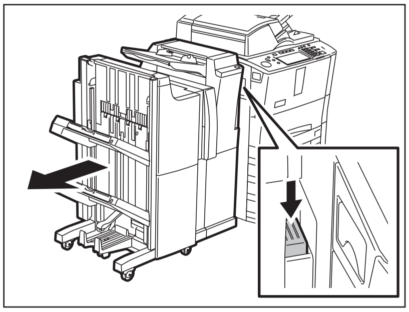
<Hole Punch Unit>
Procedure for releasing the paper misfeed in the Hole Punch Unit. If the Hole Punch Unit is not installed, this procedure is not necessary.

<Inserter Unit>
Procedure for releasing the paper misfeed in the Inserter Unit. If the Inserter Unit is not installed, this procedure is not necessary.

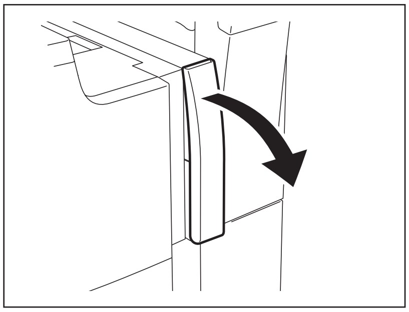
<Saddle Stitch Finisher>
Procedure for releasing the paper misfeed in the saddle stitch unit. If the Saddle Stitch Finisher is not installed, this procedure is not necessary.

1 While pressing the button, separate the finishing device from the equipment.

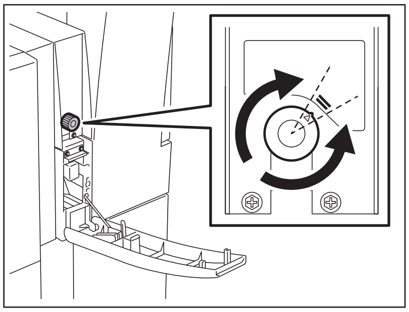
(See 📖 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/installation and moving of the options.)



2 <Hole Punch Unit>
Open the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.

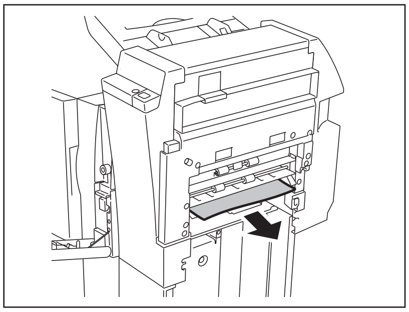


3 <Hole Punch Unit>
Rotate the knob to locate the triangle mark within the indicated area on the label.

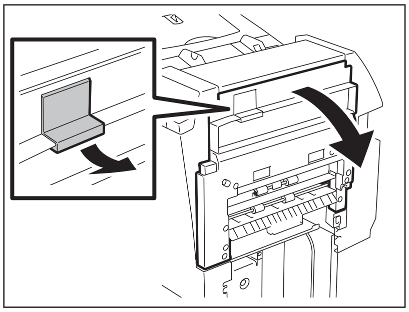


4 **<Hole Punch Unit>**
Close the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.

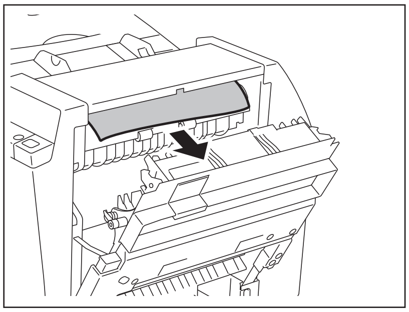
5 **Remove any misfed paper seen on the feeding area of the finishing device.**



6 **<Inserter Unit>**
Pull the lever to open the jam access cover.

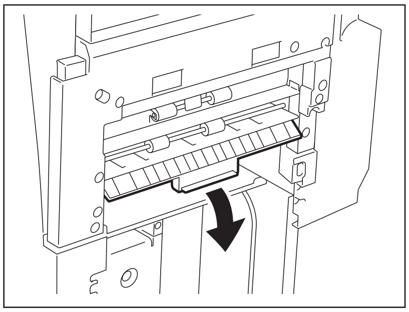


7 **<Inserter Unit>**
Remove the paper.

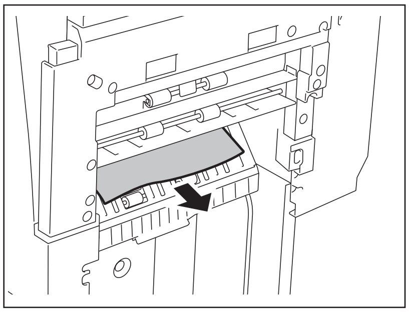


8 **Close the jam access cover.**

9 **<Inserter Unit>**
Open the lower cover.

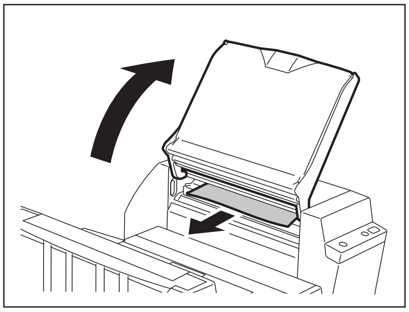


10 **<Inserter Unit>**
Remove the paper.

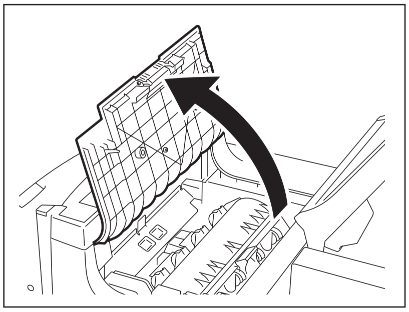


11 **<Inserter Unit>**
Close the lower cover.

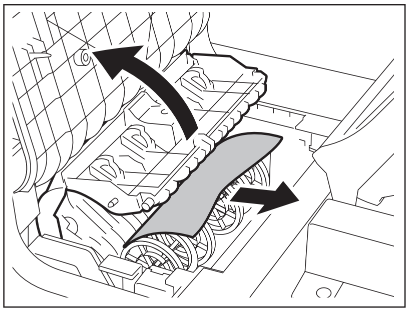
12 **<Inserter Unit>**
Open the paper feeding tray to remove the paper.



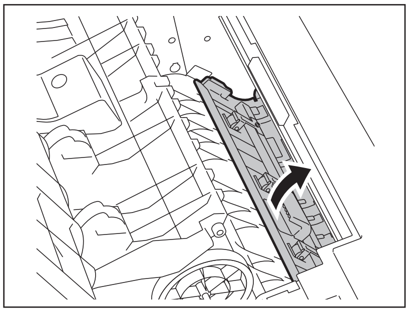
13 Open the upper cover of the Finisher or Saddle Stitch Finisher.



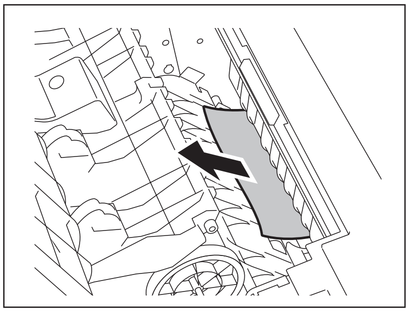
14 Pull the knob 1 to open the buffer roller cover, and then remove the paper.



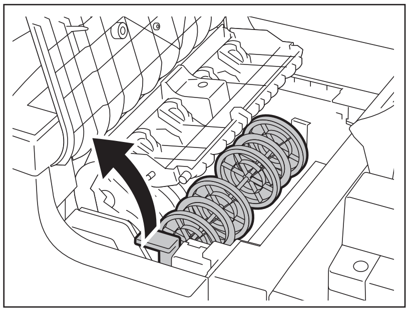
15 Pull the knob up in the rear side of the Finisher to open the guide.



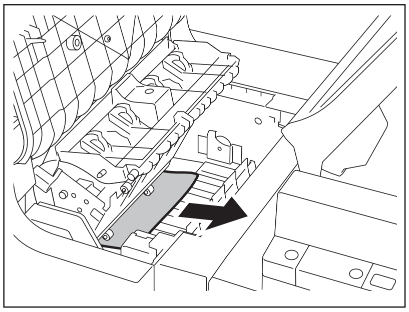
16 Remove the paper, then close the guide.



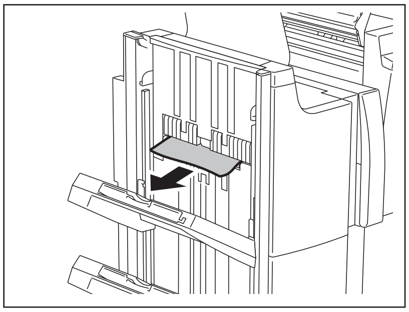
17 **Pull the knob 2 up to open the buffer roller.**



18 **Remove the paper from the lower area.**



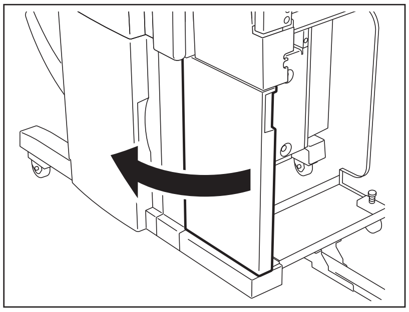
19 **Remove the paper from the paper exit side of the Finisher or Saddle Stitch Finisher.**



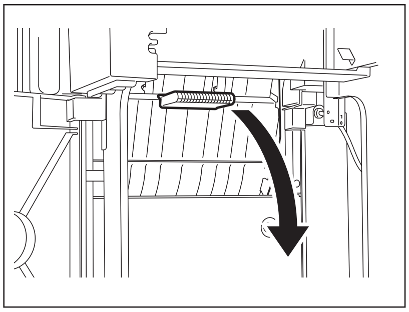
20 **Close the buffer roller, buffer roller cover and upper cover of the Finisher or Saddle Stitch Finisher.**

21 **<Inserter Unit>**
Return the paper feed tray of the Inserter Unit to its original position.

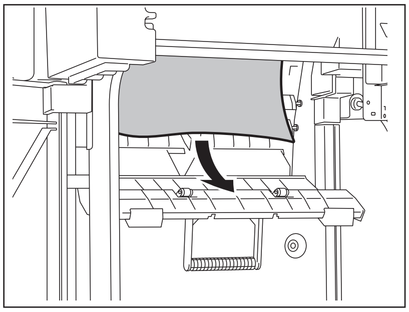
22 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher> <Inserter Unit>**
Open the lower cover of the Inserter Unit.



23 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher>**
Open the guide plate.

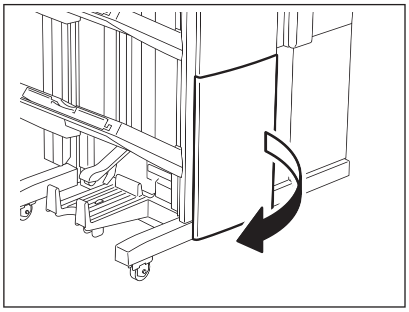


24 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher>**
Remove the paper and close the guide plate.

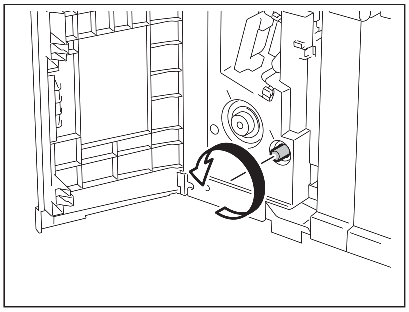


25 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher> <Inserter Unit>**
Close the lower cover of the Inserter Unit.

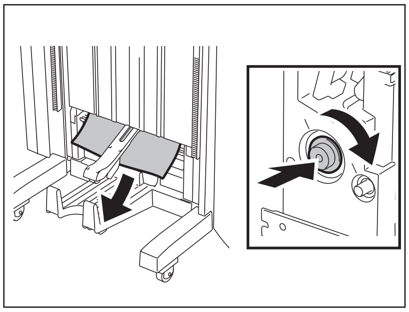
26 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher>**
Open the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.



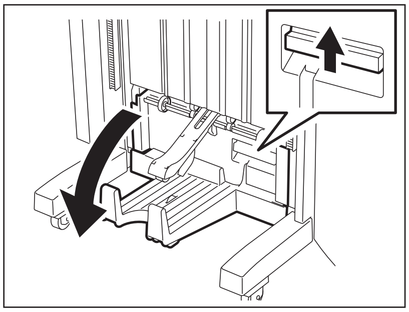
27 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher>**
Turn the right-hand knob counterclockwise until it stops.



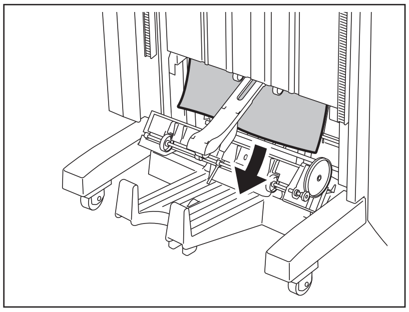
28 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher>**
While pushing the left-hand knob clockwise, turn it to remove the paper.



29 **<Saddle Stitch Finisher>**
Open the paper exit cover.



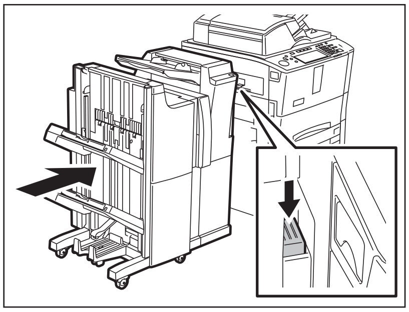
30 <Saddle Stitch Finisher> Remove the paper.



31 <Saddle Stitch Finisher> Close the paper exit cover and the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

32 While pressing the button, install the finishing device to the equipment.

(See 📖 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/ installation and moving of the options.)

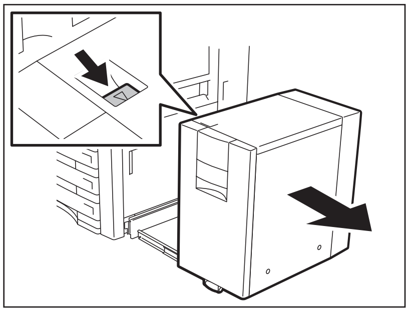


Inside of the equipment

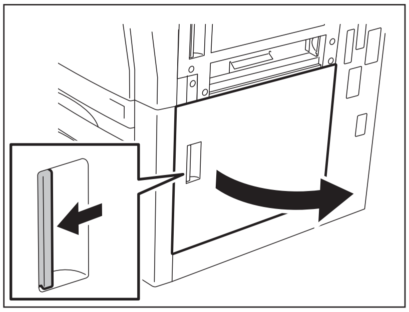
<Finishing device>
If the finishing device is not installed, this procedure is not necessary.

<External Large Capacity Feeder>
If the External Large Capacity Feeder is not installed, this procedure is not necessary.

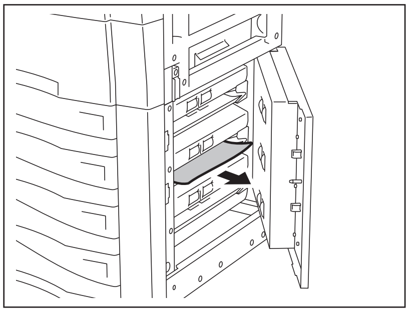
1 <External Large Capacity Feeder>
Press the button to separate the External Large Capacity Feeder from the equipment.
(See 📖 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/installation and moving of the options.)



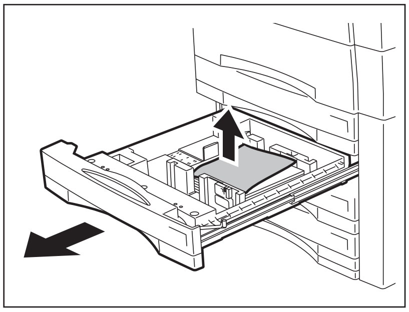
2 Open the paper feed cover.



3 Remove the paper from the side of the drawer.

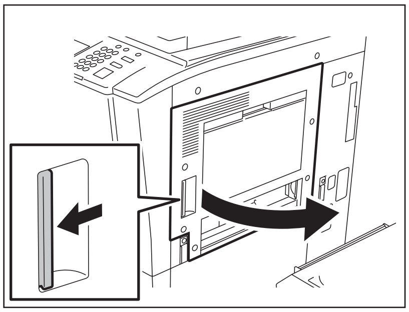


4 **Open the drawer, in which the paper has been set, to remove the paper.**

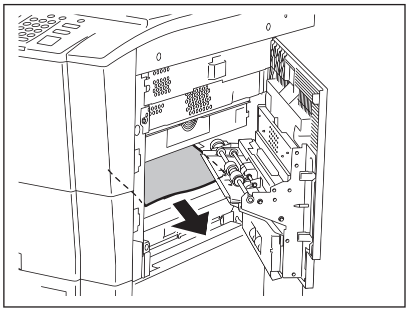


5 **Close the drawer and the paper feed cover.**

6 **Open the bypass cover.**



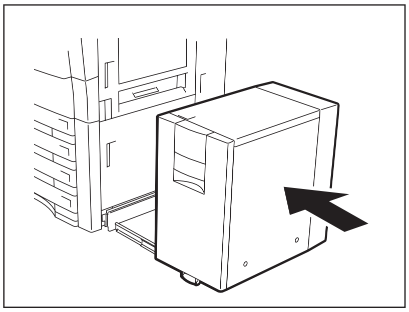
7 **Remove the paper.**



8 Close the bypass cover.

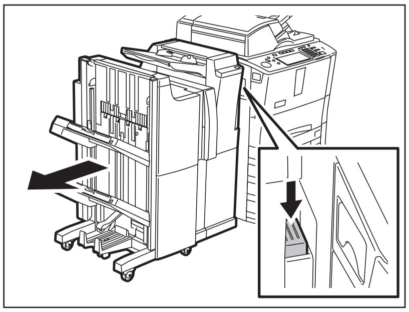
9 <External Large Capacity Feeder>
Install the External Large Capacity Feeder to the equipment.

(See 📖 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/installation and moving of the options.)

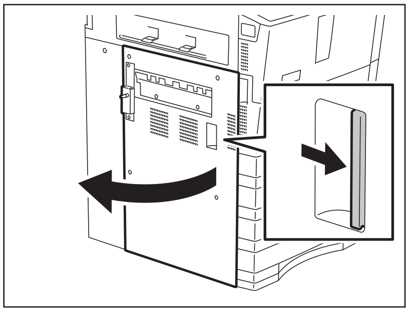


10 <Finishing device>
While pressing the button, separate the finishing device from the equipment.

(See 📖 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/installation and moving of the options.)



11 Open the exit cover.

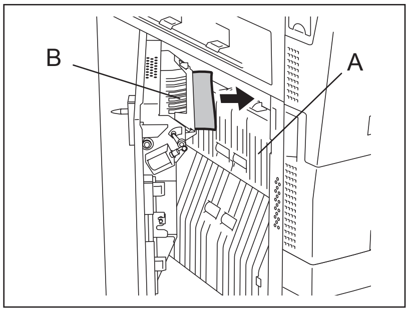


12 Remove the paper from the cover side.

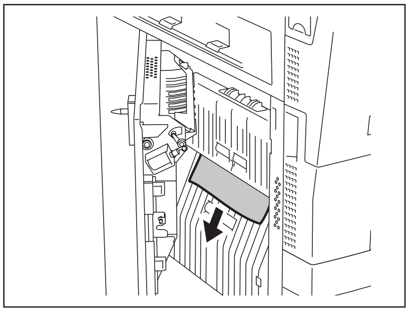
A: Reverse unit
B: Guide plate

Caution

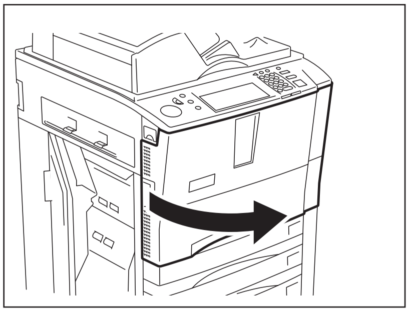
Do not touch the metal area of the reverse unit and the guide plate. It could burn you.



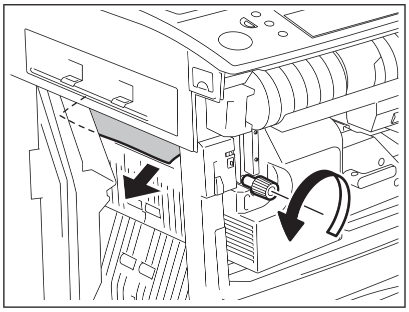
13 Remove the paper from the middle of the reverse unit.



14 Open the front cover.



15 Turn the knob of the fuser unit counter-clockwise to remove the paper.

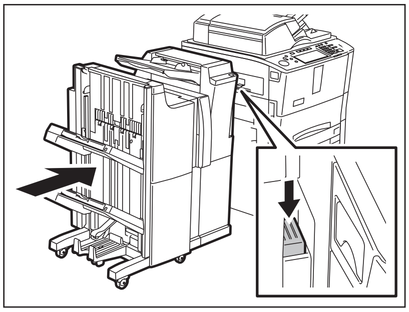


16 Close the exit cover.

17 <Finishing device>

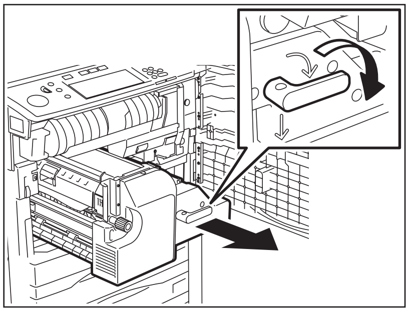
While pressing the button, install the finishing device to the equipment.

(See 🕮 P.296 for cautionary points regarding separation/installation and moving of the options.)



18 Turn the lever 90º clockwise to release the lock and then pull out the transfer/transport unit.

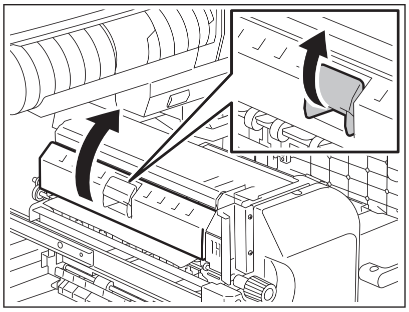
- Pull out the transfer/transport unit it stops.



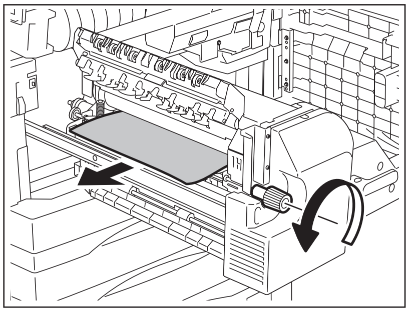
19 Open the fuser unit cover.

Caution

Do not touch the fuser unit and around the metal area around it. It could burn or injure you.

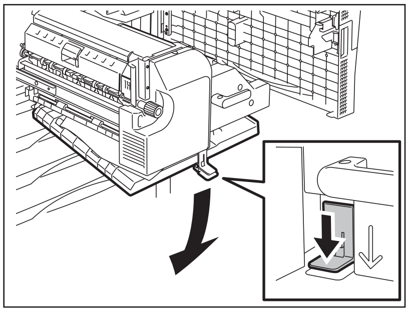


20 Turn the knob to remove the paper.

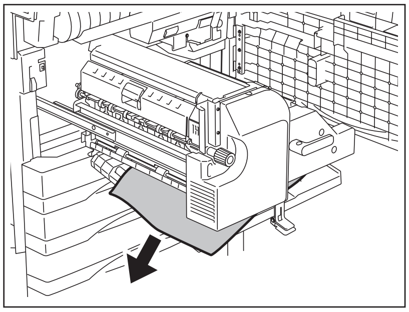


21 Close the fuser unit cover slowly.

22 Open the duplexer guide.

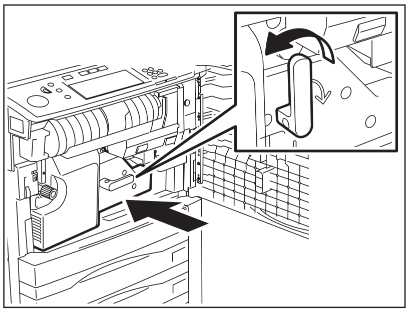


23 Remove the paper.



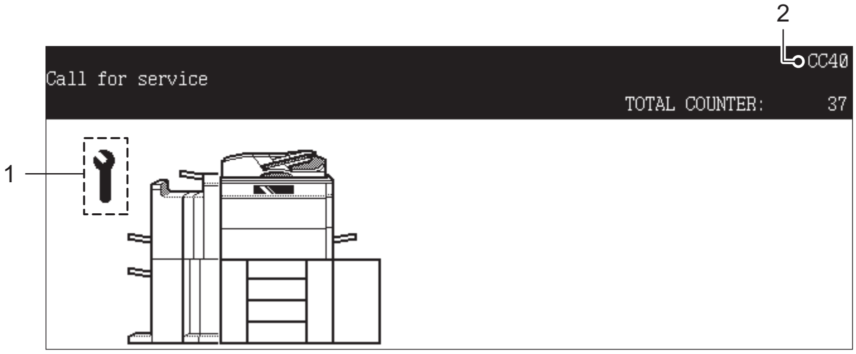
24 Close the duplexer guide.

25 Push the transfer/transport unit into the equipment, and then turn the lever counterclockwise to lock it.



26 Close the front cover.

5. Call Service Symbol



Call for service

CC40

TOTAL COUNTER: 37

1. Call service symbol
2. Error code

Warning

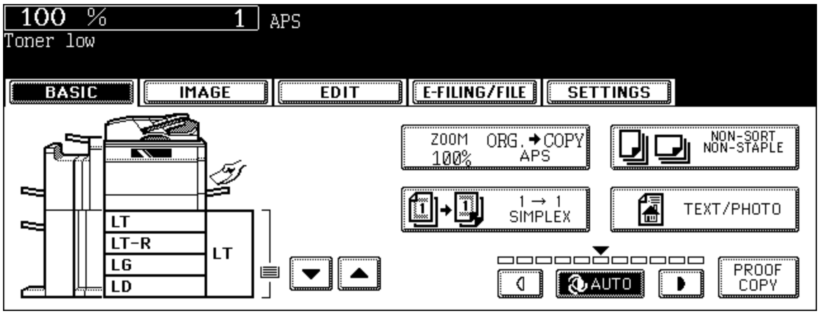
Never attempt to repair, disassemble or modify the equipment by yourself. You could cause a fire or get an electric shock.

Always contact your service representative for maintenance or repair of the internal parts of the equipment.
When the call service symbol blinks and “Misfeed in copier Press HELP” appears, output is no longer possible. Contact your service representative with the information of the displayed error code.

10. WHEN THIS MESSAGE APPEARS

1. “Toner low” 318
2. “Check staple cartridge” 320
3. “Check staple cartridge in the saddle stitch unit” 322
4. “Examine stapler” 324
5. “READY (CHECK STAPLER)” 326
6. “Examine stapler in the saddle stitch unit” 327
7. “READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)” 330
8. “READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)” 331
9. “POWER FAILURE” 332
10. “Time for periodic maintenance” 333
11. “Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N” 334
12. “Reboot the machine” 341

1. “Toner low”


100 % 1 APS
Toner low
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

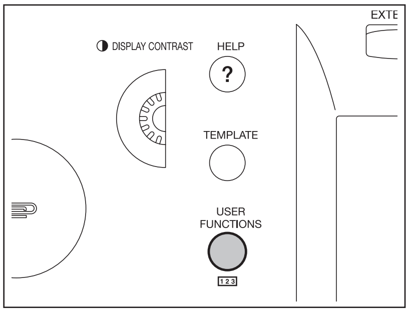
This message appears to notify you that the toner cartridge is running out of toner. Approx. 5000 sheets of paper can be copied until the toner cartridge becomes empty after this message has appeared. Prepare a new toner cartridge before the toner runs out.

- Replace the toner cartridge after “Install new Black toner cartridge” has appeared and the toner cover symbol blinks. (📖 P.292 “Toner cover symbol”)

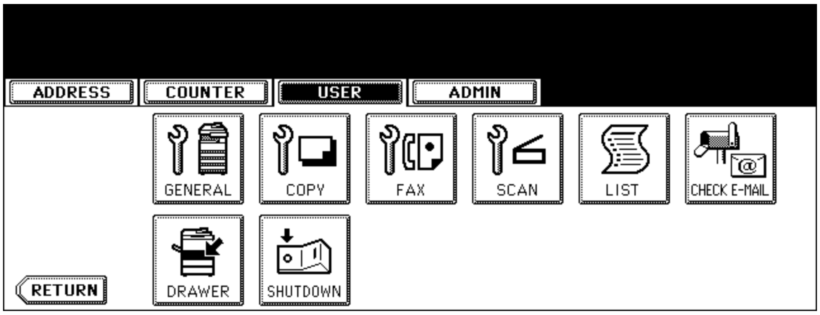
Tip

If this message does not disappear after the new cartridge has been installed, perform the following procedure to delete the message.

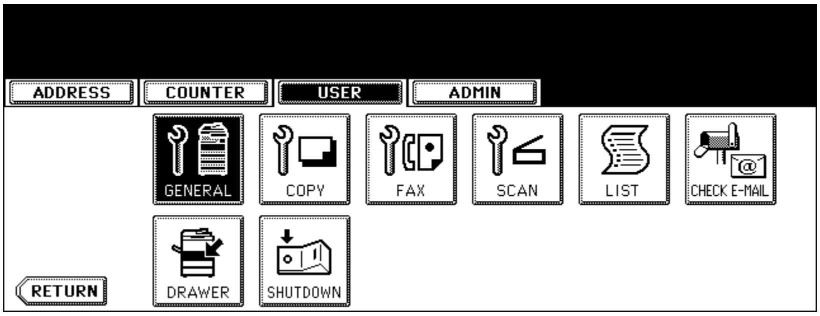
1 Press the [USER FUNCTION] button.


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

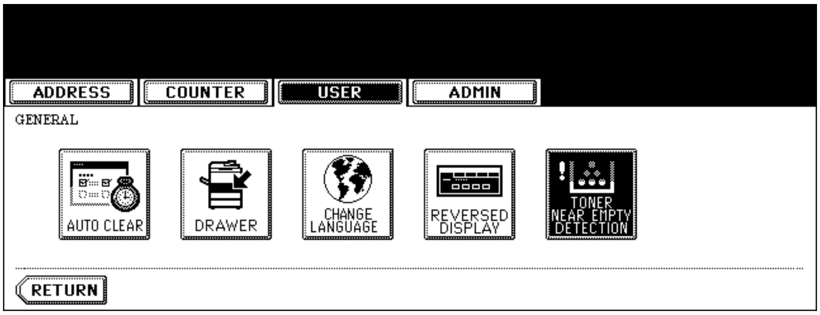
2 Press the [USER] button.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
COPY
FAX
SCAN
LIST
CHECK E-MAIL
DRAWER
SHUTDOWN
RETURN

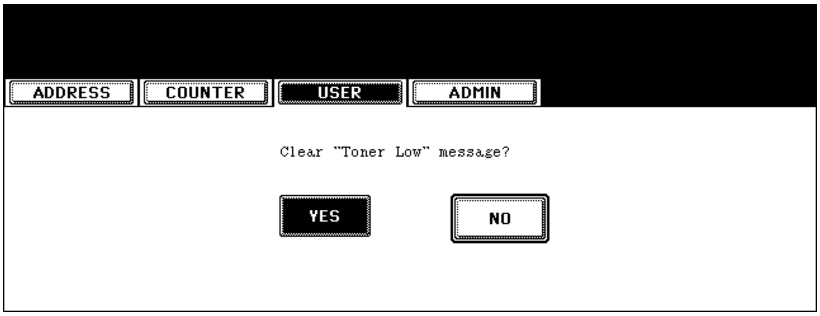
3 Press the [GENERAL] button.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
COPY
FAX
SCAN
LIST
CHECK E-MAIL
DRAWER
SHUTDOWN
RETURN

4 Press the [TONER NEAR EMPTY DETECTION] button.

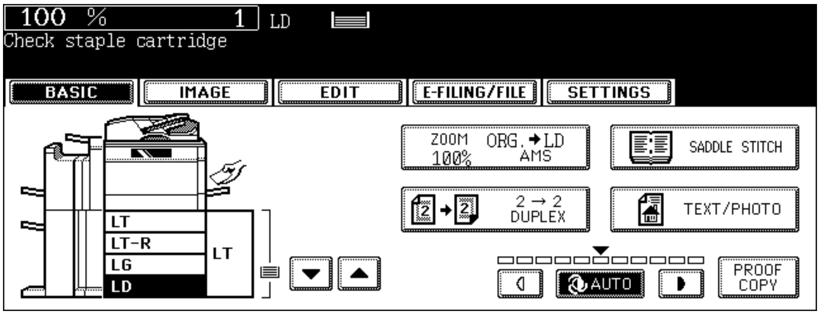

ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
AUTO CLEAR
DRAWER
CHANGE LANGUAGE
REVERSED DISPLAY
TONER NEAR EMPTY DETECTION
RETURN

5 Press the [YES] button.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
YES
NO

Clear "Toner Low" message?

2. “Check staple cartridge”



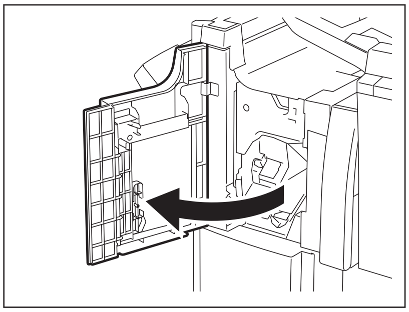
100 % 1 LD

Check staple cartridge

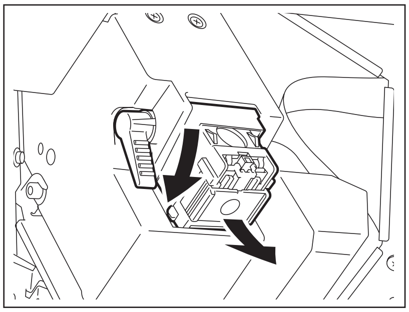
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔LD AMS
SADDLE STITCH
2 → 2 DUPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

This message will be shown only if the Finisher (optional) is installed. When the staples in the stapler of the Finisher run out, this message appears.
Add staples to the cartridge according to the following procedure.

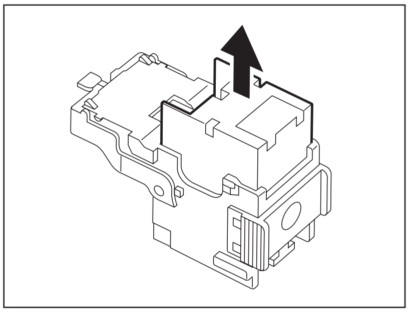
1 **Open the front cover of the Finisher.**



2 **Lower the lever of the stapler to release the lock, and then take out the staple cartridge.**

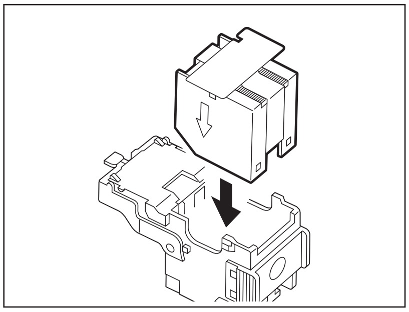


3 **Remove the empty staple case from the cartridge.**

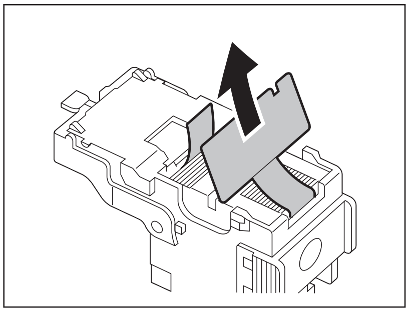


4 Attach a new staple case in the staple cartridge.

- Push a new staple case until it clicks.
- Do not peel the seal keeping the staples together before the staple case is attached in the cartridge.

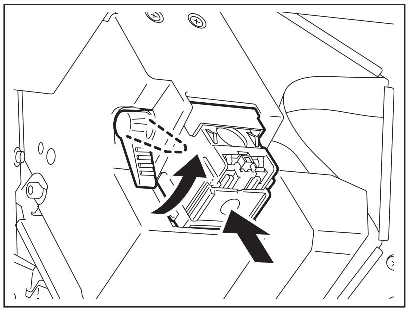


5 Pull out the seal fastening the staples upward.



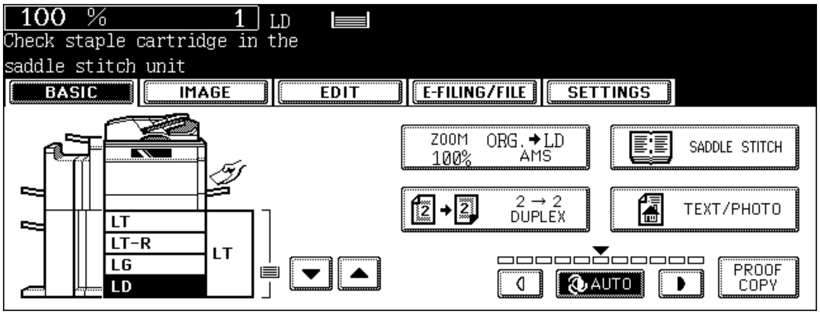
6 Install the staple cartridge to the stapler.

- Insert the cartridge until the lever of the stapler goes up to be fixed securely.



7 Close the front cover of the Finisher.

3. “Check staple cartridge in the saddle stitch unit”



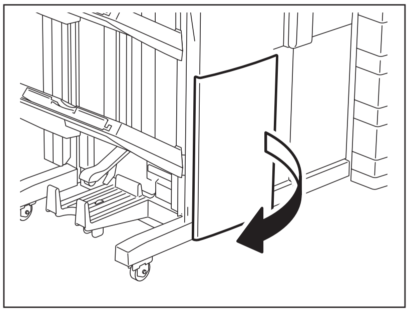
100 % 1 LD

Check staple cartridge in the saddle stitch unit

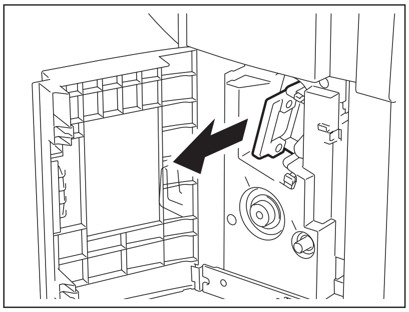
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔LD AMS
SADDLE STITCH
2 → 2 DUPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

This message will be shown only if the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed. When the staples in the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) run out, this message appears.
Replace the staple cartridge according to the following procedure.

1 Open the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

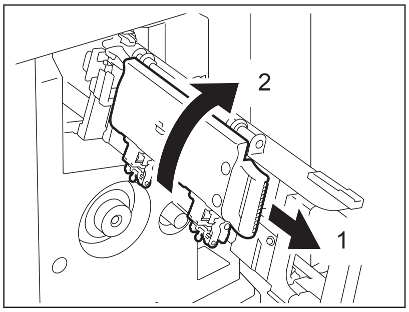


2 Pull out the saddle stitch unit slowly.



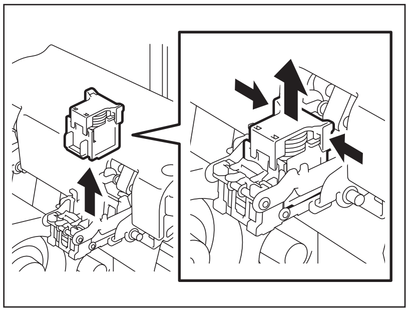
3 Pull the handle of the stapler of the saddle stitch unit to release the lock. Then rotate the stapler approx. 60º clockwise.

- The stapler is locked and fixed when it comes to a near-horizontal position.



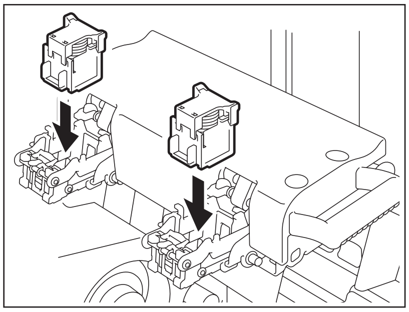
4 Take out the empty staple cartridge.

- Replace both cartridges in one go.

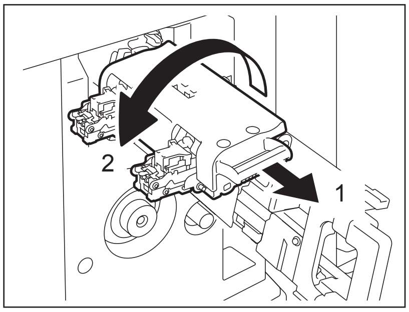


5 Install the new staple cartridge.

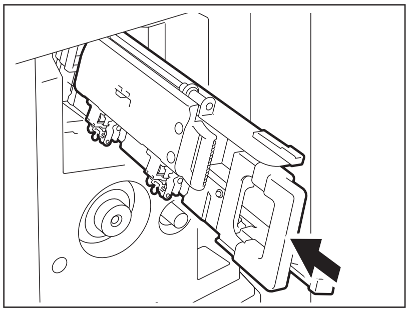
- When installing a staple cartridge, push it downward until it is fixed with a click sound.



6 Pull out the handle of the stapler to release the lock and return to its original position.

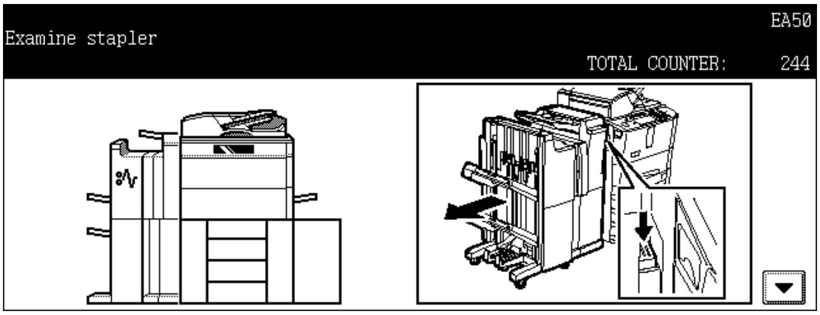


7 Insert the saddle stitch unit into the Saddle Stitch Finisher slowly.



8 Close the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

4. “Examine stapler”



Examine stapler

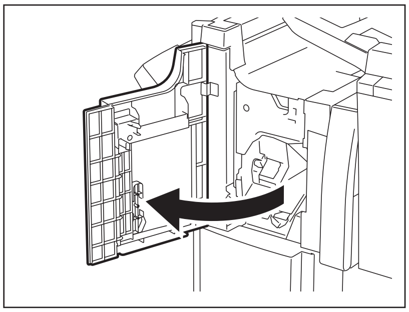
EA50

TOTAL COUNTER: 244

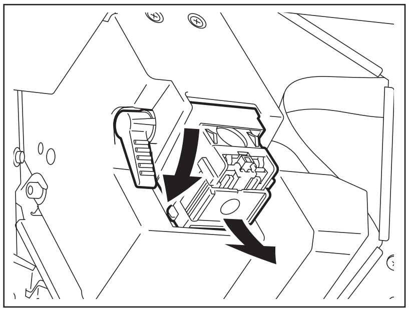
This message appears when the staples in the Finisher (optional) are jammed. To remove them, follow the procedure below.

---

1 **Open the front cover of the Finisher.**



2 **Lower the lever of the stapler to release the lock, and then take out the staple cartridge.**

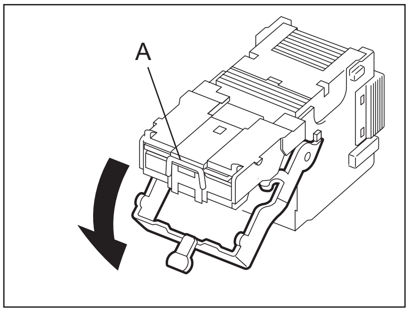


3 **Lower the guide holding the knob.**

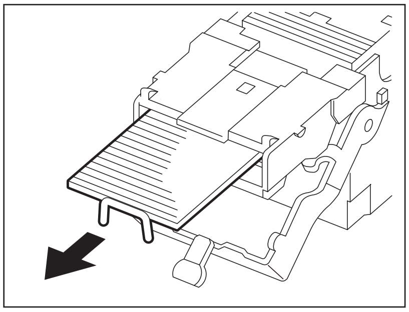
A: Stapling area

Caution

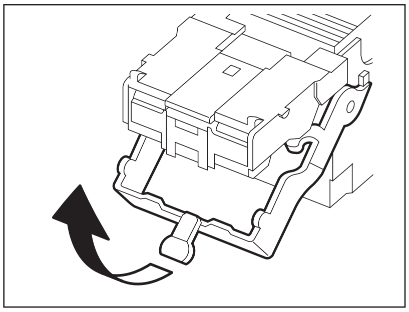
Do not touch the stapling area. The stapler could injure you.



4 Remove any jammed staples with something sharp.

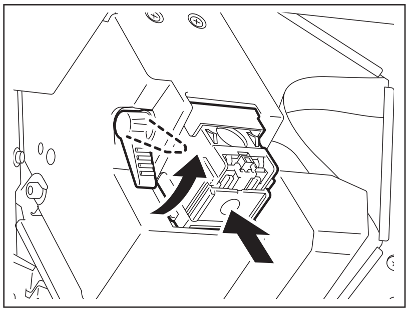


5 Lift up the guide holding the knob to return it to its original position.



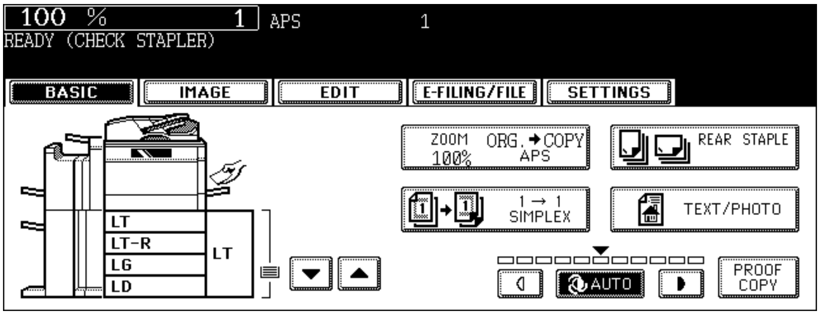
6 Install the staple cartridge in the stapler.

- Insert the cartridge until the lever of the stapler goes up to be fixed securely.



7 Close the front cover of the Finisher.

5. “READY (CHECK STAPLER)”



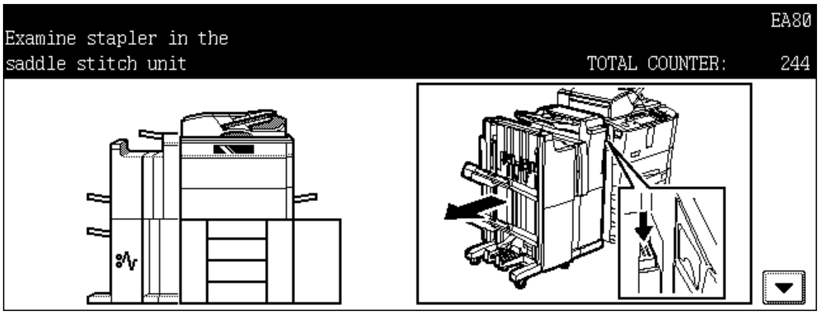
100 % 1 APS 1

READY (CHECK STAPLER)

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
REAR STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

This message will be shown only when the Finisher (optional) is installed. It appears when the staples in the stapler of the Finisher run out or when the staples in the Finisher are jammed.
Clear the error according to the procedure in 🕮 P.320 “2.“Check staple cartridge”” or 🕮 P.324 “4.“Examine stapler””.

6. “Examine stapler in the saddle stitch unit”



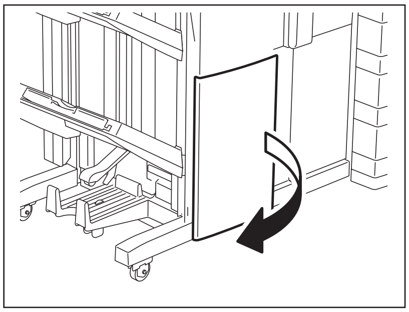
EA80

Examine stapler in the saddle stitch unit

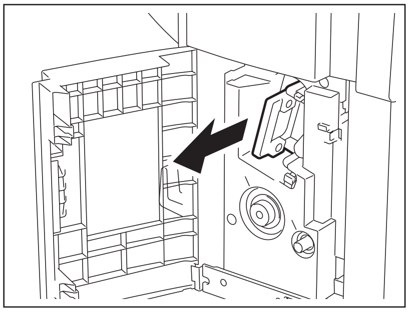
TOTAL COUNTER: 244

This message appears when the staples in the saddle stitch unit (optional) are jammed. To remove them, follow the procedure below.

1 **Open the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.**

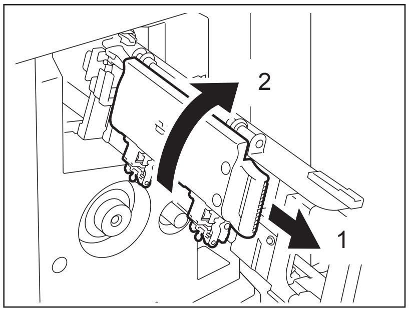


2 **Pull out the saddle stitch unit slowly.**

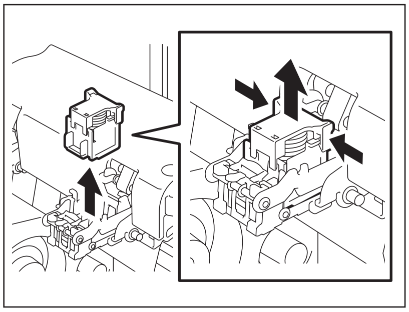


3 **Pull the handle of the stapler of the saddle stitch unit to release the lock. And then rotate the stapler approx. 60º clockwise.**

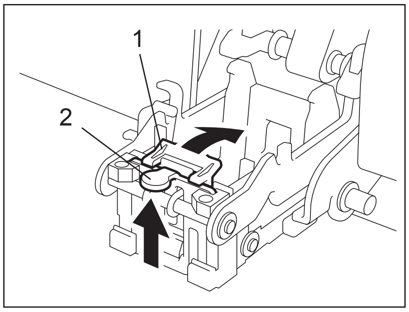
- The stapler is locked and fixed when it comes to a near-horizontal position.



4 Take out the cartridge.

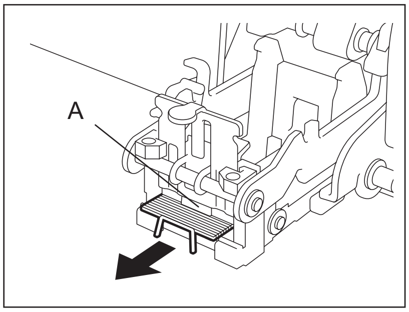


5 Press 1 to release the lock, and then pull up the shutter by holding knob 2.



6 Remove any jammed staples.

A: Stapling area

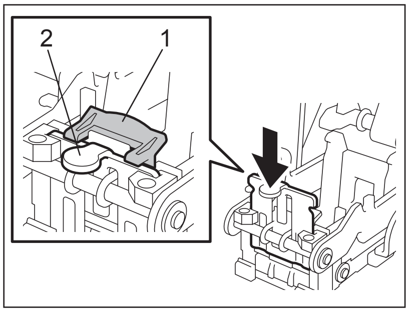


Caution

Do not touch the stapling area. The stapler could injure you.

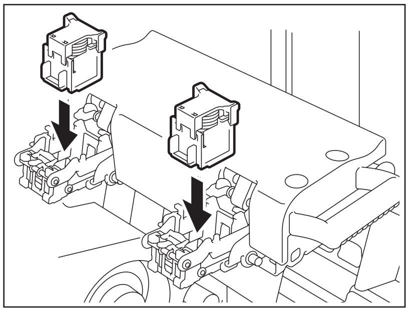
7 Return the shutter to its original position by pressing knob 2.

- Check that the latch of 1 is hung on the shutter.

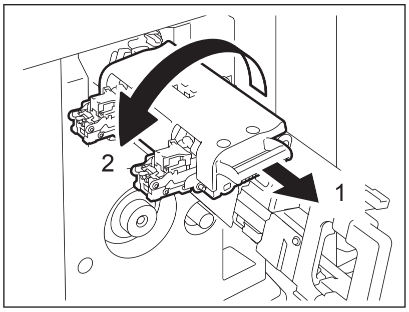


8 Install the cartridge.

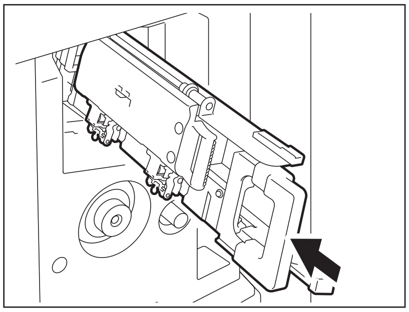
- When installing a staple cartridge, push it downward until it is fixed with a click sound.



9 Pull the knob on the stapler to release the lock, and then pull the stapler down to its original position.

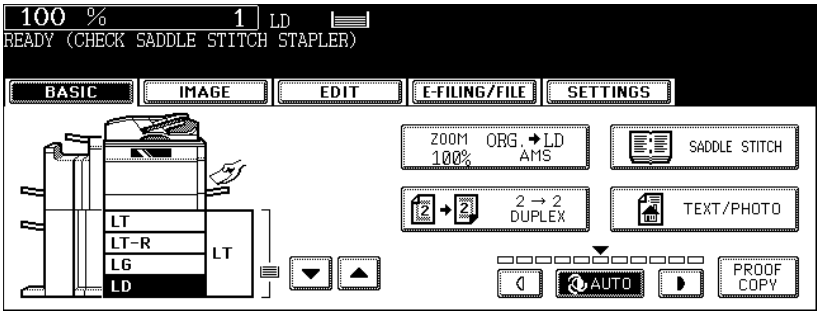


10 Insert the saddle stitch unit into the Saddle Stitch Finisher slowly.



11 Close the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

7. “READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)”



100 % 1 LD

READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)

This message will be shown only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed. It appears when the staples in the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Finisher run out or when the staples in the Saddle Stitch Finisher are jammed.
Remove the jammed staples according to the procedure in 📖 P.327 “6.“Examine stapler in the saddle stitch unit””.
If the staples run out, follow the procedure below as well as the procedure in 📖 P.322 “3.“Check staple cartridge in the saddle stitch unit””.

1 Follow steps 1 to 6 of 📖 P.322 “3.“Check staple cartridge in the saddle stitch unit””.

- Do not close the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

2 Check the following 2 items to perform test stapling.

- Whether the Saddle Stitch Finisher is securely installed in the equipment.
- Whether any LD, LG or LT-R paper is set in the equipment.

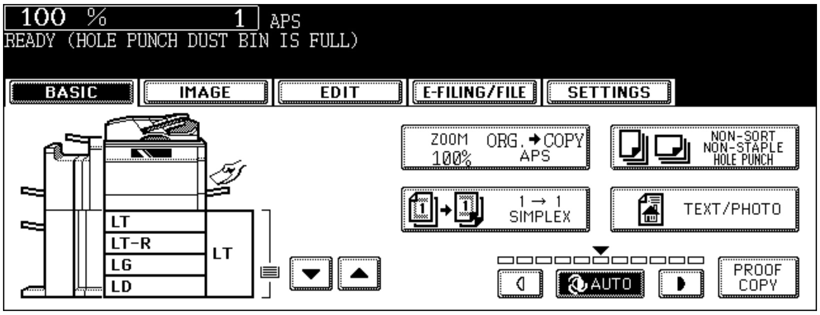
3 Close the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

- The test stapling is automatically performed.

Tip

If the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher is closed without satisfying the condition of step 2, test stapling is not performed. Test stapling is necessary for anti-idling of stapling. After satisfying the condition of step 2 and opening/closing the lower cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher again, be sure to perform the test stapling.

8. “READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)”



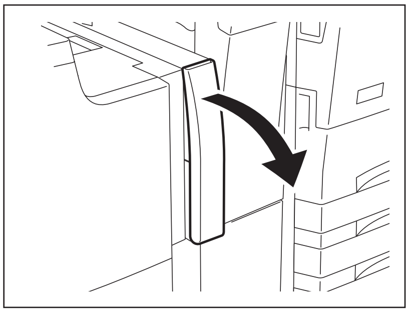
100 % 1 APS

READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)

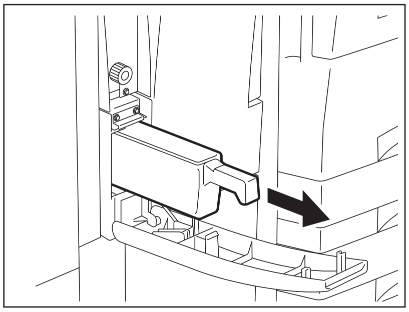
BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE HOLE PUNCH
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

This message appears when the hole punch dustbin in the Hole Punch Unit (optional) becomes full. To dispose of the paper bits, follow the procedure below.

1 **Open the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.**



2 **Pull out the hole punch dustbin.**

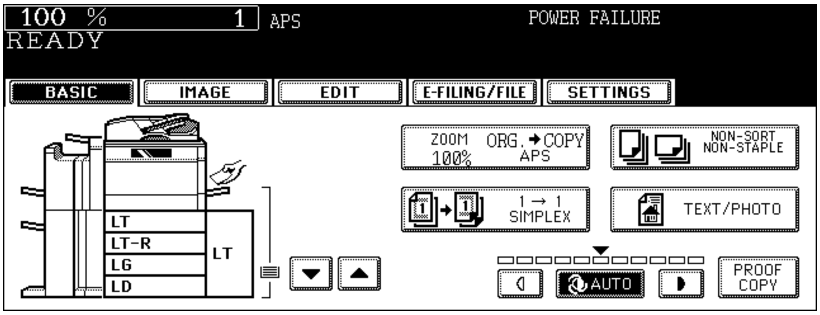


3 **Dispose of the paper bits.**

4 **Attach the hole punch dustbin.**

5 **Close the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.**

9. “POWER FAILURE”



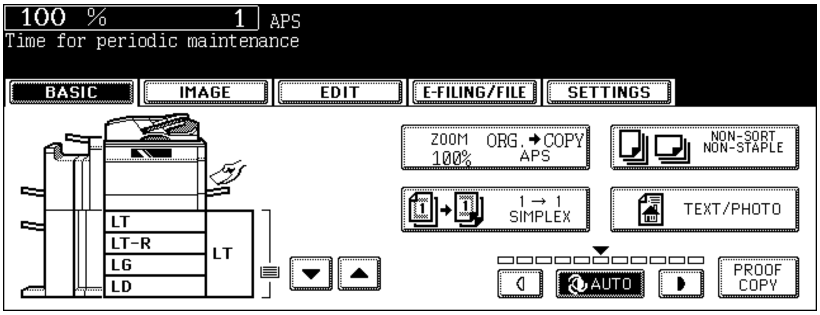
100 % 1 APS POWER FAILURE

READY

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

This message appears when a job is interrupted due to a power failure, etc. The print or Fax job in progress at the time of a power failure may not be completed. Confirm the job status by pressing the [JOB STATUS] button. To clear this message, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button twice.

10. “Time for periodic maintenance”



100 % 1 APS

Time for periodic maintenance

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
ZOOM 100%
ORG.➔COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
AUTO
PROOF COPY

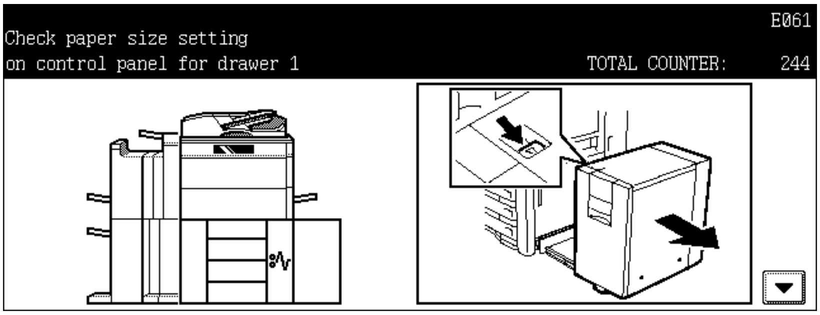
This message appears when assistance from a qualified service technician is required. Contact your service representative.

The following message also appears when such assistance is required. Contact your service representative.
“Time for periodic maintenance (Fuser cleaning web)”.

Tip

Continuous use of the equipment without the fuser cleaning web being changed causes stains on the printed image.

11. “Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N”



E061

Check paper size setting
on control panel for drawer 1

TOTAL COUNTER: 244

This message appears when the size of the paper actually placed in the drawer or on the bypass tray differs from the one registered in the equipment for the corresponding drawer or the bypass tray. There are 5 messages of this type as shown below.
“Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 1”
“Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 2”
“Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 3” (for the Drawer Type model only)
“Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 4” (for the Drawer Type model only)
“Check paper size setting on control panel for Bypass”

In case that a paper misfeed occurs and one of the above messages consequently appears, another paper misfeed will occur if you just remove the jammed paper. Instead, be sure to follow the procedure below.

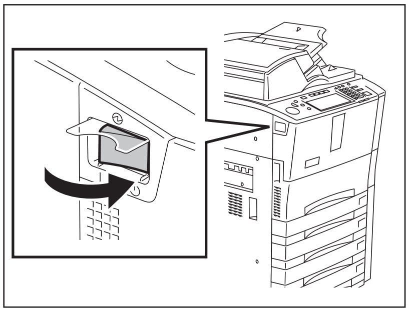
- Make a note of the position of the jammed paper and the number of the drawer displayed in the message in advance because guidance for removing the jammed paper is not displayed while you are working on the procedure.

This countermeasure differs depending on when the paper misfeeding has occurred – during copying or during printing from the Fax or the Printer.

During copying (using a drawer)

1 Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

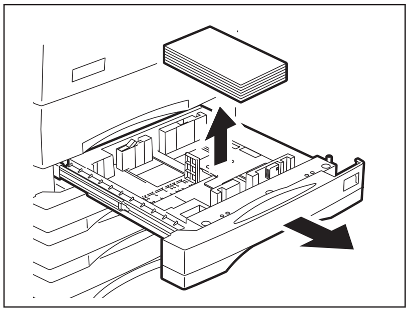
- You cannot shut down the equipment.



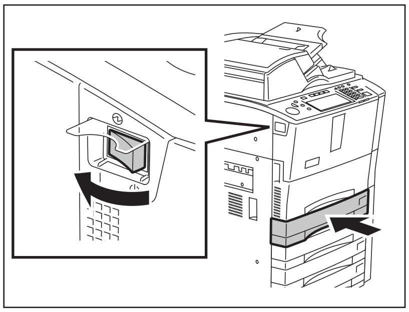
2 Remove the jammed paper.

📖 P.295 “4.Jam Symbols”

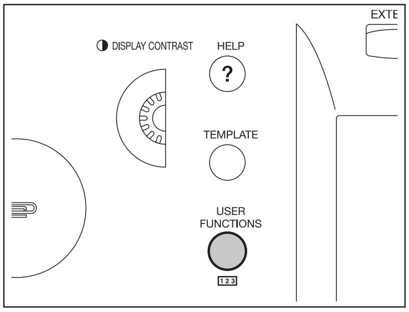
3 **Pull out the drawer mentioned in the message. Then remove all the paper in it.**



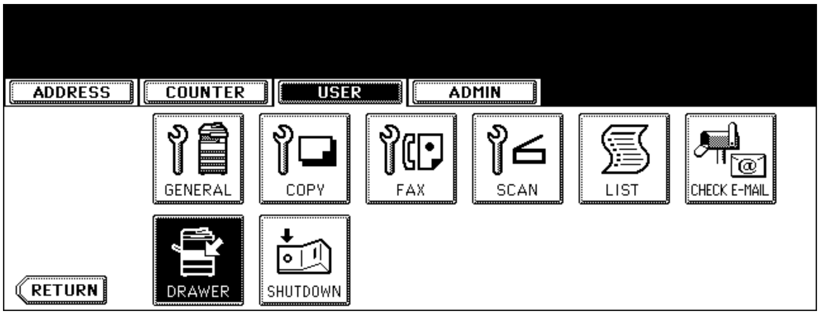
4 **Close the drawer and then turn the power ON.**



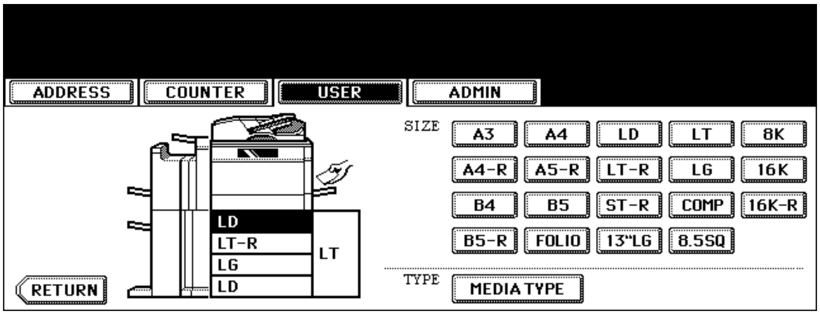
5 **Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.**


EXTE
DISPLAY CONTRAST
HELP
?
TEMPLATE
USER FUNCTIONS
1 2 3

6 **Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to display the USER menu, and then press the [DRAWER] button.**

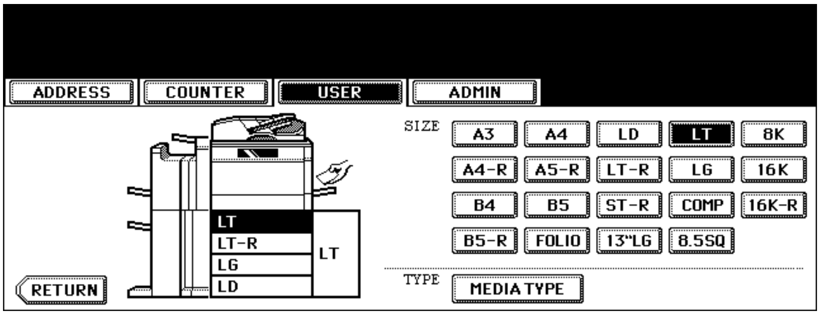

ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
GENERAL
COPY
FAX
SCAN
LIST
CHECK E-MAIL
RETURN
DRAWER
SHUTDOWN

7 Press the drawer button corresponding to the one mentioned in the message on the touch panel.


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
SIZE
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
TYPE
MEDIA TYPE
LD
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
RETURN

8 Press the paper size button corresponding to the one placed in the drawer.

📖 P.45 “4.Setting Copy Paper”


ADDRESS
COUNTER
USER
ADMIN
SIZE
A3
A4
LD
LT
8K
A4-R
A5-R
LT-R
LG
16K
B4
B5
ST-R
COMP
16K-R
B5-R
FOLIO
13"LG
8.5SQ
TYPE
MEDIA TYPE
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
RETURN

9 Place the paper removed in step 3 in the drawer.

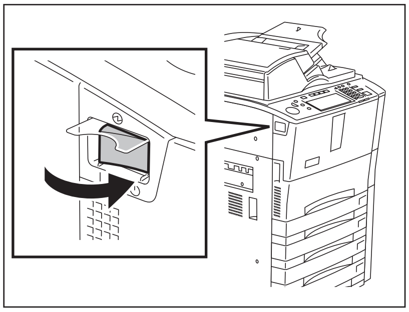
10 Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button to return to the basic menu. Set the original and start the copying again.

When “POWER FAILURE” appears, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button twice to clear the message. See 📖 P.332 “9.“POWER FAILURE”” for details.

During copying (using the bypass tray)

1 Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

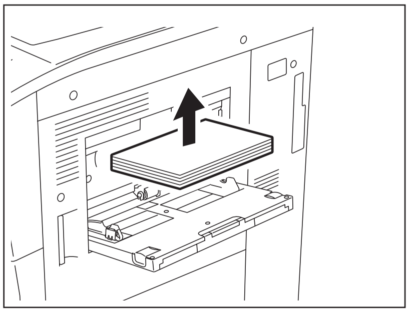
- You cannot shut down the equipment.



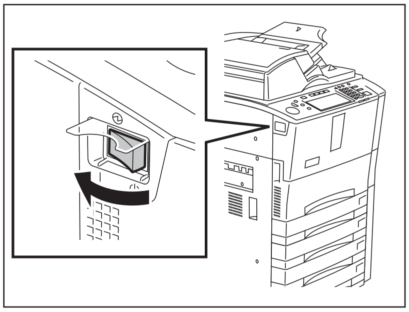
2 Remove the jammed paper.

📖 P.295 “4.Jam Symbols”

3 Remove all paper on the bypass tray.



4 Turn the power ON.



5 Place paper on the bypass tray and select the paper size.

📖 P.75 “6.Bypass Copying”

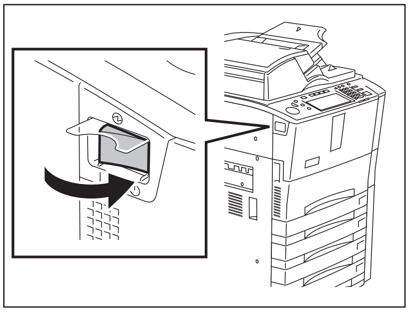
6 Place the original and try to copy again.

When “POWER FAILURE” appears, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button twice to clear the message. See 📖 P.332 “9.“POWER FAILURE”” for details.

During printing from the FAX or Printer (using a drawer)

1 Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

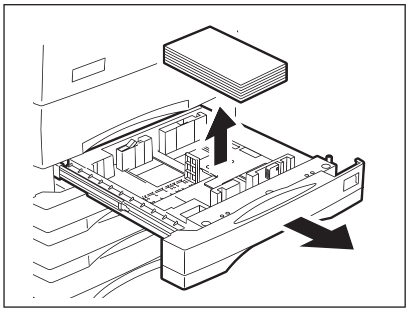
- You cannot shut down the equipment.



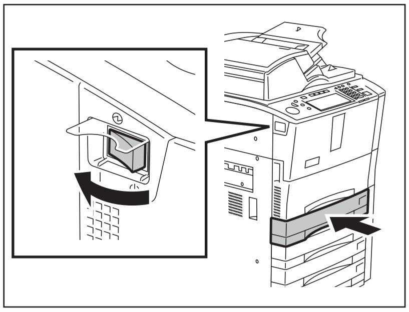
2 Remove the jammed paper.

📖 P.295 “4.Jam Symbols”

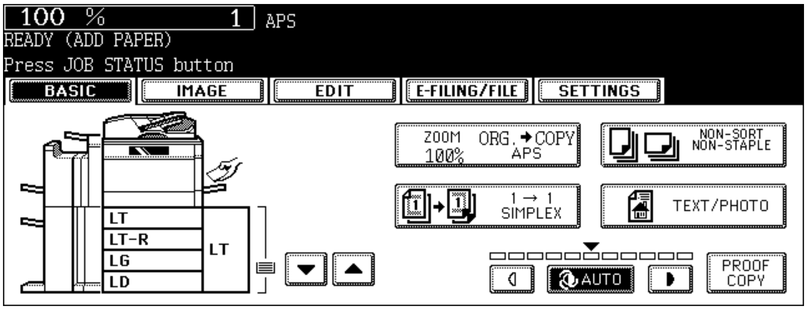
3 Pull out the drawer mentioned in the message. Then remove all the paper in it.



4 Close the drawer and then turn the power ON.



5 See the size indication on the touch panel to check the paper size registered for the drawer mentioned in the message.


100 % 1 APS

READY (ADD PAPER)

Press JOB STATUS button

BASIC
IMAGE
EDIT
E-FILING/FILE
SETTINGS
ZOOM 100%
ORG.→COPY APS
NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
1 → 1 SIMPLEX
TEXT/PHOTO
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT
AUTO
PROOF COPY

6 Place the paper, whose size is same as the one you have checked at step 5, in the drawer mentioned in the message.

📖 P.45 “4.Setting Copy Paper”

7 The job is resumed.

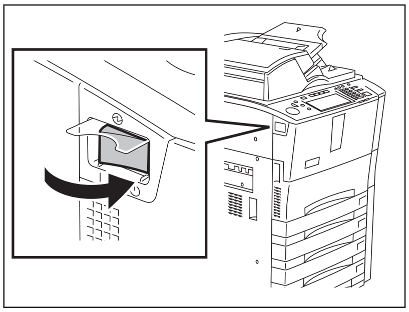
- If you change the paper size again after the completion of the job, check that the paper size placed in the drawer is the same as the one registered in the equipment for the corresponding drawer.

During printing from the Printer (using the bypass tray)

- Paper will not be fed out of the bypass tray during a FAX reception.

1 Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

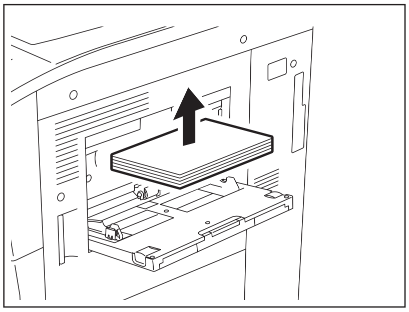
- You cannot shut down the equipment.



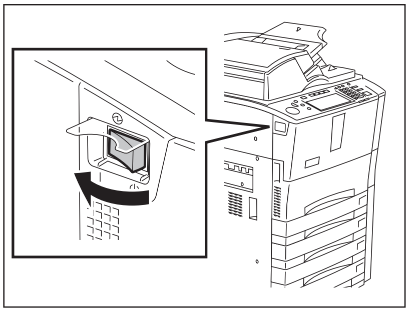
2 Remove the jammed paper.

📖 P.295 “4.Jam Symbols”

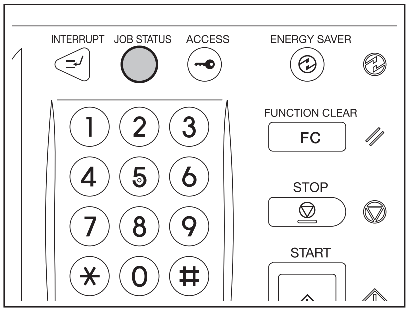
3 **Remove all the paper on the bypass tray.**



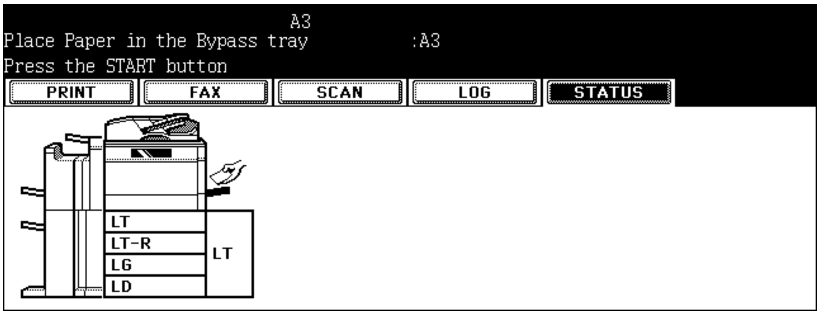
4 **Turn the power ON.**



5 **Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.**


INTERRUPT
JOB STATUS
ACCESS
ENERGY SAVER
FUNCTION CLEAR
FC
STOP
START
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#

6 **Place the paper of the size corresponding to the one shown next to the message “Place Paper in the Bypass tray :” on the bypass tray.**

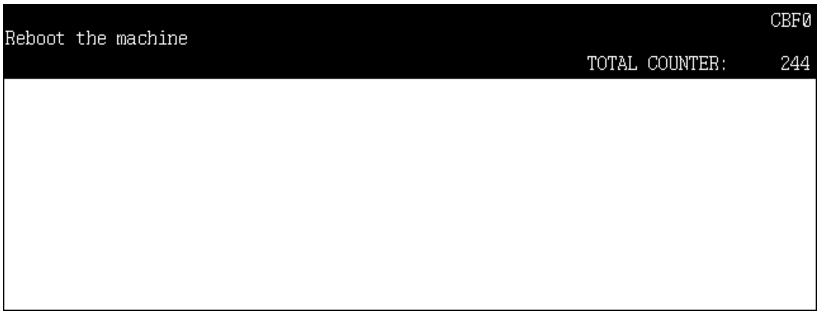


A3
Place Paper in the Bypass tray :A3
Press the START button

PRINT
FAX
SCAN
LOG
STATUS
LT
LT-R
LG
LD
LT

7 **Press the [START] button.**

12. “Reboot the machine”



CBF0
Reboot the machine
TOTAL COUNTER: 244

This message appears when the equipment cannot be operated normally because an error occurs but it may be released by rebooting the equipment. Since the equipment cannot be shut down with the control panel, reboot it with the power switch.

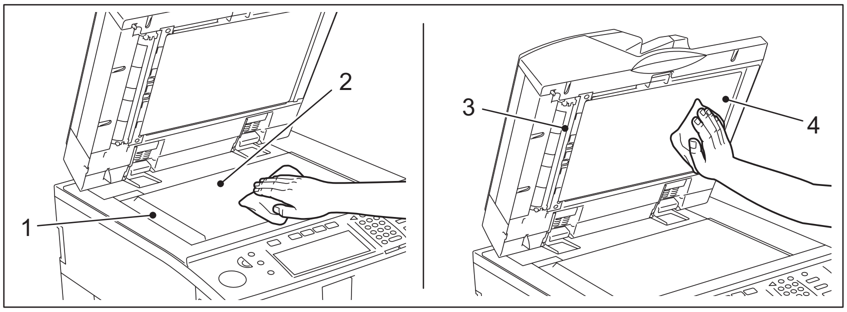
11. MAINTENANCE

1. Daily Inspection..344
2. Simple Troubleshooting 345

1. Daily Inspection

We recommend you to clean the following items weekly, so that the originals can be scanned in unsoiled conditions.

Be careful not to scratch the parts that you are cleaning.



1. Scanning area
   Clean the surface with a dried cloth (co-packed) or a cloth lightly moistened with water.
   Do not use solvents such as alcohol.

2. Original glass

3. Guide

4. Platen sheet
   Clean the surface as follows depending on the staining.
   - Clean it with a cloth (co-packed).
   - Clean it with a soft cloth lightly moistened with water.
   - Clean it with a soft cloth lightly moistened with alcohol, and then wipe it with a dry cloth.
   - Clean it with a soft cloth lightly moistened with watered-down neutral detergent, and then wipe it with a dry cloth.

Caution

- Do not use solvents such as thinner or benzine when cleaning the surface of the equipment. This could warp the shape of the surface or leave it discolored.
- When using a chemical cleaning pad to clean it, follow the instructions.

2. Simple Troubleshooting

Check the following items and, if the problem still occurs, call your service representative for assistance.

Equipment does not start

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the power cord plug securely inserted in the outlet?	Insert the power cord plug until it comes to a stop.	-
Are the front cover and toner cover securely closed?	Close the cover properly.	📖 P.24 “1.Description of Each Component”

Paper jamming occurs frequently

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Does the message: “Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N (Bypass)” appear?	Match the size of the paper placed in the drawer or on the bypass tray and the one registered to the equipment.	📖 P.334 “11.“Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N””
Does the paper placed exceed the line indicated inside of the side guide?	Remove some of the sheets of paper and place them with the paper height not exceeding the line indicated.	📖 P.49 “Placing paper in the drawer”
Is the space between the side guide of the drawer or the bypass tray and the paper too narrow/wide?	Keep an appropriate space between the side guide and paper, and then place paper straight along the side guide.	📖 P.49 “Placing paper in the drawer”
Has all of the jammed paper removed?	Since the jammed paper may not be easily found, follow the guidance shown on the touch panel.	📖 P.295 “4.Jam Symbols”

Display does not change when buttons or icons are pressed

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the equipment in the energy saving mode (Automatic energy saving mode)?	Press the [ENERGY SAVER] or [START] button on the control panel to clear the mode. (It takes a while for the equipment to become ready.)	🕮 P.43 “3.Energy Saving Mode”
Is the power OFF because the weekly timer functions?	Press the [START] button to return the power ON.	See the [User Function Guide]
When the use of the equipment is managed under department management, is the correct code entered?	Key in the correct department code.	🕮 P.35 “When department or user management is used”
When the use of the equipment is managed under user management, is the correct information entered?	Enter the user information correctly.	🕮 P.35 “When department or user management is used”
Is the “Warming up” message displayed?	Wait until the equipment becomes ready.	🕮 P.34 “Turning power on”

Functions cannot be set

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Are there functions that cannot be combined set together?	See the copying function combination and image quality adjustment combination matrices and set again.	🕮 P.357 “4.Copying Function Combination Matrix”

Image density is too low

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Has the message “Install new toner cartridge” appeared on the screen?	Replace the toner cartridge.	🕮 P.292 “Toner cover symbol”
Is the image density or background adjustment set lighter than standard?	Use the manual density buttons or the background adjustment function to adjust the image density properly.	🕮 P.123 “6.Copy Density Adjustment”, 🕮 P.126 “1.Background Adjustment”

Image density is too high

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the image density or background adjustment set darker than standard?	Use the manual density buttons or the background adjustment function to adjust the image density properly.	🕮 P.123 “6.Copy Density Adjustment”, 🕮 P.126 “1.Background Adjustment”

Images are stained

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder securely closed?	Close the cover or feeder properly to shut out any outer light.	🕮 P.63 “2.Setting Originals”
Are the platen sheet, original cover and scanning area dirty?	Clean them up.	🕮 P.344 “1.Daily Inspection”
Is the image density set properly?	Adjust the image density properly with the [AUTO] button or manual density buttons.	🕮 P.123 “6.Copy Density Adjustment”
Are 2-sided originals used?	As the other side of the originals can be seen, adjust the image density properly (lighter) with the background adjustment function.	🕮 P.126 “1.Background Adjustment”
Are originals with high transparency used?	Place a blank sheet of paper with originals of the same size or larger over the original.	🕮 P.66 “Sheet originals”

Images are blurred

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Does the entire original lie properly on the surface of the glass?	Place the original on the glass, and then close the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder firmly.	-
Is the paper moist?	Replace it with new paper.	-

Copy images are partially missing

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Are the original size, direction and the reproduction ratio suitable for the paper size?	Select copy paper of the same size as the original, or set the reproduction ratio suitable for the paper size.	📖 P.88 “Automatic Paper Selection (APS)”, 📖 P.93 “2.Enlargement and Reduction Copying”
Is the margin on the copy set properly?	Adjust the image shift value.	📖 P.130 “1.IMAGE SHIFT”

12. SPECIFICATIONS & OPTIONS

1. Specifications 350
2. Specifications of Options..354
3. Packing List...356
4. Copying Function Combination Matrix 357
   - Combination Matrix 1/2 357
   - Combination Matrix 2/2 358

1. Specifications

Model name		DP-5200/6000/7200/8500
Type		Console type
Original glass		Fixed
Copying system		Indirect electrophotographic method
Developing system		2-component magnetic brush developing
Fixing method		Induction heating
Photoconductor type		OPC
Original scanning system		Flat surface scanning system (When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is used: Fixed scanning system by feeding the original)
Original scanning sensor		Linear CCD sensor
Scanning light source		Xenon lamp
Resolution	Scanning	600 dpi x 600 dpi
	Writing	2400 dpi x 600 dpi (smoothing process)
Acceptable originals		Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects
Acceptable original size		Max. LD
Acceptable copy paper size		Drawer: LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP, 13" LG, 8.5" SQ, A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, 8K, 16K, 16K-R (Tandem LCF: LT)
		Bypass feeding: Paper size within 3.94" - 11.69" (Length), 5.83" - 17.01" (Width)
Acceptable paper weight		17 lb. Bond - 110 lb. Index (drawer and bypass feeding)
Warm-up time		Approx. 130 sec.
First copy time (LT portrait)		e-STUDIO520/600/720 or e-STUDIO523/603/723: less than 4.0 sec., e-STUDIO850/853: less than 3.5 sec.
Continuous copying speed		See 📖 P.352 “Continuous copying speed”.
Multiple copying		Up to 9999 copies (digital key entry)
Excluded image width	Copy	Leading edge: 0.12±0.08", Trailing edge: 0.08±0.08", Both edges: 0.08±0.08"
	Printer	Leading edge: 0.20±0.08", Trailing edge: 0.20±0.08", Both edges: 0.20±0.08"
Reproduction ratio		Actual size: 100±0.5%
		Zoom: 25 - 400% (in 1% increments)
		For the reversing document feeder 25 - 200% (in 1% increments)
Paper supply		Drawer: Approx. 500 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
		Sheets bypass: Approx. 100 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
Toner Density adjustment		Magnetic auto-toner system
Environment (for normal use)		Temperature: 10º - 30ºC (50 º - 86 ºF), Humidity: 20 - 85% (No condensation)
Power requirements		AC 115 V, 50/60 Hz, 16 A
Power consumption		2.0 kW

Dimensions (equipment only)	27.48" (W) x 31.06" (D) x 47.76" (H)
Weight (equipment only)	Approx. 463 lb.
Space occupied	55.16" (W) x 31.06" (D) (paper exit tray + bypass tray)
Storage capacity	Max. 2000 images (1 job) (Toshiba’s own chart)

- This specification varies depending on the copying conditions and the environment.
- Specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice in the interest of product improvement.

Continuous copying speed

sheets/min.

Paper type	Paper size	Feeder	e-STUDIO 520/523		e-STUDIO 600/603		e-STUDIO 720/723		e-STUDIO 850/853	
			Face up	Face down	Face up	Face down	Face up	Face down	Face up	Face down
Plain paper (17 - 20 lb. Bond)	LT, ST-R, 8.5" SQ, A4, A5-R, B5	Drawer/ Tandem LCF	52	52	60	60	72	72	85	85
		Bypass	45	45	46	46	46	46	50	50
	LT-R, A4-R, B5-R	Drawer	42	42	46	46	52	50	61	56
		Bypass	37	37	38	38	38	38	42	42
	LG, COMP, 13" LG, B4, FOLIO	Drawer	37	37	41	38	44	41	52	45
		Bypass	32	32	34	34	34	34	38	38
	LD, A3	Drawer	33	31	36	32	37	34	43	37
		Bypass *1	28	28	30	30	30	30	34	34
Thick 1 (- 28 lb. Bond)	LT, ST-R, 8.5" SQ, A4, A5-R, B5	Drawer/ Tandem LCF	52	52	60	60	72	72	85	85
		Bypass	45	45	46	46	46	46	50	50
	LT-R, A4-R, B5-R	Drawer	42	42	46	46	52	50	61	56
		Bypass	37	37	38	38	38	38	42	42
	LG, COMP, 13" LG, B4, FOLIO	Drawer	37	37	41	38	44	41	52	45
		Bypass	32	32	34	34	34	34	38	38
	LD, A3	Drawer	33	31	36	32	37	34	43	37
		Bypass *1	28	28	30	30	30	30	34	34
Thick 2 (- 90 lb. Index)	LT, ST-R, 8.5" SQ, A4, A5-R, B5	Drawer/ Tandem LCF	52	52	60	60	72	72	85	85
		Bypass	45	45	46	46	46	46	50	50
	LT-R, A4-R, B5-R	Drawer	42	42	46	46	52	50	61	56
		Bypass	37	37	38	38	38	38	42	42
	LG, COMP, 13" LG, B4, FOLIO	Drawer	37	37	41	38	44	41	52	45
		Bypass	32	32	34	34	34	34	38	38
	LD, A3	Drawer	33	31	36	32	37	34	43	37
		Bypass *1	28	28	30	30	30	30	34	34
Thick 3 (- 110 lb. Index)	LT, ST-R, 8.5" SQ, A4, A5-R, B5	Drawer/ Tandem LCF	52	52	60	60	65	65	72	72
		Bypass	45	45	46	46	46	46	46	46
	LT-R, A4-R, B5-R	Drawer	42	42	46	46	50	48	52	50
		Bypass	37	37	38	38	38	38	38	38
	LG, COMP, 13" LG, B4, FOLIO	Drawer	37	37	41	38	43	40	44	41
		Bypass	32	32	34	34	34	34	34	34
	LD, A3	Drawer	33	31	36	32	37	34	37	34
		Bypass *1	28	28	30	30	30	30	30	30

- The bypass copying speed is as listed above when specifying the paper size; however when the paper size is not specified, the copy speed of all sizes is on ‘*1’.
- The values above are measured when originals are set on the original glass, 1-sided, 100% and non-sort multiple copies are made.
- “Face up” and “Face down” in the table mean the paper exit faces.
- Only LT-sized paper can be set in the Tandem Large Capacity Feeder.
- This specification varies depending on the copying conditions and the environment.
- The paper mentioned above is Toshiba-recommended paper.

Reversing Automatic Document Feeder

Copy sides	1-side, Duplex
Number of originals (LT)	100 originals or less than 0.63" in height (13 - 20 lb.)
Feeding speed	600 dpi: 71 sheets/min. 300/150 dpi: 83 sheets/min. 400/200 dpi: 79 sheets/min.
Acceptable originals	LD - ST-R, A3 - A5-R (ST and A5 are not acceptable)
Paper weight	13 - 34 lb. (1-sided original), 13 - 28 lb. (2-sided original)
Power source	Power supplied from the equipment

2. Specifications of Options

Finishers

Model name	MJ-1027	MJ-1028		
Type	Floor type			
Acceptable paper size	LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, FOLIO			
Acceptable paper weight	17 lb. Bond - 140 lb. Index			
Number of copies stapled at a time (MJ-1027, MJ-1028)		20 lb. Bond	24 lb. Bond	28 lb. Bond
	LT, A4, B5	50 sheets	30 sheets	30 sheets
	LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO	30 sheets	15 sheets	15 sheets
Stapling position	Rear, Front, Front diagonal, Double			
Saddle stitch unit	No	Yes		
Stitch capacity		LD, LT-R, A3, A4-R, B4		
		20 lb. Bond	24 lb. Bond	28 lb. Bond
		15 sheets	10 sheets	10 sheets
Hole Punch Unit	Optional			
Power source	Supplied from the copier			
Dimensions	24.25 (29.13")* (W) x 24.8" (D) x 40.28" (H)			
Weight	Approx. 94.8 lb.	Approx. 138.9 lb.		
Power consumption	170 W max.	170 W max.		

* The dimension values in parentheses are measured when the sub-tray is pulled out.

Tray loading capacity

Units of inches ±0.28"
Values in parentheses = the number of 20 lb. Bond sheets

Mode	Non-Sort		Sort/Group		Stapled	
					Mixed paper not loaded	Mixed paper loaded
Tray No.	1	2	1	2	1, 2	1, 2
ST-R, A5-R	5.5 (1000)	5.5 (1000)	-	-	-	-
B5-R	5.5 (1000)	5.5 (1000)	-	-	-	-
LT, A4, B5	9.8 (2000)	9.8 (2000)	9.8 (2000)	9.8 (2000)	Whichever of 4.3", 750 sheets or 100 sets is reached first	Whichever of 2.9", 500 sheets or 50 sets is reached first
LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO	5.5 (1000)	5.5 (1000)	5.5 (1000)	5.5 (1000)	Whichever of 2.9", 500 sheets or 50 sets is reached first	Whichever of 2.9", 500 sheets or 50 sets is reached first

Note

When sets of stapled and not stapled paper are loaded on the tray, the tray loading capacity is whichever of 0.86 inch thick, 150 sheets or 50 sets is reached first.

Hole Punch Unit

Paper weight: 17 lb. Bond - 140 lb. Index

	Number of punching holes and hole diameter	Available paper size
Japan and most of Europe (MJ-6003E)	2 holes (0.26" dia.)	LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO
North America (MJ-6003N)	2/3 holes switchable (0.32" dia.)	2 holes: LG, LT-R 3 holes: LD, LT, A3, A4
France (MJ-6003F)	4 holes (0.26" dia.; 3.15" pitch)	LD, LT, A3, A4
Sweden (MJ-6003S)	4 holes (0.26" dia.; 2.76" and 0.83" pitch)	LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO

Inserter Unit

Model name	MJ-7001	
Type	Floor type	
Acceptable paper size	LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP, A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, FOLIO	
Acceptable paper weight	17 lb. Bond - 140 lb. Index	
Maximum capacity	17 - 20 lb. Bond	140 lb. Index
	100 sheets	Height: approx. 0.47"
	* Special paper: 60% less than above	
Power source	Supplied from the equipment	
Dimensions	21.0" (W) x 24.1" (D) x 42.2" (H)	
Weight	Approx. 6.2 lb.	
Power consumption	99 W max.	

External Large Capacity Feeder

Model name	MP-4004L
Type	Floor type
Acceptable paper size	LT
Acceptable paper weight	17 lb. Bond - 110 lb. Index
Maximum capacity	4000 sheets (20 lb. Bond)
Power source	Supplied from the copier
Dimensions	12.8" (W) x 23.6" (D) x 24.3" (H)
Weight	Approx. 88.2 lb.
Power consumption	27 W max.

- The paper mentioned above is Toshiba-recommended paper. Specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice in the interest of product improvement.

3. Packing List

Packing list	Set-up report
	Photoconductive drum
	Operator’s Manual pocket
	Tray spacer of Reversing Automatic Document Feeder
	Tab paper back guide
	Warranty Sheet
	Cleaning cloth
	Cleaning cloth pocket

4. Copying Function Combination Matrix

Combination Matrix 1/2

		Store to e-Filing	Copy & File	Job build	Overlay	Inserter			Tab paper			Sheet insertion		Cover sheet				Editing				Dual page	XY zoom	Book center erase	2IN1/4IN1			
						Sheet insert	Front & Back cover	Front cover	Copied tab insert	Blank tab insert	Copy on tab	Copied	Blank	Top copied back blank	Both blank	Top copied	Top blank	Nega/Pos	Mask	Trim	Mirror				4IN1 (2-2 Duplex)	4IN1 (1-2 Duplex)	2IN1 (2-2 Duplex)	2IN1 (1-2 Duplex)
1 - 1 Simplex		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	*3	YES	YES	*3	*3	*3	*3
1 - 2 Duplex		YES	*2	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	*3	YES	YES	*3	YES	*3	YES
2 - 1 Split		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	*3	*3	*3	*3
2 - 2 Duplex		YES	*2	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	YES	*3	YES	*3
Book - 2		YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Non-sort/Non-staple		*3	YES	*4	YES	*3	*3	*3	*3	*3	YES	*3	*3	*3	*3	*3	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Sort		YES	YES	*4	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Group		YES	YES	*4	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Staple sort		YES	YES	*4	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Magazine sort		*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Magazine sort & Saddle stitch		*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Hole punch		YES	YES	*4	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES
Saddle stitch		YES	YES	*4	YES	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Rotate sort *1		YES	YES	*4	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Mixed original sizes		YES	YES	*4	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
SADF		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	YES	YES	YES	YES
Image direction		YES	YES	*4	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	*3	*3	*3	*3
Book - Tablet		YES	YES	*4	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Edge erase		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES
Image shift		*3	*3	*4	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
2IN1/ 4IN1	2IN1 (1-1 Simplex)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--	--	--
	2IN1 (2-1 Split)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--	--	--
	4IN1 (1-1 Simplex)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--	--	--
	4IN1 (2-1 Split)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--	--	--
	2IN1 (1-2 Duplex)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--	--	
	2IN1 (2-2 Duplex)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--		
	4IN1 (1-2 Duplex)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--			
	4IN1 (2-2 Duplex)	*3	*3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO				
Book center erase		YES	YES	*4	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES					
XY zoom		YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO						
Dual page		YES	*2	YES	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO							
Editing	Mirror	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	--								
	Trim	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--									
	Mask	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--										
	Nega/Pos	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES											
Cover sheet	Top blank	*3	*3	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	--	--	--												
	Top copied	*3	*3	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	--	--													
	Both blank	*3	*3	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES	--														
	Top copied back blank	*3	*3	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	YES															
Sheet insertion	Blank	*3	*3	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	--																
	Copied	*3	*3	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO																	
Tab paper	Copy on tab	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	--	--																		
	Blank tab insert	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	--																			
	Copied tab insert	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES																				
Inserter	Front cover	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	--																					
	Front & Back cover	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES																						
	Sheet insert	NO	NO	NO	YES																							
Overlay		NO	NO	NO																								
Job build		*4	*4																									
Copy & File		NO																										
Store to e-Filing																												

*1 Valid only for the equipment without the Finisher (optional).

*2 The data stored into the file are the same as the ones for simplex copying.

*3 The function set later will be valid.

*4 The setting cannot be changed from 2nd job or later.

Combination Matrix 2/2

		2IN1/4IN1				Image shift	Edge erase	Book - Tablet	Image direction	SADF	Mixed original sizes	Rotate sort *1	Saddle stitch	Hole punch	Magazine sort & Saddle stitch	Magazine sort	Staple sort	Group	Sort	Non-sort/ Non-staple	Book - 2	2 - 2 Duplex	2 - 1 Split	1 - 2 Duplex	1 - 1 Simplex
		4IN1 (2-1 Split)	4IN1 (1-1 Simplex)	2IN1 (2-1 Split)	2IN1 (1-1 Simplex)																				
1 - 1 Simplex		*3	YES	*3	YES	YES	YES	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	*3	YES	*3	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	--	--	▨
1 - 2 Duplex		*3	*3	*3	*3	YES	YES	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	--	▨	
2 - 1 Split		YES	*3	YES	*3	YES	YES	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	*3	YES	*3	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	▨		
2 - 2 Duplex		*3	*3	*3	*3	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	▨			
Book - 2		NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	--	NO	NO	*3	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	YES	▨				
Non-sort/Non-staple		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	YES	--	--	--	--	--	▨					
Sort		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	YES	--	--	--	--	▨						
Group		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	--	--	YES	--	--	--	▨							
Staple sort		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	--	YES	--	--	▨								
Magazine sort		NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES	YES	NO	--	--	NO	--	▨									
Magazine sort & Saddle stitch		NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	--	NO	▨										
Hole punch		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	▨											
Saddle stitch		NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	▨												
Rotate sort *1		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	▨													
Mixed original sizes		NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	▨														
SADF		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	▨															
Image direction		*3	*3	*3	*3	YES	YES	YES	▨																
Book - Tablet		NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	▨																	
Edge erase		YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	▨																		
Image shift		YES	YES	YES	YES	▨																			
2IN1/ 4IN1	2IN1 (1-1 Simplex)	--	--	--	▨																				
	2IN1 (2-1 Split)	--	--	▨																					
	4IN1 (1-1 Simplex)	--	▨																						
	4IN1 (2-1 Split)	▨																							
	2IN1 (1-2 Duplex)																								
	2IN1 (2-2 Duplex)																								
	4IN1 (1-2 Duplex)																								
	4IN1 (2-2 Duplex)																								
Book center erase																									
XY zoom																									
Dual page																									
Editing	Mirror																								
	Trim																								
	Mask																								
	Nega/Pos																								
Cover sheet	Top blank																								
	Top copied																								
	Both blank																								
	Top copied back blank																								
Sheet insertion	Blank																								
	Copied																								
Tab paper	Copy on tab																								
	Blank tab insert																								
	Copied tab insert																								
Inserter	Front cover																								
	Front & Back cover																								
	Sheet insert																								
Overlay																									
Job build																									
Copy & File																									
Store to e-Filing																									

*1 Valid only for the equipment without the Finisher (optional).

*2 The data stored into the file are the same as the ones for simplex copying.

*3 The function set later will be valid.

*4 The setting cannot be changed from 2nd job or later.

INDEX

Numerics
1-sided original -> 1-sided copy 113, 114
1-sided original -> 2-sided copy 113, 115
2IN1 / 4IN1 142
2-sided original -> 1-sided copy 113, 117
2-sided original -> 2-sided copy 113, 116

A
ACCESS button 29
ADF 170
Adjusting the contrast of the touch panel 32
AMS 93
APS 88
APS/AMS or currently selected paper size 30
Auto job start 71
Automatic copy density mode 123
Automatic function clear 32
Automatic Magnification Selection (AMS) 93
Automatic Paper Selection (APS) 88
AUTOMATIC START 225, 232

B
Background adjustment 126
BLANK 157
BLANK TAB INSERT 173
Blinking graphic symbols 290
BOOK - TABLET 169
BOOK CENTER ERASE 138
Book-type original -> 2-sided copy 113, 118
Book-type originals 67
BOTH BLANK 154
Bottom margin 130
Bypass copying
  Bypass copying 75
  Non-standard size paper 80
  Standard size paper 76
Bypass cover 24
Bypass tray 24, 75, 300

C
Call service symbol 316
Canceling the energy saving mode 44
Caution 13
Changing data of user boxes 196
Changing the data of a template 236
Changing the data of a user group 233
Changing the setting of paper size 52
Cleaning 344
CLEAR button 29
Clearing functions selected 32
Clearing the drawer for special uses 56
Configuration of options 25
Confirming and canceling auto job 72
Confirming job history in log list 268
Confirming print job status 253
Confirming scan job status 266
Continuing printing after proof printing 258
Continuous feed mode 69, 170
Control panel 24, 28
COPIED 157
COPIED TAB INSERT 173
COPY button 28
Copy density adjustment 123
COPY ON TAB 173
Copy paper types and sizes 46
Copying Function Combination Matrix 357
Copying mixed-size originals in one go 91
Copying procedure 60
COVER SHEET 154
Creating user boxes 194

D
Daily inspection 344
Date and time 30
Deleting a template 247
Deleting a user group 246
Deleting folders or documents 210
Deleting invalid print jobs 265
Deleting print jobs 254
Deleting private print jobs 262
Deleting proof print jobs 259
Deleting user boxes 199
Density adjustment buttons 30
Department codes 263
Department management 35
Description of each component 24
Digital keys 29
Disclaimer notice 20
Displaying invalid queues 263
Displaying private print job list 260
Displaying proof print job list 257
Drawer display on the touch panel 291
Drawer for special uses 53
Drawers 24
DUAL PAGE 140
Duplex copying 113

E
EDGE ERASE 136
EDITING 147
e-Filing 192
e-FILING button 28
ENERGY SAVER button 29, 43
Energy saving mode 43
Enlargement and reduction copying 93
Enlargement/Reduction (Zoom...) button 30
Equipment status indication area 30
Error code 278, 290
ERROR lamp 29
Exit cover 24
EXTENSION button 28
External Large Capacity Feeder 25, 300, 355

F
FAX button 28
Features 11
File Downloader 192
Finisher 25, 99, 302, 354
Finisher button 30
Finishing modes and finishers 99
Folder 210
FRONT & BACK COVER 183
FRONT COVER 183
Front cover 24
FUNCTION CLEAR button 29
Function setting area 30

G
General copying procedures 60
General precautions
  During maintenance or inspection 18
  General precautions 12
  When handling supplies 19
  When installing or moving 12
  When using the multifunctional digital systems 15
Group copying 99, 101

H
Handling and storing paper 48
HELP button 28
Hole punch 99, 109
Hole Punch Unit 25, 99, 100, 355

I
IMAGE DIRECTION 167
IMAGE SHIFT 130
Index buttons 30
Initial (default) settings 60
INSERTER 183
Inserter mode 111
Inserter Unit
.... 25, 99, 100, 111, 154, 157, 183, 355
INTERRUPT button 28
Interrupt copying 73

J
Jam symbols 295
JOB BUILD 163
Job preset 71
Job status 252
JOB STATUS button 29

K
K format 63
Keying in correct department code to print 264

L
LDAP authentication 37
Left margin 130
Log list 267

M
MAGAZINE SORT 145
Magazine sort 99
Magazine sort & Saddle stitch 99, 106
Manual copy density mode 124
Manual paper selection 90
Margin 130, 132, 134
Masking 147
Maximum number of sheets 65
Maximum number of sheets for stapling 105
MEMORY RX / FAX communication lamps 28
Message 30
Message display 30
MFP local authentication 37
Mirror image 150
MONITOR/PAUSE button 29
Moving print jobs 255

N
Negative/Positive reversal 151
Notice to users 5
Number of copy sets 30

O
One-touch zoom buttons 97
Operator’s Manual pocket 24
Original cover 24
Original glass 24
Original mode 122
Original mode button 30
Original scale 24
Original stopper 64
Originals sizes and types 63
OVERLAY 187

P
Packing list 356
PAGE NUMBER 161
Paper feed cover 24
Paper misfeed 302
Paper selection 88
Paper size indicator 24
Paper source selection buttons 30
Paper type 53
Pausing print jobs 255
Placing originals on the glass 66
Placing paper in the drawer 49
Power switch 24
Preface 10
PRINT DATA lamp 29
Print jobs 254
Print log 268
Print status display 275
Printing journals 274
Printing private print jobs 261
Printing stored documents 205
Private print jobs 260

Procedure of clearing a paper jam 295
Proof Copy 84
PROOF COPY button 30
Proof print jobs 257
Public box 192
Public group 241
Public template group 221

R
Recalling templates 241
Receive log 270
Recommended paper 48
Registering a template
in the public template group 221
Registering a template in the user group 228
Registering into address book
from log lists 272
Registering non-standard size
in the memory 83
Registering the new user group 225
Releasing print job errors 275
Remaining paper level 30
Replace toner bag symbol 294
Reproduction ratio 30
Reversing Automatic Document Feeder
....24, 68, 297
Right margin 130
Rotate sort 99, 103

S
Saddle stitch
  - Available conditions 108
  - Saddle stitch 99
Saddle Stitch Finisher 25, 99
Saddle stitch tray 100
Saddle stitch unit 100
SADF 170
SCAN button 28
Scan log 271
Scanning area 24
Send log 269
Separating/Installing and moving
of the External Large Capacity Feeder 297
Separating/Installing and moving
the finishing device 296
Setting copy paper 45
Setting letters 33
Setting originals 63
Setting paper
in the External Large Capacity Feeder 57
Setting tab paper in the drawer 174
Setting the staple sort mode 104
Setting the tab width 176
SETTINGS button 30, 31
Sharpness 127
SHEET INSERT 183
SHEET INSERTION 157
Sheet originals 66
Simplex / duplex button 30
Single feed mode 70, 171
Sort copying 99, 101
Specifications 350
Specifications of Options 354
Specifying both original size and copy size
separately 95
Staple sort 99, 104
START button 29
STOP button 29
Stopping copy operation 74
Storing documents in e-Filing 201
Sub-tray 100

T
TAB PAPER 173
Tab paper back guide 174
Tab paper copying 178
Tab paper insertion 179
Tab paper insertion and copying 181
Template 218
TEMPLATE button 29
Test printing 206
TIME STAMP 160
Toner cartridge 24
Toner cartridge holder 24
Toner cartridge symbol 294
Toner cover 24
Toner cover symbol 292
TOP BLANK 154
TOP COPIED 154
TOP COPIED BACK BLANK 154
Top margin 130
TopAccess 192
Touch panel 24, 29, 30
Touch panel contrast adjustment dial 24, 28
Touch-buttons 30
Transfer/Transport unit 24
Tray 100
Trimming 147
Troubleshooting
  - Copy images are partially missing 348
  - Display does not change
    when buttons or icons are pressed 346
  - Equipment does not start 345
  - Functions cannot be set 346
  - Image density is too high 347
  - Image density is too low 346
  - Images are blurred 347
  - Images are stained 347
  - Paper jamming occurs frequently 345
Turning power off (Shutdown) 40
Turning power on 34

TWAIN driver 192
Type of finishing mode 99

U
Upper cover 100
Useful template 218
User box 192, 194
USER FUNCTIONS button 29
User group 228, 243
User management 36, 252

W
Warning 12
Windows Domain Authentication 37

X
XY ZOOM 152

Z
Zoom buttons 97

Printed in China
DP-5200/6000/7200/8500
OME040117G0

MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL SYSTEMS
Operator's Manual for Basic Function

e-STUDIO520/600/720/850
e-STUDIO523/603/723/853

TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION
2-17-2, HIGASHIGOTANDA, SHINAGAWA-KU, TOKYO, 141-8664, JAPAN

QUALITY SERVICE

6LE10007000 米
R05022077007-TTEC
Ver07 2007-10

© 2005 TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION All rights reserved